SUMMARY OF CHANGES

Changes given below are identified on the pages by a margin note, **98**, placed next to the affected area.

Page	*Location*	*Change*
9	HG-301	Revised in its entirety
21	HG-315	Deleted
46, 47	HG-402.3	Subparagraphs (a), (b)(1), and (b)(2), including some equations and nomenclature, revised
58	HG-530.1	In subparagraph (d)(3), cross-reference in last line corrected by Errata
67	HG-613	Subparagraphs (a) and (b) revised
68	HG-640	Footnote 2 revised
89-93	Table HF-300.1	(1) Under Note(s), references to (14) deleted
		(2) Under Note(s), references to (15) through (22) redesignated as (14) through (21), respectively
		(3) Note (14) deleted
		(4) Under Tube Alloy Steel, SA-268 Grade S44735 (two lines) added
		(5) Note (22) added
159	HC-501.1	In last paragraph, cross-reference corrected by Errata
176, 177	Table HLW-301	(1) Under Note(s), references to (5) deleted
		(2) Under Note(s), references to (6) through (8) redesignated as (5) through (7), respectively
		(3) Note (5) deleted
		(4) Under Tube Alloy Steel, SA-268 Grade S44735 (two lines) added
		(5) Note (8) added
179	HLW-307	Revised in its entirety
182	HLW-413	Subparagraph (b) revised
185	Figure HLW-413	In sketch (d), callout revised
191	HLW-450	Second paragraph added
197	HLW-600.1	Second line revised

[SEC IV A98] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:29 2003)

		(1) In subparagraph (a), fourth and last lines revised (2) In subparagraph (b)(7), fourth line revised
	HLW-600.3	In subparagraph (a), fourth and last lines revised
199	HLW-602.3	In subparagraph (b), cross-reference in last line corrected by Errata
201	HLW-701.1	Revised
206	HLW-820	Last line revised

Page	*Location*	*Change*
213	Appendix 2 2-200	Editorially revised
235, 236	Appendix E E-100	(1) Definitions for *Blowdown* and *Rated, Officially* revised (2) *Valve, Pressure-Temperature Relief* deleted
243	Appendix H	Editorially revised

NOTE:
Volume 42 of the Interpretations to Section IV of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code follows the last page of the Edition to Section IV.

July 1, 1998
American Society Of Mechanical Engineers
SEC IV INTRODUCTION
INTRODUCTION

1998 ASME
BOILER &
PRESSURE VESSEL CODE
AN INTERNATIONAL CODE

IV

RULES FOR
CONSTRUCTION
OF HEATING
BOILERS

[ASME logo] The American Society of
Mechanical Engineers

IMPORTANT INFORMATION ON THE 1998 BOILER AND PRESSUME VESSEL CODE ADDENDA DISTRIBUTION SCHEDULE

[SEC IV INTRODUCTION] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:29 2003)

There is a change in the way the Addenda to the 1998 Edition of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code are distributed. The 1998 Edition, published July 1, 1998, incorporates the 1998 Addenda revisions, additions, or deletions. There will be no separate 1998 Addenda issued in a replacement page format. Two additional Addenda to the 1998 Edition, in the form of replacement pages, will be issued on July 1, 1999 and July 1, 2000.

The Summary of Changes published with the 1998 Edition lists and describes the revisions that are part of the 1998 Addenda. These changes are identified with a margin note, **98**, denoting the affected area.

The Addenda for 1999 and 2000 will also have a Summary of Changes and identifiers printed on the replacement pages. The revisions, additions, or deletions will be incorporated directly into the affected pages. It is advisable to retain the title sheets and all replaced pages for reference.

The effective dates for Code Editions and Addenda are described in the Foreword.

ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE
AN INTERNATIONAL CODE

RULES FOR CONSTRUCTION OF HEATING BOILERS

IV

1998 Edition
July 1, 1998

ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL COMMITTEE
SUBCOMMITTEE ON HEATING BOILERS

THE AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS
NEW YORK, NEW YORK

Date of Issue - July 1, 1998
(Includes all Addenda dated December 1997 and earlier)

This code or standard was developed under procedures accredited as meeting the criteria for American National Standards. The Standards Committee that approved the code or standard was balanced to assure that individuals from competent and concerned interests have had an opportunity to participate. The proposed code or standard was made available for public review and comment which provides an opportunity for additional public input from industry, academia, regulatory agencies, and the public-at-large.

ASME does not "approve," "rate," or "endorse" any item, construction, proprietary device, or activity.

ASME does not take any position with respect to the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any items mentioned in this document, and does not undertake to insure anyone utilizing a standard against liability for infringement of any applicable Letters Patent, nor assume any such liability. Users of a code or standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, is entirely their own responsibility.

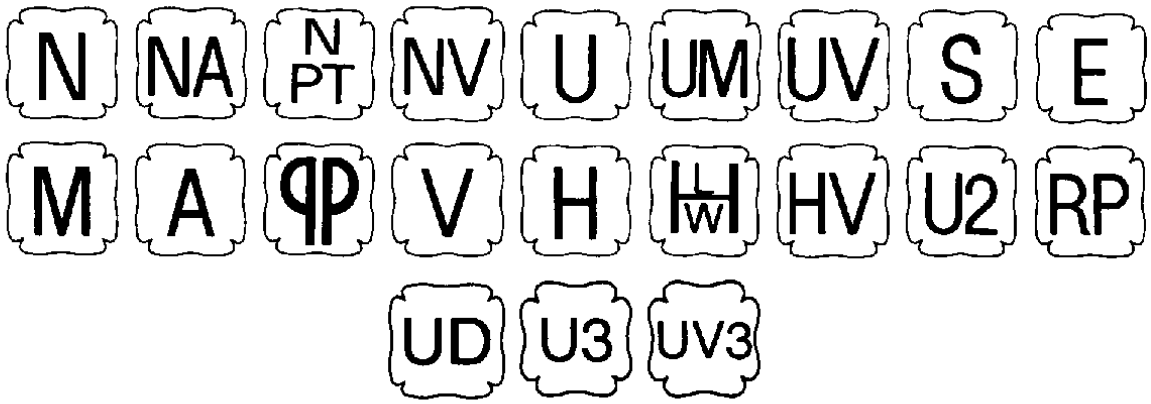
Participation by federal agency representative(s) or person(s) affiliated with industry is not to be interpreted as government or industry endorsement of this code or standard.

ASME accepts responsibility for only those interpretations issued in accordance with governing ASME procedures and policies which preclude the issuance of interpretations by individual volunteers.

The footnotes in this document are part of this American National Standard.

[SEC IV INTRODUCTION] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:32 2003)

[ASME logo] ASME collective membership mark



LOGOS

The above ASME symbols are registered in the U.S. Patent Office.
"ASME" is the trademark of the American Society of Mechanical Engineers.

The Specifications published and copyrighted by The American Society for Testing and Materials are reproduced with the Society's permission.

No part of this document may be reproduced in any form, in an electronic retrieval system or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number: 56-3934
Printed in the United States of America

Adopted by the Council of the American Society of Mechanical Engineers, 1914.

Revised 1940, 1941, 1943, 1946, 1949, 1952, 1953, 1956, 1959, 1962, 1965, 1968, 1971, 1974, 1977, 1980, 1983, 1986, 1989, 1992, 1995, 1998

The American Society of Mechanical Engineers
Three Park Avenue, New York, NY 10016-5990

Copyright © 1998 by
THE AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS
All Rights Reserved

1998 ASME
BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE

SECTIONS

I Rules for Construction of Power Boilers

II Materials

Part A - Ferrous Material Specifications

Part B - Nonferrous Material Specifications

Part C - Specifications for Welding Rods, Electrodes, and Filler Metals

Part D - Properties

III Subsection NCA - General Requirements for Division 1 and Division 2

Division 1

Subsection NB - Class 1 Components

Subsection NC - Class 2 Components

Subsection ND - Class 3 Components

Subsection NE - Class MC Components

Subsection NF - Supports

Subsection NG - Core Support Structures

Subsection NH - Class 1 Components in Elevated Temperature Service

Appendices

III Division 2 - Code for Concrete Reactor Vessels and Containments

III Division 3 - Containment Systems and Transport Packagings for Spent Nuclear Fuel and High Level Radioactive Waste

IV Rules for Construction of Heating Boilers

V Nondestructive Examination

VI Recommended Rules for the Care and Operation of Heating Boilers

VII Recommended Guidelines for the Care of Power Boilers

VIII Rules for Construction of Pressure Vessels

Division 1

Division 2 - Alternative Rules

Division 3 - Alternative Rules for Construction of High Pressure Vessels

IX Welding and Brazing Qualifications

X Fiber-Reinforced Plastic Pressure Vessels

XI Rules for Inservice Inspection of Nuclear Power Plant Components

ADDENDA

Colored-sheet Addenda, which include additions and revisions to individual Sections of the Code, are published annually and will be sent automatically to purchasers of the applicable Sections up to the publication of the 2001 Code. The 1998 Code is available only in the loose-leaf format; accordingly, the Addenda will be issued in the loose-leaf, replacement-page format.

INTERPRETATIONS

ASME issues written replies to inquiries concerning interpretation of technical aspects of the Code. The Interpretations for each individual Section will be published separately and will be included as part of the update service to that Section. They will be issued semiannually (July and December) up to the publication of the 2001 Code. Interpretations of Section III, Divisions 1 and 2, will be included with the update service to Subsection NCA.

CODE CASES

The Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee meets regularly to consider proposed additions and revisions to the Code and to formulate Cases to clarify the intent of existing requirements or provide, when the need is urgent, rules for materials or constructions not covered by existing Code rules. Those Cases which have been adopted will appear in the appropriate 1998 Code Cases book: (1) Boilers and Pressure Vessels and (2) Nuclear Components. Supplements will be sent automatically to the purchasers of the Code Cases books up to the publication of the 2001 Code.

FOREWORD

The American Society of Mechanical Engineers set up a committee in 1911 for the purpose of formulating standard rules for the construction of steam boilers and other pressure vessels. This committee is now called the Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee.

The Committee's function is to establish rules of safety governing the design, fabrication, and inspection during construction of boilers and pressure vessels, and to interpret these rules when questions arise regarding their intent. In formulating the rules, the Committee considers the needs of users, manufacturers, and inspectors of pressure vessels. The objective of the rules is to afford reasonably certain protection of life and property and to provide a margin for deterioration in service so as to give a reasonably long, safe period of usefulness. Advancements in design and material and the evidence of experience have been recognized.

This Code contains mandatory requirements, specific prohibitions, and nonmandatory guidance for construction[1] activities. The Code does not address all aspects of these activities and those aspects which are not specifically addressed should not be considered prohibited. The Code is not a handbook and cannot replace education, experience, and the use of engineering judgment. The phrase *engineering judgment* refers to technical judgments made by knowledgeable designers experienced in the application of the Code. Engineering judgments must be consistent with Code philosophy and such judgments must never be used to overrule mandatory requirements or specific prohibitions of the Code.

1 Construction, as used in this Foreword, is an all-inclusive term comprising materials, design, fabrication, examination, inspection, testing, certification, and pressure relief.

The Committee recognizes that tools and techniques used for design and analysis change as technology progresses and expects engineers to use good judgment in the application of these tools. The designer is responsible for complying with Code rules and demonstrating compliance with Code equations when such equations are mandatory. The Code neither requires nor prohibits the use of computers for the design or analysis of components constructed to the requirements of the Code. However, designers and engineers using computer programs for design or analysis are cautioned that they are responsible for all technical assumptions inherent in the programs they use and they are responsible for the application of these programs to their design.

The Code does not fully address tolerances. When dimensions, sizes, or other parameters are not specified with tolerances, the values of these parameters are considered nominal and allowable tolerances or local variances may be considered acceptable when based on engineering judgment and standard practices as determined by the designer.

The Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee deals with the care and inspection of boilers and pressure vessels in service only to the extent of providing suggested rules of good practice as an aid to owners and their inspectors.

The rules established by the Committee are not to be interpreted as approving, recommending, or endorsing any proprietary or specific design or as limiting in any way the manufacturer's freedom to choose any method of design or any form of construction that conforms to the Code rules.

The Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee meets regularly to consider revisions of the rules, new rules as dictated by technological development, Code Cases, and requests for interpretations. Only the Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee has the authority to provide official interpretations of this Code. Requests for revisions, new rules, Code Cases, or interpretations shall be addressed to the Secretary in writing and shall give full particulars in order to receive consideration and action (see Mandatory Appendix covering preparation of technical inquiries). Proposed revisions to the Code resulting from inquiries will be presented to the Main Committee for appropriate action. The action of the Main Committee becomes effective only after confirmation by letter ballot of the Committee and approval by ASME.

Proposed revisions to the Code approved by the Committee are submitted to the American National Standards Institute and

[SEC IV INTRODUCTION] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:33 2003)

to invite comments from all interested persons. After the allotted time for public review and final approval by ASME, revisions are published annually in Addenda to the Code.

Code Cases may be used in the construction of components to be stamped with the ASME Code symbol beginning with the date of their approval by ASME.

After Code revisions are approved by ASME, they may be used beginning with the date of issuance shown on the Addenda. Revisions, except for revisions to material specifications in Section II, Parts A and B, become mandatory 6 months after such date of issuance, except for boilers or pressure vessels contracted for prior to the end of the 6 month period. Revisions to material specifications are originated by the American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM), and other recognized national or international organizations and are usually adopted by ASME. However, those revisions may or may not have any effect on the suitability of material, produced to earlier editions of specifications, for use in ASME construction. ASME material specifications approved for use in each construction Code are listed in the Appendices of Section II, Parts A and B. These Appendices list, for each specification, the latest edition adopted by ASME, and earlier and later editions considered by ASME to be identical for ASME construction.

Manufacturers and users of components are cautioned against making use of revisions and Cases that are less restrictive than former requirements without having assurance that they have been accepted by the proper authorities in the jurisdiction where the component is to be installed.

Each state and municipality in the United States and each province in Canada that adopts or accepts one or more Sections of the Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code is invited to appoint a representative to act on the Conference Committee to the Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee. Since the members of the Conference Committee are in active contact with the administration and enforcement of the rules, the requirements for inspection in this Code correspond with those in effect in their respective jurisdictions. The required qualifications for an Authorized Inspector under these rules may be obtained from the administrative authority of any state, municipality, or province which has adopted these rules.

The Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee in the formulation of its rules and in the establishment of maximum design and operating pressures considers materials, construction, methods of fabrication, inspection, and safety devices. Permission may be granted to regulatory bodies and organizations publishing safety standards to use a complete Section of the Code by reference. If usage of a Section, such as Section IX, involves exceptions, omissions, or changes in provisions, the intent of the Code might not be attained.

Where a state or other regulatory body, in the printing of any Section of the Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, makes additions or omissions, it is recommended that such changes be clearly indicated.

The National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors is composed of chief inspectors of states and municipalities in the United States and of provinces in Canada that have adopted the Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. This Board, since its organization in 1919, has functioned to uniformly administer and enforce the rules of the Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. The cooperation of that organization with the Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee has been extremely helpful.

The Code Committee does not rule on whether a component shall or shall not be constructed to the provisions of the Code. The Scope of each Section has been established to identify the components and parameters considered by the Committee in formulating the Code rules. Laws or regulations issued by municipality, state, provincial, federal, or other enforcement or regulatory bodies having jurisdiction at the location of an installation establish the mandatory applicability of the Code rules, in whole or in part, within their jurisdiction. Those laws or regulations may require the use of this Code for vessels or components not considered to be within its Scope or may establish additions or deletions in that Scope. Accordingly, inquiries regarding such laws or regulations are to be directed to the issuing enforcement or regulatory body.

Questions or issues regarding compliance of a specific component with the Code rules are to be directed to the ASME Certificate Holder (Manufacturer). Inquiries concerning the interpretation of the Code are to be directed to the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee. ASME is to be notified should questions arise concerning improper use of an ASME Code symbol.

The specifications for materials given in Section II are identical with or similar to those of the Specifications published by ASTM, AWS, and other recognized national or international organizations. When reference is made in an ASME material

[SEC IV INTRODUCTION] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:33 2003)

specification to a non-ASME specification for which a companion ASME specification exists, the reference shall be interpreted as applying to the ASME material specification. Not all materials included in the material specifications in Section II have been adopted for Code use. Usage is limited to those materials and grades adopted by at least one of the other Sections of the Code for application under rules of that Section. All materials allowed

by these various Sections and used for construction within the scope of their rules shall be furnished in accordance with material specifications contained in Section II or referenced in Appendices A of Section II, Parts A and B except where otherwise provided in Code Cases or in the applicable Section of the Code. Materials covered by these specifications are acceptable for use in items covered by the Code Sections only to the degree indicated in the applicable Section. Materials for Code use should preferably be ordered, produced, and documented on this basis; Appendix A to Section II, Part A and Appendix A to Section II, Part B list editions of ASME and year dates of ASTM specifications that meet ASME requirements and that may be used in Code construction. Material produced to an acceptable specification with requirements different from the requirements of the corresponding specifications listed in Appendix A of Part A or Part B may also be used in accordance with the above, provided the material manufacturer or vessel manufacturer certifies with evidence acceptable to the Authorized Inspector that the corresponding requirements of specifications listed in Appendix A of Part A or Part B have been met. Material produced to an acceptable material specification is not limited as to country of origin.

When required by context in this Section, the singular shall be interpreted as the plural, and vice-versa; and the feminine, masculine, or neuter gender shall be treated as such other gender as appropriate.

Publication of the SI (Metric) Edition of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code was discontinued with the 1986 Edition. Effective October 1, 1986, the SI Edition was withdrawn as an ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code document.

STATEMENT OF POLICY ON THE USE OF CODE SYMBOLS AND CODE AUTHORIZATION IN ADVERTISING

ASME has established procedures to authorize qualified organizations to perform various activities in accordance with the requirements of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. It is the aim of the Society to provide recognition of organizations so authorized. An organization holding authorization to perform various activities in accordance with the requirements of the Code may state this capability in its advertising literature.

Organizations that are authorized to use Code Symbols for marking items or constructions which have been constructed and inspected in compliance with the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code are issued Certificates of Authorization. It is the aim of the Society to maintain the standing of the Code Symbols for the benefit of the users, the enforcement jurisdictions, and the holders of the symbols who comply with all requirements.

Based on these objectives, the following policy has been established on the usage in advertising of facsimiles of the symbols, Certificates of Authorization, and reference to Code construction. The American Society of Mechanical Engineers does not "approve," "certify," "rate," or "endorse" any item, construction, or activity and there shall be no statements or implications which might so indicate. An organization holding a Code Symbol and/or a Certificate of Authorization may state in advertising literature that items, constructions, or activities "are built (produced or performed) or activities conducted in accordance with the requirements of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code," or "meet the requirements of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code."

The ASME Symbol shall be used only for stamping and nameplates as specifically provided in the Code. However, facsimiles may be used for the purpose of fostering the use of such construction. Such usage may be by an association or a society, or by a holder of a Code Symbol who may also use the facsimile in advertising to show that clearly specified items will carry the symbol. General usage is permitted only when all of a manufacturer's items are constructed under the rules.

The ASME logo, which is the cloverleaf with the letters ASME within, shall not be used by any organization other than ASME.

STATEMENT OF POLICY ON THE USE OF ASME MARKING TO IDENTIFY MANUFACTURED ITEMS

The ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code provides rules for the construction of boilers, pressure vessels, and nuclear

components. This includes requirements for materials, design, fabrication, examination, inspection, and stamping. Items constructed in accordance with all of the applicable rules of the Code are identified with the official Code Symbol Stamp described in the governing Section of the Code.

Markings such as "ASME," "ASME Standard," or any other marking including "ASME" or the various Code Symbols shall not be used on any item which is not constructed in accordance with all of the applicable requirements of the Code.

Items shall not be described on ASME Data Report Forms nor on similar forms referring to ASME which tend to imply that all Code requirements have been met when, in fact, they have not been. Data Report Forms covering items not fully complying with ASME requirements should not refer to ASME or they should clearly identify all exceptions to the ASME requirements.

PERSONNEL ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee Subcommittees, Subgroups, and Working Groups

As of December 31, 1997

MAIN COMMITTEE

D. A. Canonico, *Chair*
G. G. Karcher, *Vice Chair*
J. S. Brzuszkiewicz, *Secretary*
R. W. Barnes
F. P. Barton
D. L. Berger
M. D. Bernstein
M. N. Bressler
W. J. Carter
T. M. Cullen
J. R. Farr
R. E. Feigel
J. G. Feldstein
M. Gold
O. F. Hedden
A. J. Justin
D. F. Landers
W. M. Lundy
J. R. MacKay
T. J. Mawson
T. G. McCarty
G. C. Millman
R. A. Moen
C. C. Neely
C. J. Pieper
R. F. Reedy
B. W. Roberts
F. J. Schaaf, Jr.
A. Selz
K. K. Tam
D. E. Tanner

EXECUTIVE COMMITTEE (MAIN COMMITTEE)

G. G. Karcher, *Chair*
D. A. Canonico, *Vice Chair*
J. S. Brzuszkiewicz, *Secretary*
F. P. Barton
J. R. Farr
J. G. Feldstein
M. Gold
O. F. Hedden
A. J. Justin
J. R. MacKay
T. G. McCarty
T. P. Pastor
T. E. Quaka
R. F. Reedy
A. J. Spencer

HONORARY MEMBERS (MAIN COMMITTEE)

R. D. Bonner
R. J. Bosnak
H. M. Canavan
L. J. Chockie
J. S. Clarke
W. E. Cooper
W. D. Doty
R. C. Griffin
E. J. Hemzy
E. C. Kistner, Jr.
J. E. Lattan
J. LeCoff
F. N. Moschini
C. E. Rawlins
W. E. Somers
L. P. Zick, Jr.

HONORS AND AWARDS COMMITTEE

J. R. MacKay, *Chair*
A. J. Spencer, *Vice Chair*
F. R. Lyons, *Secretary*
F. P. Barton
W. J. Carter
J. G. Feldstein
M. Gold
F. E. Gregor
E. C. Kistner, Jr.
T. P. Pastor
R. F. Reedy

[SEC IV INTRODUCTION] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:34 2003)

MARINE CONFERENCE GROUP

J. Tiratto, *Chair*
C. F. Banks
L. W. Douthwaite
J. L. Jones
G. F. Wright

CONFERENCE COMMITTEE

D. E. Tanner - Tennessee *(Chair)*
R. D. Reetz - North Dakota *(Vice Chair)*
A. J. Justin - National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors *(Secretary)*
R. J. Aben, Jr. - Michigan
J. S. Aclaro - Los Angeles, California
E. A. Anderson - Chicago, Illinois
J. Anderson - South Dakota
R. Barkdoll - Washington
F. P. Barton - Virginia
C. Castle - Nova Scotia, Canada
R. R. Cate - Louisiana
L. Chase - Northwest Territories, Canada
R. A. Coomes - Kentucky
J. Corcoran - Connecticut
M. H. Diehl, Jr. - Maryland
D. A. Douin - Illinois
D. Eastman - Newfoundland and Labrador, Canada
G. L. Ebeyer - New Orleans, Louisiana
F. Ellis - New Hampshire
E. Everett - Georgia
P. C. Hackford - Utah
D. Hanrath - North Carolina
J. B. Harlan - Delaware
K. Hynes - Prince Edward Island, Canada
D. T. Jagger - Ohio
D. J. Jenkins - Kansas
M. Kotb - Quebec, Canada
J. P. Larson - Minnesota
K. T. Lau - Alberta, Canada
J. Lemire - California
G. A. Lundberg - Florida
W. C. Lundine - Oregon
M. A. Malek - Maine
I. W. Mault - Manitoba, Canada
H. T. McEwen - Mississippi
A. W. Meiring - Indiana
R. Mile - Ontario, Canada
T. J. Monroe - Oklahoma
Y. Nagpaul - Hawaii

[SEC IV INTRODUCTION] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:34 2003)

J. D. Payton - Pennsylvania
D. K. Peetz - Missouri
D. C. Price - Yukon Territory, Canada
R. S. Pucek - Wisconsin
T. E. Rennie - Arizona
L. Roussinos - British Columbia, Canada
M. Shuff - West Virginia
R. Snyder - New Jersey
N. Surtees - Saskatchewan, Canada
M. J. Verhagen - Wisconsin
R. B. West - Iowa
M. J. Wheel - Vermont
K. A. White - Nevada
R. K. White - New York
T. F. Wickham - Rhode Island
C. S. Withers - Colorado

SUBCOMMITTEE ON POWER BOILERS (SC I)

J. R. MacKay, *Chair*
M. D. Bernstein, *Vice Chair*
P. D. Stumpf, *Secretary*
D. L. Berger
E. Everett
D. N. French
F. R. Gerety
J. Hainsworth
T. E. Hansen
J. S. Hunter
W. L. Lowry
T. C. McGough
P. A. Molvie
D. K. Parrish
J. T. Pillow
R. G. Presnak
B. W. Roberts
R. D. Schueler, Jr.
R. V. Wielgoszinski
R. L. Williams

Subgroup on Design (SC I)

M. D. Bernstein, *Chair*
R. D. Schueler, Jr., *Vice Chair*
P. A. Molvie, *Secretary*
M. A. Farrugia
J. D. Fishburn
C. F. Jeerings

[SEC IV INTRODUCTION] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:34 2003)

K. C. Morrison
A. Nassif
N. Surtees
R. V. Wielgoszinski

Subgroup on Fabrication and Examination (SC I)

D. L. Berger, *Chair*
R. E. McLaughlin, *Secretary*
R. W. Boyce
D. N. French
J. Hainsworth
T. E. Hansen
M. H. Iken
J. M. Lyons
J. T. Pillow
M. E. Reese
R. D. Schueler, Jr.
R. F. Slack, Sr.
R. V. Wielgoszinski

Subgroup on General Requirements (SC I)

T. C. McGough, *Chair*
M. D. Bernstein, *Vice Chair*
W. L. Lowry, *Secretary*
D. L. Berger
E. Everett
F. R. Gerety
J. Hainsworth
C. F. Jeerings
J. M. Lyons
R. E. McLaughlin
D. K. Parrish
J. T. Pillow
W. E. Somers
R. L. Williams

Subgroup on Materials (SC I)

B. W. Roberts, *Chair*
C. E. Spaeder, Jr., *Chair*
J. S. Hunter, *Secretary*
T. M. Cullen
D. N. French
J. F. Henry
J. P. Libbrecht
F. Masuyama
J. M. Tanzosh

Subgroup on Piping (SC I)

T. E. Hansen, *Chair*

[SEC IV INTRODUCTION] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:35 2003)

D. L. Berger
M. D. Bernstein
P. D. Edwards
W. L. Lowry
T. C. McGough
R. G. Presnak
E. Whittle
P. L. Ziegler

SUBCOMMITTEE ON MATERIALS (SC II)

M. Gold, *Chair*
T. M. Cullen, *Vice Chair*
F. R. Lyons, *Secretary*
A. P. Ahrendt
M. N. Bressler
A. Cohen
R. Dirscherl
W. D. Doty
W. D. Edsall
D. Gandy
M. H. Gilkey
J. J. Heger
J. F. Henry
G. C. Hsu
F. Masuyama
E. Michalopoulos
R. A. Moen
R. K. Nanstad
E. G. Nisbett
J. T. Parsons
D. W. Rahoi
B. W. Roberts
E. Shapiro
C. E. Spaeder, Jr.
R. W. Swindeman
J. M. Tanzosh
B. E. Thurgood
A. W. Zeuthen

Subgroup on External Pressure (SC II)

R. W. Mikitka, *Chair*
D. J. Green
D. S. Griffin
E. Michalopoulos
B. R. Morelock
D. Nadel
C. E. Spaeder, Jr.
C. H. Sturgeon

[SEC IV INTRODUCTION] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:35 2003)

Subgroup on Ferrous Specifications (SC II)

E. G. Nisbett, *Chair*
B. M. Dingman
W. D. Edsall
T. Graham
W. N. Holliday
E. A. Jonas
D. C. Krouse
J. F. Longenecker
W. C. Mack
A. S. Melilli
J. T. Parsons
E. J. Rozic, Jr.
E. Upitis
A. W. Zeuthen
R. H. Zong

Subgroup on International Material Specifications (SC II)

J. T. Parsons, *Chair*
D. C. Agarwal
J. Cameron
R. Dirscherl
W. D. Doty
D. M. Fryer
M. Gold
M. H. Iken
W. M. Lundy
H. Masahisa
T. F. Miskell
F. Osweiller
A. P. Povilonis
R. D. Schueler, Jr.
R. R. Seeley
E. A. Steen
E. Upitis
E. O. Woolridge

Subgroup on Nonferrous Alloys (SC II)

D. W. Rahoi, *Chair*
D. C. Agarwal, *Secretary*
W. R. Apblett
L. G. Coffee
A. Cohen
R. Dirscherl
M. H. Gilkey
G. C. Hsu
M. Katcher

[SEC IV INTRODUCTION] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:35 2003)

E. Shapiro
L. E. Shoemaker
R. C. Sutherlin

Subgroup on Strength, Ferrous Alloys (SC II)

B. W. Roberts, *Chair*
J. M. Tanzosh, *Secretary*
A. P. Ahrendt
W. R. Apblett
T. M. Cullen
M. Gold
J. J. Heger
C. L. Hoffmann
A. Iseda
F. Masuyama
R. A. Moen
D. W. Rahoi
C. E. Spaeder, Jr.
R. W. Swindeman
B. E. Thurgood

Subgroup on Strength of Weldments (SC II & SC IX)

C. E. Spaeder, Jr., *Chair*
W. D. Doty
D. W. Rahoi
B. W. Roberts
C. Robino
W. J. Sperko
J. M. Tanzosh
B. E. Thurgood

Subgroup on Toughness (SC II)

J. M. Barsom
D. A. Hansen
A. Selz
R. S. Vecchio
S. Yukawa
R. Zawierucha

SUBCOMMITTEE ON NUCLEAR POWER (SC III)

C. J. Pieper, *Chair*
R. M. Jessee, *Vice Chair*
C. A. Sanna, *Secretary*
J. P. Allen III
Y. Asada
R. W. Barnes
J. N. Baysden
W. H. Borter

[SEC IV INTRODUCTION] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:35 2003)

E. B. Branch
M. N. Bressler
F. C. Cherny
G. D. Cooper
R. P. Deubler
W. D. Doty
F. R. Drahos
K. Ennis
B. A. Erler
D. Hanrath
C. L. Hoffmann
K. H. Hsu
D. F. Landers
W. C. LaRochelle
T. J. Mawson
W. N. McLean
R. A. Moen
D. B. Nickerson
R. F. Perrin
R. F. Reedy
M. W. Smith
J. D. Stevenson
R. E. Tome
K. R. Wichman

Subgroup on Containment Systems for Spent Fuel and High-Level Waste Transport Packagings (SC III)

J. D. Stevenson, *Chair*
H. H. Chung
R. R. Doggart
E. L. Farrow
K. Goldmann
R. H. Jones
W. H. Lake
R. W. Lambert
H. W. Lee
P. McConnell
R. E. Nickell
D. J. Nolan
D. T. Raske
T. Saegusa
R. H. Smith
K. B. Sorenson
P. Turula
N. Urabe
C. R. Witt
S. Yukawa

[SEC IV INTRODUCTION] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:36 2003)

Subgroup on Design (SC III)

R. W. Barnes, *Chair*
E. B. Branch, *Vice Chair*
R. S. Hill III, *Secretary*
Y. Asada
M. N. Bressler
C. W. Bruny
J. R. Cole
G. D. Cooper
R. P. Deubler
N. W. Edwards
R. E. Gimple
D. Hanrath
R. W. Haupt
T. Iida
B. Jarman
D. F. Landers
W. N. McLean
D. B. Nickerson
E. C. Rodabaugh
J. R. Santangelo
G. C. Slagis
J. D. Stevenson
J. H. Wawrzeniak
K. R. Wichman
R. Wray

Working Group on Administration (SG-D) (SC III)

E. B. Branch, *Chair*
R. W. Barnes, *Vice Chair*
R. S. Hill III, *Secretary*
C. W. Bruny
G. D. Cooper
R. P. Deubler
J. T. Land
D. F. Landers
W. N. McLean
D. B. Nickerson
J. R. Santangelo
R. Wray

Working Group on Core Support Structures (SG-D) (SC III)

J. T. Land, *Chair*
R. H. Hansen
K. B. Larsen
J. F. Mullooly
B. L. Silverblatt

Working Group on Dynamic and Extreme Load Conditions (SG-D) (SC III)

[SEC IV INTRODUCTION] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:36 2003)

Working Group on Dynamic and Extreme Load Conditions (SG-D) (SC III)

R. Wray, *Chair*
A. E. Meligi, *Secretary*
P. L. Anderson
M. K. Au-Yang
R. D. Blevins
G. J. Bohm
D. L. Caldwell
P. Y. Chen
A. Hadjian
M. Hartzman
W. S. LaPay
H. Lockert
P. R. Olson
R. F. Perry
J. Wallach

Working Group on Piping (SG-D) (SC III)

D. F. Landers, *Chair*
R. S. Hill III, *Vice Chair*
P. Hirschberg, *Secretary*
T. M. Adams
G. A. Antaki
J. R. Cole
A. B. Glickstein
R. W. Haupt
J. C. Hennart
R. D. Hookway
R. B. Jenkins
K. A. Manoly
J. C. Minichiello
S. E. Moore
A. N. Nguyen
D. B. Nickerson
O. O. Oyamada
R. D. Patel
E. C. Rodabaugh
J. R. Santangelo
M. S. Sills
G. C. Slagis
E. A. Wais

Working Group on Pumps (SG-D) (SC III)

D. B. Nickerson, *Chair*
H. L. Brammer
P. Burchett
R. E. Cornman, Jr.
A. A. Fraser

[SEC IV INTRODUCTION] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:36 2003)

M. Higuchi
G. R. Jones
J. W. Leavitt
J. E. Livingston
R. A. Schussler
H. Tafarrodi
G. K. Vaghasia

Working Group on Supports (SG-D) (SC III)

R. P. Deubler, *Chair*
R. M. Dulin, Jr., *Secretary*
U. S. Bandyopadhyay
F. J. Birch
M. N. Bressler
J. R. Cole
J. C. Finneran, Jr.
R. W. Haupt
J. C. Hennart
A. S. Laurenson
A. Lee
R. J. Masterson
A. E. Meligi
A. N. Nguyen
J. R. Stinson

Working Group on Valves (SG-D) (SC III)

W. N. McLean, *Chair*
E. A. Bake
R. R. Brodin
W. G. Knecht
R. Koester
J. J. McGavin
S. N. Shields
H. R. Sonderegger
J. C. Tsacoyeanes
R. G. Visalli
J. R. Zahorsky

Working Group on Vessels (SG-D) (SC III)

C. W. Bruny, *Chair*
T. K. Burr, Sr.
G. D. Cooper
G. A. Deaver
N. W. Edwards
D. Hanrath
W. J. Heilker
B. Jarman
T. M. Khan

[SEC IV INTRODUCTION] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:36 2003)

O. Maekawa
K. A. Manoly
A. Merend
G. K. Miller
W. Z. Novak
E. Pelling
H. S. Thornton

Special Working Group on Environmental Effects (SG-D) (SC III)

R. S. Hill III, *Chair*
Y. Asada
W. J. Heilker
C. L. Hoffmann
R. A. Moen
W. Z. Novak
S. Yukawa

Special Working Group on Seismic Piping Rules (SG-D) (SC III)

E. B. Branch, *Chair*
T. M. Adams
G. A. Antaki
R. D. Hookway
J. C. Minichiello
M. S. Sills
E. A. Wais

Subgroup on General Requirements (SC III & SC 3C)

W. C. LaRochelle, *Chair*
K. Ennis, *Secretary*
A. Appleton
J. R. Barbee
J. N. Baysden
L. M. Beason
B. H. Berg
R. E. Kelley
G. S. Korin
A. S. Laurenson
C. Lizotte
M. J. Meyer
M. R. Minick
L. C. Oakes
R. F. Perrin
U. Potapovs
B. B. Scott
D. E. Tanner
D. V. Walshe

Subgroup on Materials, Fabrication, and Examination (SC III)

[SEC IV INTRODUCTION] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:37 2003)

C. L. Hoffmann, *Chair*
G. P. Milley, *Secretary*
C. W. Allison
D. Doyle
F. R. Drahos
G. M. Foster
G. B. Georgiev
J. E. Harris
R. W. Jackson
R. M. Jessee
C. C. Kim
R. A. Moen
C. J. Pieper
R. R. Seeley
N. M. Simpson
R. C. Soin
W. J. Sperko
K. B. Stuckey
S. Yukawa

Subgroup on Pressure Relief (SC III)

F. C. Cherny, *Chair*
S. F. Harrison, Jr.
E. M. Petrosky
M. W. Smith
A. L. Szeglin
B. S. York
J. R. Zahorsky

Special Working Group on Editing and Review (SC III)

R. F. Reedy, *Chair*
W. H. Borter
M. N. Bressler
R. P. Deubler
B. A. Erler
W. C. LaRochelle
M. W. Smith
J. D. Stevenson
E. O. Woolridge

JOINT ACI-ASME COMMITTEE ON CONCRETE COMPONENTS FOR NUCLEAR SERVICE (SC 3C)

B. A. Erler, *Chair*
C. A. Sanna, *Secretary*
J. P. Allen III
R. M. Attar
A. C. Eberhardt
J. Gutierrez
D. J. Haavik

[SEC IV INTRODUCTION] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:37 2003)

M. F. Hessheimer
T. E. Johnson
G. R. Murphy
S. F. Putman
B. B. Scott
R. E. Shewmaker
J. D. Stevenson
A. Y. Wong

Subgroup on Design (SC 3C)

D. G. Adams
A. C. Eberhardt
T. E. Johnson
S. F. Putman
R. E. Shewmaker
J. D. Stevenson
A. Y. Wong

Subgroup on Materials, Construction, and Examination (SC 3C)

D. J. Haavik, *Chair*
J. F. Artuso
R. M. Attar
B. A. Erler
J. Gutierrez

SUBCOMMITTEE ON HEATING BOILERS (SC IV)

F. P. Barton, *Chair*
P. A. Molvie, *Vice Chair*
B. P. Feder, *Secretary*
R. B. Duggan
W. L. Haag, Jr.
W. M. Hiddleston
J. D. Hoh
K. M. McTague
R. I. Mullican
E. A. Nordstrom
J. L. Seigle
D. E. Tanner
S. V. Voorhees
R. H. Weigel
R. V. Wielgoszinski
J. I. Woodworth
T. L. Bedeaux, Alternate

Subgroup on Care and Operation of Heating Boilers (SC IV)

J. I. Woodworth, *Chair*
B. P. Feder, *Secretary*
K. J. Hoey
J. D. Hoh

[SEC IV INTRODUCTION] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:37 2003)

F. M. Lucas
K. M. McTague
P. A. Molvie
R. I. Mullican
R. H. Weigel
T. F. Wickham
T. L. Bedeaux, Alternate

Subgroup on Cast Iron Boilers (SC IV)

K. M. McTague, *Chair*
R. B. Duggan
R. H. Weigel
T. F. Wickham
J. I. Woodworth
T. L. Bedeaux, Alternate

Subgroup on Water Heaters (SC IV)

W. L. Haag, Jr., *Chair*
T. D. Gantt
W. M. Hiddleston
F. M. Lucas
K. M. McTague
R. I. Mullican
D. Smith
D. E. Tanner
M. A. Taylor

Subgroup on Welded Boilers (SC IV)

P. A. Molvie, *Chair*
T. L. Bedeaux
D. H. Mapes
E. A. Nordstrom
J. L. Seigle
R. F. Slack, Sr.
R. P. Sullivan
D. E. Tanner
R. V. Wielgoszinski

SUBCOMMITTEE ON NONDESTRUCTIVE EXAMINATION (SC V)

T. G. McCarty, *Chair*
J. E. Batey, *Vice Chair*
F. S. Fitzgerald, *Secretary*
A. S. Birks
B. H. Clark, Jr.
W. T. Clayton
R. A. Coomes
N. Y. Faransso
H. C. Graber
O. F. Hedden

[SEC IV INTRODUCTION] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:37 2003)

G. W. Hembree
F. B. Kovacs
J. F. Manning
W. C. McGaughey
R. D. McGuire

Subgroup on General Requirements/Personnel Qualifications and Inquiries (SC V)

R D. McGuire, *Chair*
J. E. Batey
W. T. Clayton
N. Y. Faransso
H. C. Graber
G. W. Hembree
J. R. MacKay
J. P. Swezy

Subgroup on Surface Examination Methods (SC V)

H. C. Graber, *Chair*
S. J. Akrin
T. Alexander
A. S. Birks
B. H. Clark
R. A. Coomes
G. W. Hembree

Subgroup on Volumetric Methods (SC V)

J. E. Batey, *Chair*
S. J. Akrin
W. T. Clayton
N. Y. Faransso
H. C. Graber
G. W. Hembree
B. Kellerhall
E. K. Kietzman
F. B. Kovacs
R. W. Kruzic
J. F. Manning
W. C. McGaughey
J. R. Mitchell

Working Group on Acoustic Emissions (SG-VM) (SC V)

B. H. Clark, Jr.
P. M. Horrigan
J. F. Manning
J. R. Mitchell

Working Group on Radiography (SG-VM) (SC V)

G. W. Hembree, *Chair*
S. J. Akrin

[SEC IV INTRODUCTION] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:37 2003)

T. Alexander
J. E. Batey
N. Y. Faransso
H. C. Graber
F. B. Kovacs

Working Group on Ultrasonics (SG-VM) (SC V)

W. T. Clayton, *Chair*
O. F. Hedden
B. Kellerhall
E. K. Kietzman
J. F. Manning
W. C. McGaughey
R. Paillaman
F. J. Sattler
M. L. Shakinovsky

SUBCOMMITTEE ON PRESSURE VESSELS (SC VIII)

T. P. Pastor, *Chair*
K. Mokhtarian, *Vice Chair*
A. J. Roby, *Secretary*
A. P. Ahrendt
V. Bogosian
S. M. Caldwell
W. J. Carter
S. C. Cyr
R. Dirscherl
R. M. Elliott
J. R. Farr
R. E. Feigel
J. G. Feldstein
G. L. Hollinger
M. J. Houle
W. S. Jacobs
G. G. Karcher
G. B. Komora
K. T. Lau
R. W. Mikitka
U. R. Miller
C. C. Neely
K. J. Schneider
A. Selz
J. R. Sims, Jr.
A. J. Spencer
E. A. Steen
K. K. Tam
E. L. Thomas, Jr.

[SEC IV INTRODUCTION] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:38 2003)

Subgroup on Design (SC VIII)

U. R. Miller, *Chair*
R. E. Knoblock, *Secretary*
M. R. Bauman
M. R. Breach
S. M. Caldwell
N. W. Edwards
J. R. Farr
J. A. Hayward
G. L. Hollinger
W. S. Jacobs
G. G. Karcher
G. B. Komora
R. W. Mikitka
K. Mokhtarian
T. P. Pastor
M. D. Rana
A. Selz
S. C. Shah
J. W. Stokes
K. K. Tam
E. L. Thomas, Jr.

Subgroup on Fabrication and Inspection (SC VIII)

E. A. Steen, *Chair*
K. Mokhtarian, *Vice Chair*
W. J. Bees
R. W. Boyce
S. C. Cyr
R. E. Feigel
H. E. Gordon
M. J. Houle
W. S. Jacobs
R. A. Johnson
A. S. Lester III
F. C. Ouyang
M. J. Rice
W. P. Webb

Subgroup on General Requirements (SC VIII)

R. M. Elliott, *Chair*
A. P. Ahrendt
V. Bogosian
W. J. Carter
W. P. Crow
J. P. Glaspie
C. R. Good

[SEC IV INTRODUCTION] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:38 2003)

D. B. Kadakia
J. C. Keenan
W. E. Laveck, Jr.
A. S. Mann
C. C. Neely
A. S. Olivares
K. J. Schneider
A. J. Spencer

Subgroup on Materials (SC VIII)

R. Dirscherl, *Chair*
D. C. Agarwal
A. P. Ahrendt
J. Cameron
W. D. Doty
W. D. Edsall
M. Katcher
W. M. Lundy
E. E. Morgenegg
E. G. Nisbett
J. T. Parsons
D. W. Rahoi
K. K. Tam
B. K. Thakur

Special Working Group on Heat Transfer Equipment (SC VIII)

G. B. Komora, *Chair*
R. P. Zoldak, *Secretary*
C. F. Andreone
D. E. Bolt
S. M. Caldwell
T. K. Haldas
M. J. Holtz
W. G. Jandrasits
R. Mahadeen
U. R. Miller
F. Osweiller
J. E. Soehrens
A. I. Soler
W. A. Treff
S. Yokell

Special Working Group on High-Pressure Vessels (SC VIII)

J. R. Sims, Jr., *Chair*
P. A. Reddington, *Secretary*
L. P. Antalffy
J. E. Baxter
R. C. Biel

[SEC IV INTRODUCTION] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:38 2003)

T. B. Boyd
D. J. Burns
P. N. Chaku
E. L. Danfelt
R. E. Feigel
D. M. Fryer
J. L. Heck, Jr.
A. H. Honza
V. T. Hwang
M. M. James
P. Jansson
J. A. Kapp
D. P. Kendall
A. K. Khare
S. C. Mordre
G. J. Mraz
E. H. Perez
L. M. Picqueur
E. D. Roll
W. L. Stewart
J. F. Sullivan
F. W. Tatar

Special Working Group on Toughness (SC VIII)

W. S. Jacobs, *Chair*
J. Cameron
W. D. Doty
D. A. Hansen
G. G. Karcher
G. B. Komora
K. Mokhtarian
J. L. Mooney
C. C. Neely
M. D. Rana
J. W. Stokes

SUBCOMMITTEE ON WELDING (SC IX)

J. G. Feldstein, *Chair*
W. J. Sperko, *Vice Chair*
J. Labrador, *Secretary*
R. Barkdoll
D. A. Bowers
M. L. Carpenter
W. D. Doty
P. D. Flenner
M. J. Houle
R. A. Johnson

[SEC IV INTRODUCTION] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:38 2003)

W. M. Lundy
R. D. McGuire
J. J. Meyer
A. H. Miller
B. R. Newmark
P. P. Norris
S. D. Reynolds, Jr.
W. K. Scattergood
G. W. Spohn III
M. J. Stanko
J. M. Tanzosh
R. R. Young

Subgroup on Brazing (SC IX)

M. J. Houle, *Chair*
A. S. Artayet
M. L. Carpenter
C. F. Jeerings
A. H. Miller
C. Robino

Subgroup on General Requirements (SC IX)

B. R. Newmark, *Chair*
R. Barkdoll
P. R. Evans
P. C. Filean
R. M. Jessee
D. W. Mann
A. S. Olivares
C. E. Wainwright
R. A. Weiss
K. R. Willens

Subgroup on Materials (SC IX)

M. L. Carpenter, *Chair*
L. P. Connor
P. D. Flenner
R. M. Jessee
A. H. Miller
H. A. Sadler
C. E. Sainz
C. E. Spaeder, Jr.
W. J. Sperko
M. J. Stanko
R. R. Young

Subgroup on Performance Qualification (SC IX)

J. J. Meyer, *Chair*
V. A. Bell

[SEC IV INTRODUCTION] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:39 2003)

D. A. Bowers
L. P. Connor
R. A. Coomes
P. D. Flenner
G. Herrmann
M. J. Houle
W. M. Lundy
R. D. McGuire
S. R. Nordman
P. P. Norris
W. K. Scattergood
G. W. Spohn III

Subgroup on Procedure Qualification (SC IX)

J. J. Meyer, *Chair*
R. K. Brown, Jr.
R. A. Johnson
A. H. Miller
P. P. Norris
A. S. Olivares
F. C. Ouyang
S. D. Reynolds, Jr.
M. J. Rice
W. K. Scattergood
W. J. Sperko
T. C. Wiesner

SUBCOMMITTEE ON FIBER-REINFORCED PLASTIC PRESSURE VESSELS (SC X)

P. J. Conlisk, *Chair*
D. Eisberg, *Vice Chair*
A. J. Roby, *Secretary*
K. M. Agrawal
F. L. Brown
J. L. Bustillos
T. W. Cowley
T. J. Fowler
S. V. Hoa
L. E. Hunt
J. C. Murphy
A. L. Newberry
D. J. Painter
J. A. Rolston
B. F. Shelley
P. R. Wilt

SUBCOMMITTEE ON NUCLEAR INSERVICE INSPECTION (SC XI)

O. F. Hedden, *Chair*
T. J. Mawson, *Vice Chair*

[SEC IV INTRODUCTION] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:39 2003)

G. L. Fechter, *Secretary*
C. W. Allison
W. H. Bamford, Jr.
R. L. Beverly
J. M. Bloom
R. W. Boyce
C. D. Cowfer
D. D. Davis
R. L. Dyle
T. N. Epps III
R. E. Gimple
F. E. Gregor
L. B. Gross
K. Iida
C. A. Ireland
R. D. Kerr
D. F. Landers
T. F. Lentz
J. T. Lindberg
G. C. Millman
C. R. Osman
P. C. Riccardella
L. Sage
F. J. Schaaf, Jr.
J. E. Staffiera
R. P. Sullivan
R. W. Swayne
R. J. Tamminga
J. C. Tobin
R. A. Yonekawa

Honorary Members (SC XI)

S. H. Bush
L. J. Chockie
J. P. Houstrup
L. R. Katz
R. R. MacCary

Subgroup on Evaluation Standards (SC XI)

W. H. Bamford, Jr., *Chair*
M. Kupinski, *Secretary*
J. M. Bloom
R. C. Cipolla
R. M. Gamble
T. J. Griesbach
P. J. Hijeck
K. Iida

[SEC IV INTRODUCTION] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:39 2003)

Y. Imamura
J. G. Merkle
S. Ranganath
P. C. Riccardella
D. A. Scarth
W. L. Server
C. A. Tomes
W. A. Van Der Sluys
K. R. Wichman
G. M. Wilkowski
K. K. Yoon
S. Yukawa

Working Group on Flaw Evaluation (SG-ES) (SC XI)

R. C. Cipolla, *Chair*
W. H. Bamford, Jr.
M. Basol
J. M. Bloom
E. Friedman
T. J. Griesbach
F. D. Hayes
D. N. Hopkins
K. Iida
Y. Imamura
M. Kupinski
H. S. Mehta
J. G. Merkle
J. S. Panesar
R. K. Qashu
S. Ranganath
D. A. Scarth
T. S. Schurman
W. L. Server
F. A. Simonen
K. R. Wichman
G. M. Wilkowski
K. K. Yoon
S. Yukawa
A. Zahoor
V. A. Zilberstein

Working Group on Operating Plant Criteria (SG-ES) (SC XI)

T. J. Griesbach, *Chair*
W. H. Bamford, Jr.
H. Behnke
B. A. Bishop
W. F. Brady

[SEC IV INTRODUCTION] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:39 2003)

E. Friedman
S. R. Gosselin
E. M. Hackett
P. J. Hijeck
S. D. Leshnoff
P. Manbeck
J. S. Panesar
W. E. Pennell
J. H. Phillips
S. Ranganath
S. T. Rosinski
W. L. Server
E. A. Siegel
F. A. Simonen
T. D. Spry
K. K. Yoon
S. Yukawa

Working Group on Pipe Flaw Evaluation (SG-ES) (SC XI)

D. A. Scarth, *Chair*
G. M. Wilkowski, *Secretary*
W. H. Bamford, Jr.
J. M. Bloom
R. C. Cipolla
N. G. Cofie
S. K. Daftuar
G. H. De Boo
E. Friedman
D. N. Hopkins
K. Iida
H. S. Mehta
J. G. Merkle
J. S. Panesar
D. Quinones
K. K. Yoon
S. Yukawa
A. Zahoor
V. A. Zilberstein

Subgroup on Liquid-Metal-Cooled Systems (SC XI)

C. G. McCargar, *Chair*
W. L. Chase
S. Hattori
R. Hundal
W. Kwant
J. C. Tobin

Working Group on Liquid-Metal Reactor Covers (SG-LMCS) (SC XI)

W. L. Chase, *Chair*

[SEC IV INTRODUCTION] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:39 2003)

S. Hattori
R. Hundal
W. Kwant

Subgroup on Nondestructive Examination (SC XI)

R. L. Beverly, *Chair*
N. R. Bentley, *Secretary*
D. C. Adamonis
F. L. Becker
F. T. Carr
C. B. Cheezem
W. T. Clayton
C. D. Cowfer
F. J. Dodd
T. N. Epps III
D. O. Henry
M. R. Hum
S. N. Liu
R. D. McGuire
M. C. Modes
C. R. Osman
F. J. Schaaf, Jr.
J. C. Spanner, Jr.
C. J. Wirtz

Working Group on Personnel Qualification and Surface Visual and Eddy Current Examination (SG-NDE) (SC XI)

C. J. Wirtz, *Secretary*
B. L. Curtis
N. Economos
H. B. Garland
D. O. Henry
H. E. Houserman
J. J. McArdle III
R. D. McGuire
S. A. Redner
M. F. Sherwin
A. L. Smith
D. Spake
J. C. Spanner, Sr.
J. C. Spanner, Jr.
T. V. Tran

Working Group on Pressure Testing (SG-NDE) (SC XI)

G. P. Alexander
T. M. Anselmi
T. B. Basso
J. Boughman
T. R. Bugelholl

[SEC IV INTRODUCTION] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:40 2003)

R. J. Cimoch
C. E. Jensen
W. N. Keisler
D. Lamond
F. J. Schaaf, Jr.
D. Terao

Working Group on Procedure Qualification and Volumetric Examination (SG-NDE) (SC XI)

C. D. Cowfer, *Chair*
C. E. Larsen, *Secretary*
D. C. Adamonis
F. L. Becker
N. R. Bentley
B. Bevins
F. T. Carr
C. B. Cheezem
W. T. Clayton
S. R. Doctor
F. J. Dodd
T. N. Epps III
B. Kellerhall
G. A. Lofthus
J. K. McClanahan
M. C. Modes
M. Saporito
T. T. Taylor
S. M. Walker

Subgroup on Repairs, Replacements, and Modifications (SC XI)

R. E. Gimple, *Chair*
W. C. Holston, *Secretary*
R. W. Boyce
M. N. Bressler
S. B. Brown
C. E. Hartz
R. A. Hermann
C. A. Ireland
R. D. Kerr
D. F. Landers
R. S. Lewis
T. J. Mawson
M. S. McDonald
R. R. Stevenson
R. P. Sullivan
R. W. Swayne
R. E. Tome
D. E. Waskey

[SEC IV INTRODUCTION] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:40 2003)

Working Group on Design Reconciliation (SG-RR&M) (SC XI)

W. C. Holston, *Chair*
J. T. Conner, *Secretary*
R. W. Boyce
S. B. Brown
J. E. Charnley
T. E. Hiss
E. V. Imbro
D. N. Irvine, Jr.
D. F. Landers
R. W. Swayne
F. Tehranchi
H. J. Thailer
R. E. Tome

Working Group on Responsibilities and Program Requirements (SG-RR&M) (SC XI)

R. A. Yonekawa, *Chair*
R. R. Stevenson, *Secretary*
S. K. Fisher
G. M. Foster
C. E. Hartz
R. S. Lewis
M. S. McDonald
U. Potapovs
S. M. Swilley
A. J. Walcutt
J. Ghergurovich, *Alternate*

Working Group on Welding and Special Repair Processes (SG-RR&M) (SC XI)

D. E. Waskey, *Chair*
R. E. Cantrell, *Secretary*
D. A. Delsignore
A. L. Finney
P. D. Fisher
A. J. Giannuzzi
R. A. Hermann
R. P. Indap
R. D. Kerr
B. R. Newton
P. P. Norris
J. E. O'Sullivan
J. H. Sodergren
K. R. Willens

Subgroup on Water-Cooled Systems (SC XI)

T. F. Lentz, *Chair*

[SEC IV INTRODUCTION] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:40 2003)

K. Christian, *Secretary*
C. W. Allison
W. J. Briggs
T. R. Bugelholl
D. D. Davis
A. F. Deardorff
R. L. Dyle
L. B. Gross
T. C. Hinkle
S. D. Kulat
M. P. Lintz
J. E. Staffiera
C. W. Tahnk
R. J. Tamminga
D. Terao
S. M. Walker
R. A. West

Working Group on Concrete Containment (SG-WCS) (SC XI)

W. J. Briggs, *Chair*
B. Talmadge, *Secretary*
H. G. Ashar
K. K. N. Chao
M. J. Ferlisi
H. T. Hill
R. D. Hough
C. N. Krishnaswamy
D. Naus
S. C. Petitgout
C. G. Ranganath

Working Group on Implementation of Risk-Based Examination (SG-WCS) (SC XI)

T. J. Mawson, *Chair*
A. McNeill III, *Secretary*
J. Agold
S. A. Ali
B. A. Bishop
J. W. Connor
A. F. Deardorff
H. Q. Do
R. Fougerousse
S. R. Gosselin
J. T. Lindberg
I. Mach
R. K. Mattu
P. J. O'Regan
J. H. Phillips
F. A. Simonen

[SEC IV INTRODUCTION] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:40 2003)

T. V. Vo
R. A. West

Working Group on Inspection of Systems and Components (SG-WCS) (SC XI)

R. L. Dyle, *Chair*
G. C. Park, *Secretary*
G. L. Belew
T. W. Brombach
R. Fougerousse
T. C. Hinkle
M. R. Hum
S. D. Kulat
J. T. Lindberg
M. P. Lintz
T. K. McLellan
C. Pendleton
C. M. Ross
C. W. Tahnk
K. B. Thomas
E. Throckmorton
R. A. West
J. Whitiman

Working Group on Metal Containment (SG-WCS) (SC XI)

J. E. Staffiera, *Chair*
W. E. Norris, *Secretary*
W. J. Briggs
K. K. N. Chao
M. J. Ferlisi
R. W. Hammelmann
M. P. Lintz
S. C. Petitgout
C. G. Ranganath
G. W. Robin
R. T. Zak

Special Working Group on Low-Temperature Heavy Water Reactors (SG-WCS) (SC XI)

C. D. Cowfer, *Chair*
J. M. Morrison, *Secretary*
B. Awadalla
K. F. Schmidt
P. R. Vormelker
S. H. Zaidi

Working Group on General Requirements (SC XI)

A. T. Roberts III, *Chair*
R. G. Edl, *Secretary*
D. A. Graham
L. B. Gross

[SEC IV INTRODUCTION] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:40 2003)

C. A. Ireland
D. A. Jackson
R. K. Mattu
L. Sage
R. J. Scott
J. C. Shropshire
R. J. Tamminga

Special Working Group on Editing and Review (SC XI)

R. W. Swayne, *Chair*
R. L. Beverly
L. B. Gross
M. P. Lintz
J. E. Staffiera
C. J. Wirtz

Special Working Group on Plant Life Extension (SC XI)

F. E. Gregor, *Chair*
L. B. Gross, *Secretary*
D. D. Davis
D. A. Graham
D. L. Harrison
M. P. Lintz
P. Manbeck
H. W. Massie, Jr.
D. W. Peltola
D. A. Piccione
C. M. Regan
V. N. Shah
R. J. Tamminga

SUBCOMMITTEE ON TRANSPORT TANKS (SC XII)

A. Selz, *Chair*
P. D. Stumpf, *Secretary*
A. N. Antoniou
S. C. Cyr
K. Ennis
M. Hennemand
C. H. Hochman
G. G. Karcher
P. P. Laluc
G. McRae
M. R. Minick
T. P. Pastor
M. D. Rana
C. M. Serratella
G. R. Stoeckinger
N. Surtees

[SEC IV INTRODUCTION] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:41 2003)

J. P. Swezy
A. P. Varghese
S. V. Voorhees
W. L. White

Subgroup on Design and Materials (SC XII)

M. D. Rana, *Chair*
D. A. Canonico
W. D. Doty
G. G. Karcher
P. P. Laluc
T. P. Pastor
T. A. Rogers
C. M. Serratella
A. P. Varghese
E. Whittle

Subgroup on Fabrication and Inspection (SC XII)

S. V. Voorhees, *Chair*
D. A. Canonico
M. L. Coats
M. Hennemand
D. J. Kreft
G. McRae
M. R. Minick
N. Surtees
J. P. Swezy

Subgroup on General Requirements (SC XII)

C. H. Hochman, *Chair*
T. Alexander
A. N. Antoniou
D. Carter
K. Ennis
M. A. Garrett
J. C. Keenan
F. A. Licari
G. R. Stoeckinger
W. L. White

SUBCOMMITTEE ON BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL ACCREDITATION (SC-BPVA)

A. J. Spencer, *Chair*
A. J. Justin, *Vice Chair*
K. I. Baron, *Secretary*
M. B. Doherty
D. A. Douin
P. D. Edwards
R. M. Elliott

[SEC IV INTRODUCTION] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:41 2003)

C. E. Ford
J. J. Greene
R. C. Howard
B. B. MacDonald
M. L. Sisk
B. C. Turczynski
R. V. Wielgoszinski
R. L. Williams
V. A. Bell, Alternate
V. Bogosian, Alternate
M. A. De Vries, Alternate
J. R. Farr, Alternate
R. G. Friend, Alternate
W. C. LaRochelle, Alternate
A. S. Lester III, Alternate
K. M. McTague, Alternate
G. P. Milley, Alternate
R. E. Muise, Alternate
P. G. Scheckermann, Alternate
N. Surtees, Alternate

SUBCOMMITTEE ON NUCLEAR ACCREDITATION (SC-NA)

T. E. Quaka, *Chair*
R. R. Stevenson, *Vice Chair*
S. Griffin, *Secretary*
C. W. Allison
M. N. Bressler
G. Deily
F. R. Drahos
J. E. Harris
M. Kotb
W. C. LaRochelle
U. Potapovs
H. B. Prasse
A. J. Spencer
G. M. Tolson
L. M. Beason, Alternate
R. W. Boyce, Alternate
S. Dasgupta, Alternate
P. D. Edwards, Alternate
J. P. Ellenberger, Alternate
R. E. Feigel, Alternate
D. Hanrath, Alternate
K. A. Huber, Alternate
A. J. Justin, Alternate
N. C. Kist, Alternate
A. A. Lotfi, Alternate

[SEC IV INTRODUCTION] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:41 2003)

R. P. McIntyre, Alternate
O. E. Trapp, Staff Representative

SUBCOMMITTEE ON DESIGN (SC-D)

W. J. Carter, *Chair*
F. S. Fitzgerald, *Secretary*
R. W. Barnes
C. Becht IV
O. F. Hedden
R. W. Mikitka
K. Mokhtarian
W. J. O'Donnell
R. D. Schueler, Jr.
M. P. Schwartz
A. Selz

Subgroup on Design Analysis (SC-D)

T. P. Pastor, *Secretary*
P. J. Conlisk
A. G. Eggers
J. L. Hechmer
G. L. Hollinger
D. P. Jones
A. Kalnins
W. J. Koves
T. H. Liu
O. Maekawa
A. Merend
T. V. Narayanan
E. L. Thomas, Jr.

Subgroup on Elevated Temperature Design (SC-D)

C. Becht IV, *Chair*
J. M. Corum, *Secretary*
C. R. Brinkman
R. D. Campbell
D. S. Griffin
R. I. Jetter
C. Lawton
W. J. O'Donnell
D. A. Osage
C. C. Schultz, Jr.
L. K. Severud
D. F. Shaw
A. L. Snow
B. E. Thurgood

Subgroup on Fatigue Strength (SC-D)

C. R. Brinkman

[SEC IV INTRODUCTION] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:41 2003)

C. R. Brinkman
P. R. Donavin
J. A. Hayward
J. L. Hechmer
D. P. Jones
G. Kharshafdjian
C. Lawton
A. Merend
H. H. Ziada

Subgroup on Openings (SC-D)

M. P. Schwartz, *Chair*
R. W. Mikitka, *Secretary*
M. R. Breach
V. T. Hwang
S. C. Lou
R. B. Luney
J. P. Madden
K. C. Morrison
D. R. Palmer
M. D. Rana
E. C. Rodabaugh

Special Working Group on Bolted Flanged Joints (SC-D)

R. W. Mikitka, *Chair*
G. D. Bibel
G. Kharshafdjian
D. L. Kurle
E. Michalopoulos
S. N. Pagay
J. R. Payne
R. W. Schneider
R. D. Schueler, Jr.
A. Selz

SUBCOMMITTEE ON SAFETY VALVE REQUIREMENTS (SC-SVR)

E. C. Kistner, Jr., *Chair*
M. D. Bernstein, *Vice Chair*
U. D'Urso, *Secretary*
J. F. Ball
J. A. Cox
R. D. Danzy
R. J. Doelling
D. A. Douin
R. G. Friend
H. I. Gregg
S. F. Harrison, Jr.
C. F. Laitner
H. D. Michael

[SEC IV INTRODUCTION] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:42 2003)

C. A. Neumann
J. W. Reynolds
M. Robinson
D. J. Scallan
C. M. Schroepfer
A. J. Spencer
J. C. Standfast
E. A. Steen
L. L. Thompson
J. A. West
T. J. Ferrigan, Alternate

Subgroup on Design (SC-SVR)

R. G. Friend, *Chair*
J. Cahoon, Jr.
R. D. Danzy
D. B. DeMichael
R. J. Doelling
H. I. Gregg
S. R. Irvin
C. F. Laitner
P. R. Sievert
A. J. Spencer
E. A. Steen
T. R. Tarbay
J. A. West

Subgroup on General Requirements (SC-SVR)

M. D. Bernstein, *Chair*
J. F. Ball
V. M. Deluca
D. A. Douin
H. D. Michael
C. A. Neumann
J. W. Reynolds
M. Robinson
J. C. Standfast
L. L. Thompson

Subgroup on Testing (SC-SVR)

S. F. Harrison, Jr., *Chair*
S. Cammeresi
J. A. Cox
W. F. Hart
D. M. Papa
D. J. Scallan
C. M. Schroepfer

[SEC IV INTRODUCTION] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:42 2003)

PERSONNEL Officers of ASTM Committee

(Cooperating in the Development of the Specifications Herein)

As of December 31, 1997

D-20 ON PLASTICS

P. Sample, *Chair*
S. B. Driscoll, *Materials Vice Chair*
B. J. Furches, *Methods Vice Chair*
G. J. Ouellettee, *Membership Vice Chair*
G. L. Williams, *Liaison Research Special Vice Chair*
D. Wilson, *Programs Vice Chair*
D. Oates, *Secretary*

PREAMBLE

The rules of this Section of the Code cover minimum construction requirements for the design, fabrication, installation, and inspection of steam heating, hot water heating, hot water supply boilers which are directly fired with oil, gas, electricity, coal, or other solid or liquid fuels, and for operation at or below the pressure and temperature limits set forth in this document. Similar rules for potable water heaters are also included.

For Section IV application, the boiler proper or other vessels terminate at:

(a) the first circumferential joint for welding end connections;

(b) the face of the first flange in bolted flanged connections; or

(c) the first threaded joint in that type of connection.

The rules are divided into four major Parts: Part HG, applying to all materials of construction except as provided for in Part HLW; Part HF, applying to assemblies fabricated of wrought material, except as provided for in Part HLW; Part HC, applying to cast iron assemblies; and Part HLW, applying to potable water heaters. Part HF is further subdivided into Subpart HW, containing rules for welded construction, and Subpart HB, containing rules for brazed construction.

The Parts and Subparts of this Section are divided into Articles. Each Article is given a number and a title, as for example, Part HG, Article 3, Design. Articles are divided into paragraphs which are given a three-digit number, the first of which corresponds to the Article number, thus, under Article 3 of Part HG will be found paragraph HG-307. Paragraphs are further subdivided into subparagraphs. Major subdivisions of paragraphs are designated by three- or four-digit numbers followed by a decimal point and a digit or digits. Where necessary, further subdivisions are represented by letters and then by numbers in parentheses. Minor subdivisions of the paragraphs are also represented by letters. A reference to one of these paragraphs in the text of the Section includes all of the applicable rules in that paragraph. Thus, reference to HG-307 includes all the rules in HG-307.1 through HG-307.4.

This Section does not contain rules to cover all possible details of design and construction. Where complete details are not given, it is intended that the manufacturer, subject to the acceptance of the Authorized Inspector, shall provide details of design and construction which will be as safe as otherwise required by these rules.

When the strength of any part cannot be computed with a satisfactory assurance of safety, these rules provide procedures for establishing its maximum allowable working pressure.

[SEC IV PT HG A-1] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:42 2003)

HG-100 SCOPE

(a) The rules of Part HG apply to steam heating boilers, hot water heating boilers, hot water supply boilers, and to appurtenances thereto. They shall be used in conjunction with the specific requirements in Part HF, Boilers of Wrought Materials, and Part HC, Cast Iron Boilers, whichever is applicable. The foreword provides the basis for these rules. Part HG is not intended to apply to potable water heaters except as provided for in Part HLW.

(b) This Part contains mandatory requirements, specific prohibitions, and nonmandatory guidance for materials, designs, fabrication, examination, inspection, testing, certification, and pressure relief.

(c) Laws or regulations issued by a municipality, state, provincial, federal, or other enforcement or regulatory body having jurisdiction at the location of an installation, establish the mandatory applicability of these rules, in whole or in part.

HG-101 SERVICE RESTRICTIONS

HG-101.1 Service Restrictions.

The rules of this Section are restricted to the following services:

(a) steam boilers for operation at pressures not exceeding 15 psi (103 kPa);

(b) hot water heating boilers and hot water supply boilers for operating at pressures not exceeding 160 psi (1100 kPa) and/or temperatures not exceeding 250°F (121°C), at or near the boiler outlet, except that when some of the wrought materials permitted by Part HF are used, a lower temperature is specified.

HG-101.2 Services in Excess of Those Covered by This Section.

For services exceeding the limits specified in HG-101.1, the rules of Section I shall apply.

HG-200 GENERAL MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

HG-200.1 Materials Subject to Pressure Stress.

Material subject to stress due to pressure shall conform to one of the specifications given in Section II and shall be limited to those that are permitted in HF-200 for boilers of wrought materials and HC-200 for cast iron boilers.

HG-200.2 Internal Parts Subject to Deterioration.

Materials shall not be used for internal parts which are liable to fail due to deterioration when subjected to saturated steam temperatures at or below the maximum allowable working pressure.

HG-200.3 Materials Not Found in Section II.

[SEC IV PT HG A-2] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:42 2003)

Material not covered by specifications in Section II shall not be used unless authorization to use the material is granted by the Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee on the basis of data submitted to the Committee in accordance with Appendix A.

HG-200.4 Materials Use Not Limited by Specification Title.

The title or scope paragraph of a material specification in Section II as respects product form or service shall not limit the use of a material, provided the material is suitable for the application and its use is permitted by the rules of this Section.

HG-200.5 Materials Use Not Limited by Method of Production.

Materials covered by specifications in Section II are not restricted as to the method of production unless so stated in the Specification, and as long as the product complies with the requirements of the Specification.

HG-200.6 Materials With Thicknesses Exceeding Specification Limits.

Materials having thicknesses outside of the limits given in the title or scope clause of a specification in Section II may be used in construction, provided they comply with the other requirements of the Specification and with all thickness requirements of this Code.

HG-200.7 Materials Not Identified by Mill Test Reports.

Materials not identified by mill test reports may be used for nonpressure parts such as baffles, external supports, and insulating rings, the failure of which will not endanger the vessel to which they are attached. The allowable stress value shall not exceed 80% of the maximum allowable stress permitted for similar material in Tables HF-300.1 and HF-300.2. Satisfactory performance of a specimen in such service shall not make the material acceptable for use in pressure parts of a vessel.

HG-201 SPECIFIC MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

Specific material requirements for assemblies constructed of wrought materials are given in Part HF, Article 2 and for assemblies constructed of cast iron in Part HC, Article 2.

HG-300 DESIGN PRESSURE

(a) The design pressure is the pressure used in the formulas of this Article, in conjunction with the allowable stress values, design rules, and dimensions specified for determining the minimum required thicknesses for the parts of a boiler. The design pressure for a heating boiler shall be at least 30 psi (207 kPa).

(b) The term maximum allowable working pressure refers to gage pressure, or the pressure in excess of the atmospheric pressure in the boiler. The maximum allowable working pressure, as stamped on the boiler per HG-530, must be less than or equal to the design pressure for any of its parts.

(c) No boiler shall be operated at a pressure higher than the maximum allowable working pressure except when the safety valves or relief valves are discharging, at which time the maximum allowable working pressure shall not be exceeded by more than the amount specified in HG-400.1 and HG-400.2.

HG-300.1 Vacuum Boilers.

Rules for factory sealed boilers to be operated only under vacuum conditions are given in Appendix 5.

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:42 2003)

[98]
HG-301 CYLINDRICAL PARTS UNDER INTERNAL PRESSURE

[98]
HG-301.1General.

The required thickness and the design pressure of cylindrical shells, tubes, pipe, and headers shall be determined in accordance with the following formulas:

$$t = \frac{PR}{SE - 0.6P}$$

$$P = \frac{SEt}{R + 0.6t}$$

where

P	= design pressure, psi [but not less than 30 psi (207 kPa)]
S	= maximum allowable stress value from Tables HF-300.1 and HF-300.2, psi
t	= required wall thickness, in.
R	= inside radius of cylinder, in.
E	= efficiency of longitudinal joint or of ligament between tube holes, whichever is the lesser. For welded joints, use the efficiency specified in HW-702. For seamless shells, use $E = 1$.

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:43 2003)

[98]
HG-301.2Tubes

(a) The required thickness of tubes and pipes used as tubes shall be determined in accordance with the formulas in HG-301.1, adding to that value a minimum additional thickness of 0.04 in. (1 mm) as an allowance for rolling and structural stability. The additional 0.04 in. (1 mm) thickness is not required for tubes strength welded to tubesheets, headers, or drums.

(b) In no case shall a tube or pipe used as a tube when installed by welding or rolling be less than 0.061 in. (1.5 mm). There is no minimum thickness requirement for nonferrous tubes installed by brazing, except that the thickness used must meet the brazing qualification requirements of Section IX, Part QB.

1 In order to insure that a finished head is not less than the minimum thickness required, it is customary to use a thicker plate to take care of possible thinning during the process of forming. The neck of an opening in a head with integrally flanged opening will thin out due to the fluing operation. This is permissible provided the neck thickness is not less than a minimum thickness specified in HG-301 or the thickness required for a cylindrical shell having a diameter equal to the maximum diameter of the opening. (See HG-323.)

HG-305 FORMED HEADS, PRESSURE ON CONCAVE SIDE

HG-305.1 General.

The required thickness at the thinnest point after forming[1] of ellipsoidal, torispherical, and hemispherical heads under pressure on the concave

side (plus heads) shall be computed by the appropriate formulas in this paragraph.

(a) Notation. The symbols used in this paragraph are defined as follows:

t	= required wall thickness after forming, in.
P	= design pressure, psi [but not less than 30 psi (207 kPa)]
D	= inside diameter of the head skirt; or inside length of the major axis of an ellipsoidal head; or inside diameter of a cone head at the point under consideration, measured perpendicular to the longitudinal axis, in.
S	= maximum allowable stress value as given in Tables HF-300.1 and HF-300.2, psi
L	= inside spherical or crown radius, in.
E	= lowest efficiency of any joint in the head. For welded joints, use the efficiency specified in HW-702. For seamless heads, use E=1, except for hemispherical heads furnished without a skirt, in which case use the efficiency of the head-to-shell joint.

HG-305.2 Ellipsoidal Heads.

The required thickness and the design pressure of a dished head of semiellipsoidal form, in which half the minor axis (inside depth of the head minus the skirt) equals one-fourth of the inside diameter of the head skirt, shall be calculated by the following formulas:

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:43 2003)

$$t = \frac{PD}{2SE - 0.2P}$$

or

$$P = \frac{2SEt}{D + 0.2t}$$

HG-305.3 Torispherical Heads.

The required thickness and the design pressure of a torispherical head shall be calculated by the following formulas (see HG-305.6):

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:43 2003)

$$t = \frac{0.885PL}{SE - 0.1P}$$

or

$$P = \frac{SEt}{0.885L + 0.1t}$$

HG-305.4 Hemispherical Heads.

The required thickness and the design pressure of a hemispherical head in which P does not exceed $0.665SE$ shall be calculated by the following formulas:

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:43 2003)

$$t = \frac{PL}{2SE - 0.2P}$$

or

$$P = \frac{2SEt}{L + 0.2t}$$

HG-305.5 Formed Heads With Stays.

A formed head of a lesser thickness than that required by the rules of this paragraph may be used provided it is stayed as a flat surface according to the rules of HG-340 for stayed flat plates, no allowance being made in such staying for the holding power due to the curvature of the head unless all the following conditions are met:

(a) the head is at least two-thirds as thick as required by the rules of this paragraph for an unstayed head;

(b) the head is at least $^{7}/_{8}$ in. (22 mm) thick;

(c) the stays are through-stays attached to the head by outside and inside nuts;

(d) the design pressure on the head is taken as that calculated for an unstayed formed head plus the pressure calculated for

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:43 2003)

the stays by the formula for stayed surfaces in HG-340 using a value of $C = 1.63$.

HG-305.6 Inside Crown Radius of Unstayed Heads.

The inside crown radius to which an unstayed formed head is dished shall be not greater than the outside diameter of the skirt of the head. The inside knuckle radius of a torispherical head shall be not less than 6% of the outside diameter of the skirt of the head but in no case less than three times the head thickness.

HG-305.7 Heads Built Up of Several Shapes.

A head for a cylindrical shell may be built up of several head shapes, the thicknesses of which satisfy the requirements of the appropriate formulas above, provided that adjoining shapes are so formed that they have a common tangent transverse to the joint.

HG-305.8 Length of Skirts.

The required length of skirt on heads concave and convex to pressure shall comply with HW-715.

HG-305.9 Permissible Diameter of Flat Spots on Formed Heads.

If a torispherical, ellipsoidal, or hemispherical head is formed with a flattened spot or surface, the diameter of the flat spot shall not exceed that

permitted for flat heads as given by the formula in HG-307, using $C = 0.20$.

HG-306 FORMED HEADS, PRESSURE ON CONVEX SIDE

HG-306.1

Unstayed dished heads with the pressure on the convex side shall have a design pressure equal to 60% of that for heads of the same dimensions having the pressure on the concave side (see HG-503).

HG-307 FLAT HEADS

HG-307.1 General.

The minimum thickness of unstayed heads, cover plates, and blind flanges shall conform to the requirements given in this paragraph. These requirements apply to both circular and noncircular heads and covers. In addition, flat heads or covers made of cast iron shall be subjected to the proof test provisions of HG-500. Some acceptable types of flat heads and covers are shown in Fig. HG-307.

(a) The symbols used in this paragraph and Fig. HG-307 are defined as follows:

C	= a factor depending upon the method of attachment of the head, shell, pipe, or header dimensions, and other items as listed in HG-307.4 below, dimensionless. The factors for welded covers also include a factor of 0.667 that effectively increases the allowable stress for such construction to $1.5S$.
D	= long span of noncircular heads or covers measured perpendicular to short span, in.
d	= diameter, or short span, measured as indicated in Fig. HG-307, in.
H_G	= gasket moment arm, equal to the radial distance from the center line of the bolts to the line of the gasket reaction, as shown in Fig. HG-307, sketches (j) and (k), in.

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:43 2003)

L	= perimeter of noncircular bolted head measured along the centers of the bolt holes, in.
l	= length of flange or flanged heads, measured from the tangent line of knuckle, as indicated in Fig. HG-307, sketches (a) and (c), in.
m	= the ratio t_r/t_s, dimensionless
P	= design pressure, psi
r	= inside corner radius on the head formed by flanging or forging, in.
S	= maximum allowable stress value, psi, using values given in Tables HF-300.1 and HF-300.2
t	= minimum required thickness of flat head or cover, in.
t_e	= minimum distance from beveled end of drum, pipe, or header, before welding, to outer face of head, as indicated in Fig. HG-307, sketch (i), in.
t_f	= actual thickness of the flange on a forged head, at the large end, as indicated in Fig. HG-307, sketch (b), in.
t_h	= actual thickness of flat head or cover, in.
t_r	= required thickness of seamless shell, pipe, or header, for pressure, in.
t_s	= actual thickness of shell, pipe, or header, in.
t_w	= thickness through the weld joining the edge of a head to the inside of a drum, pipe, or header, as indicated in Fig. HG-307, sketch (g), in.
t_1	= throat dimension of the closure weld, as indicated in Fig. HG-307, sketch (r), in.
W	= total bolt load, lb, as further defined in HG-307.2
Z	= a factor for noncircular heads and covers that depends on the ratio of short span to long span, as given in HG-307.2 below, dimensionless

HG-307.2 Thickness of Circular, Flat, Unstayed Heads, Covers, and Blind Flanges.

The thickness of flat unstayed heads, covers, and blind flanges shall conform to one of the following requirements:[2]

(a) Circular blind flanges of ferrous materials conforming to ANSI B16.5 shall be acceptable for the diameters and pressure-temperature ratings in Tables 2 to 8 of that Standard when of the types shown in Fig. HG-307, sketches (j) and (k).

(b) The minimum required thickness of flat unstayed circular heads, covers, and blind flanges shall be calculated by the following formula:

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:44 2003)

$$t = d\sqrt{CP/S} \qquad (1)$$

(1) except when the head, cover, or blind flange is attached by bolts causing an edge moment [Fig. HG-307, sketches (j) and (k)], in which case the thickness shall be calculated by

$$t = d\sqrt{CP/S + 1.9WH_G/Sd^3} \qquad (2)$$

(2)

2The formulas provide safe construction as far as stress is concerned. Greater thicknesses may be necessary if deflection would cause leakage at threaded or gasketed joints.

When using Formula (2), the thickness *t* shall be calculated for both operating conditions and gasket seating, and the greater of the two values shall be used. For operating conditions, the value of *P* shall be the design pressure, the value of *S* at design temperature shall be used, and *W* shall be the sum of the bolt loads required to resist the end pressure load and to

maintain tightness of the gasket. For gasket seating, *P* equals zero, the value of *S* at atmospheric temperature shall be used, and *W* shall be the average of the required bolt load and the load available from the bolt area actually used.

HG-307.3 Thickness of Noncircular, Flat, Unstayed Heads, Covers, and Blind Flanges

(a) Flat unstayed heads, covers, or blind flanges may be square, rectangular, elliptical, obround, segmental, or otherwise noncircular. Their required thickness shall be calculated by the following formula:

$$t = d\sqrt{ZCP/S} \qquad (3)$$

(3)

where

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:44 2003)

$$Z = 3.4 - \frac{2.4d}{D} \qquad (4)$$

(4)

with the limitation that Z need not be greater than 2.5.

(b) Formula (3) does not apply to noncircular heads, covers, or blind flanges attached by bolts causing a bolt edge moment [Fig. HG-307, sketches (j) and (k)]. For noncircular heads of this type, the required thickness shall be calculated by the following formula:

$$t = d\sqrt{ZCP/S + 6WH_G/SLd^2} \qquad (5)$$

(5)

When using Formula (5), the thickness t shall be calculated in the same way as specified above for Formula (2).

HG-307.4 Values of *C* for Use in Formulas in HG-307.2 and HG-307.3.

For the types of construction shown in Fig. HG-307, the values of C to be used in Formulas (1), (2), (3), and (5) are:

Figure HG-307, sketch (a): $C = 0.17$ for flanged circular and noncircular heads forged integral with or butt welded to the shell, pipe, or header, with an inside corner radius not less than three times the required head thickness, with no special requirement with regard to length of flange, and where the welding meets all the requirements for circumferential joints given in Part HF, Subpart HW.

$C = 0.10$ for circular heads, when the flange length for heads of the above design is not less than

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:44 2003)

$$l = \left(1.1 - 0.8\,\frac{t_s^{\,2}}{t_h^{\,2}}\right)\sqrt{dt_h} \qquad (6)$$

(6)

When $C = 0.10$ is used, the taper shall be at least 1:3.

Figure HG-307, sketch (b): $C = 0.17$ for circular and noncircular heads forged integral with or butt- welded to the shell, pipe, or header, where the corner radius on the inside is not less than three times the thickness of the flange and where the welding meets all the requirements for circumferential joints given in Part HF, Subpart HW.

Figure HG-307, sketch (c): $C = 0.20$ for circular flanged plates screwed over the end of the shell, pipe, or header, with inside corner radius not less than $3t$, in which the design of the threaded joint against failure by shear, tension, or compression, resulting from the end force due to pressure, is based on a factor of safety of at least five, and the threaded parts are at least as strong as the threads for standard piping of the same diameter. Seal welding may be used, if desired.

Figure HG-307, sketch (d): $C = 0.13$ for integral flat circular heads when the dimension d does not exceed 24 in. (610 mm), the ratio of thickness of the head to the dimension d is not less than 0.05 nor greater than 0.25, the head thickness t_h is not less than the shell thickness t_s, the inside corner radius is not less than $0.25t$, and the construction is obtained by special techniques of upsetting and spinning the end of the shell, pipe, or header, such as employed in closing header ends.

Figure HG-307, sketches (e), (f), and (g): $C = 0.33m$ but not less than 0.20 for circular plates, welded to the inside of a drum, pipe, or header, and otherwise meeting the requirements for the respective types of fusion welded boiler drums. If a value of m less than 1 is used in calculating t, the shell thickness t_s shall be maintained along a distance inwardly from the inside face of the head equal to at least $2\sqrt{dt_s}$. The throat thickness of the fillet welds in sketches (e) and (f) shall be at least $0.7t_s$. The size of the weld t_w in sketch (g) shall be not less than two times the required thickness of a seamless shell nor less than 1.25 times the nominal shell thickness but need not be greater than the head thickness; the weld shall be deposited in a welding groove with the root of the weld at the inner face of the head as shown in the figure.

$C = 0.33$ for noncircular plates, welded to the inside of a drum, pipe, or header, and otherwise meeting the requirements for the respective types of fusion welded boiler drums. The throat thickness of the fillet welds in sketches (e) and (f) shall be at least $0.7t_s$. The size of the weld t_w in sketch (g) shall be not less than two times the required thickness of a seamless shell nor less than 1.25 times the nominal shell thickness but need not be greater than the head thickness; the weld shall be deposited in a welding groove with the root

of the weld at the inner face of the head as shown in the figure.

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:45 2003)

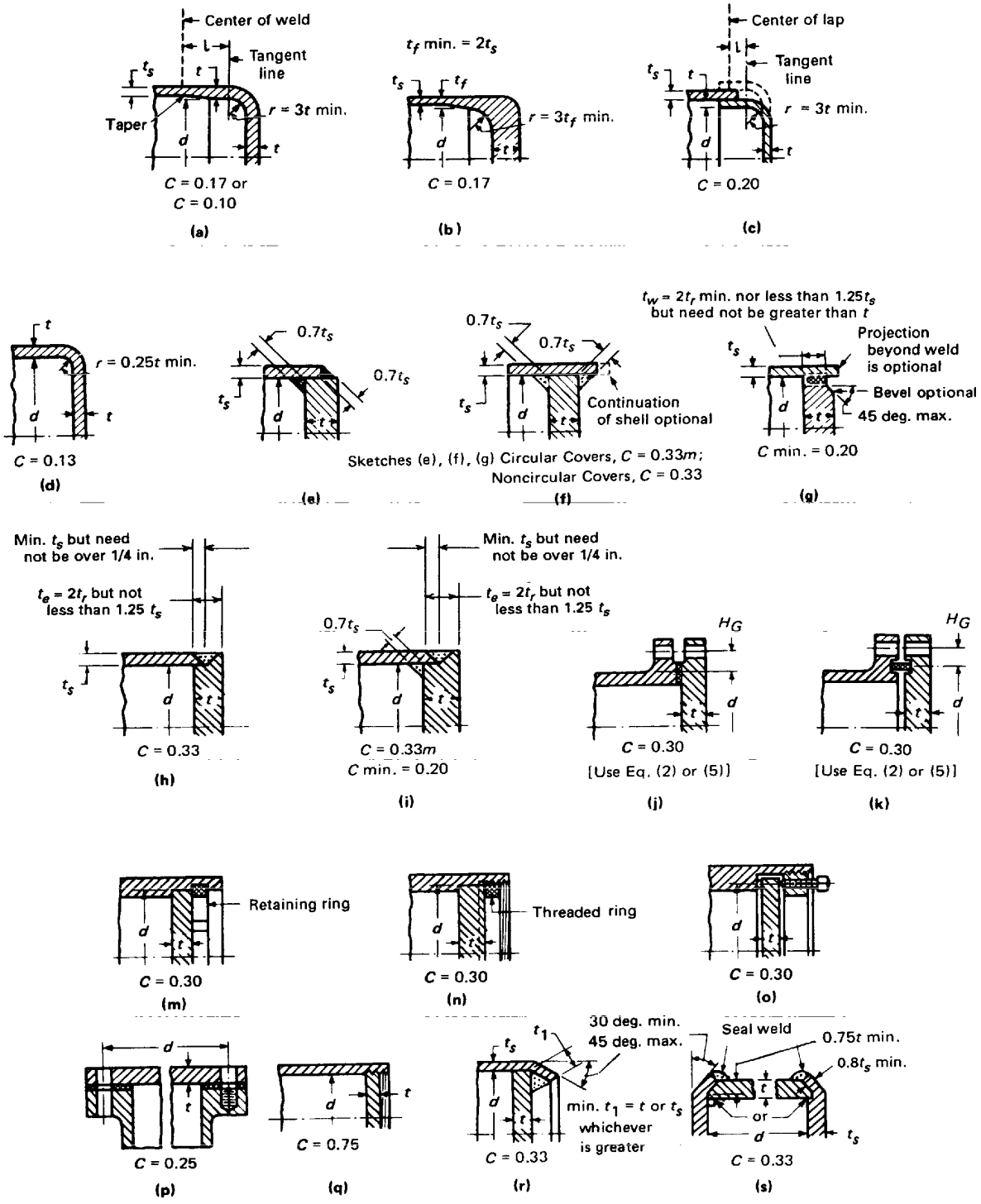


FIG. HG-307 SOME ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF UNSTAYED FLAT HEADS AND COVERS
(The Above Illustrations Are Diagrammatic Only; Other Designs That Meet the Requirements of HG-307 Will Be Acceptable.)

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:46 2003)

FIG. HG-307 SOME ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF UNSTAYED FLAT HEADS AND COVERS

Figure HG-307, sketch (h): $C = 0.33$ for circular plates welded to the end of the shell when t_s is at least $1.25t_r$ and the beveled end of the shell is located at a distance no less than $2r$ nor less than $1.25t_s$ from the outer face of the head. The width at the bottom of the welding groove shall be at least equal to the shell thickness but need not be over $^1/_4$ in. (6 mm).

Figure HG-307, sketch (i): $C = 0.33m$ but not less than 0.20 for circular plates welded to the end of the drum, pipe, or header, when an inside weld with minimum throat thickness of $0.7t_s$ is used, and when the beveled end of the drum, pipe, or header is located at a distance not less than $2t_r$ nor less than $1.25t_s$ from the outer face of the head. The width at the bottom of the welding groove shall be at least equal to t_s, but need not be over $^1/_4$ in. (6 mm).

Figure HG-307, sketches (j) and (k): $C = 0.3$ for circular and noncircular heads and covers bolted to the shell, flange, or side plate, as indicated in the figures. Note that Formula (2) or (5) shall be used because of the extra moment applied to the cover by the bolting. When the cover plate is grooved for a peripheral gasket, as shown in sketch (k), the net cover plate thickness under the groove or between the groove and the outer edge of the cover plate shall be not less than

$$d\sqrt{1.9WH_G/Sd^3}$$

for circular heads and covers, nor less than

$$d\sqrt{6WH_G/SLd^2}$$

for noncircular heads and covers.

Figure HG-307, sketches (m), (n), and (o): $C = 0.3$ for a circular plate inserted into the end of a shell, pipe, or header, and held in place by a positive mechanical locking arrangement, and when all possible means of failure either by shear, tension, compression, or radial deformation, including flaring, resulting from pressure and differential thermal expansion, are resisted with a factor of safety of at least five. Seal welding may be used, if desired.

Figure HG-307, sketch (p): $C = 0.25$ for circular and noncircular covers bolted with a full-face gasket to shells, flanges, or side plates.

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:46 2003)

Figure HG-307, sketch (q): $C = 0.75$ for circular plates screwed into the end of a shell, pipe, or header, having an inside diameter d not exceeding 12 in. (305 mm); or for heads having an integral flange screwed over the end of a shell, pipe, or header, having an inside diameter d not exceeding 12 in. (305 mm); and when the design of the threaded joint against failure by shear, tension, compression, or radial deformation, including flaring, resulting from pressure and differential thermal expansion, is based on a factor of at least five. If a tapered pipe thread is used, the requirements of Table HG-370 shall also be met. Seal welding may be used, if desired.

Figure HG-307, sketch (r): $C = 0.33$ for circular plates having a dimension d not exceeding 18 in. (457 mm) inserted into the shell, pipe, or header, and welded as shown, and otherwise meeting the requirements for fusion welded boiler drums. The end of the shell, pipe, or header shall be crimped over at least 30 deg., but not more than 45 deg. The crimping may be done cold only when this operation will not injure the metal. The throat of the weld shall be not less than the thickness of the flat head or the shell, pipe, or header, whichever is greater.

Figure HG-307, sketch (s): $C = 0.33$ for circular beveled plates having a diameter not exceeding 18 in. (457 mm), inserted into a shell, pipe, or header, the end of which is crimped over at least 30 deg., but not more than 45 deg., and when the undercutting for seating leaves at least 80% of the shell thickness. The beveling shall be not less than 75% of the head thickness. The crimping shall be done when the entire circumference of the cylinder is uniformly heated to the proper forging temperature for the material used. For this construction, the ratio t_s/d shall be not less than the ratio P/S nor less than 0.05. The design pressure for this construction shall not exceed $P = S/5d$.

Figure HG-307 is diagrammatic only. Other designs that meet the requirements of HG-307 will be acceptable.

HG-309 SPHERICALLY DISHED COVERS (BOLTED HEADS)

(a) Notation. The symbols used in the formulas of this paragraph are defined as follows:

A	= outside diameter of flange, in.
B	= inside diameter of flange, in.
C	= bolt circle diameter, in.
t	= minimum required thickness of head plate after forming, in.
L	= inside spherical or crown radius, in.
r	= inside knuckle radius, in.
P	= design pressure, psi
S	= maximum allowable stress value as given in Tables HF-300.1 and HF-300.2
T	= flange thickness, in.
M_o	= the total moment, in.-lb, determined as in Section VIII, Division 1, Appendix 2, 2-6, except that for heads of the type shown in Fig. HG-309, sketch (d), a moment $H_r h_r$ (which may add or subtract) shall be included in addition to the moment $H_D h_D$ where

H_r	= radial component of the membrane load in the spherical segment, lb, acting at the intersection of the inside of the flange ring with the center line of the dished cover thickness
H_r	$= H_D \cot \beta_1$
hr	= lever arm of force H_r about centroid of flange ring, in.

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:46 2003)

H_D = axial component of the membrane load in the spherical segment, lb, acting at the inside of the flange ring

$= 0.785B^2P$

h_D = radial distance from the bolt circle to the inside of the flange ring, in.

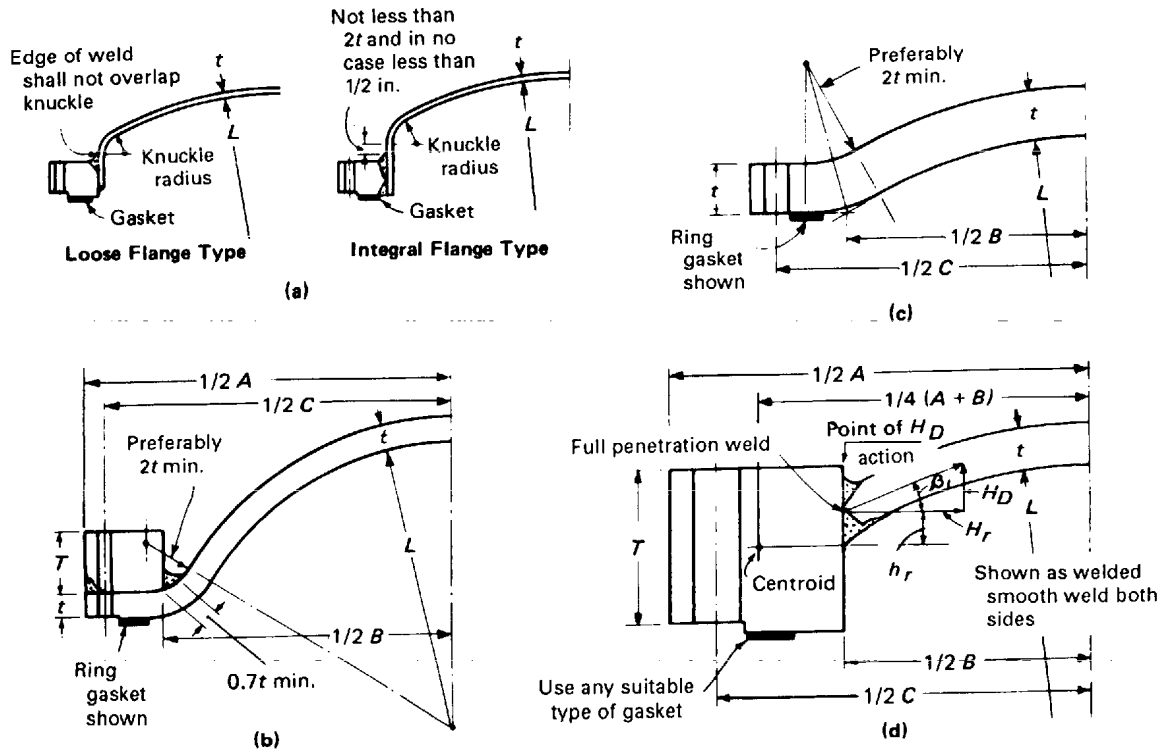


FIG. HG-309 SPHERICALLY DISHED STEEL PLATE COVERS WITH BOLTING FLANGES

FIG. HG-309 SPHERICALLY DISHED STEEL PLATE COVERS WITH BOLTING FLANGES

NOTE: Since $H_r h_r$ in some cases will subtract from the total moment, the moment in the flange ring when the internal pressure is zero may be the determining loading for the flange design.

HG-309.1 Heads Concave to Pressure.

Circular spherically dished heads with bolting flanges, concave to the pressure and conforming to the several types illustrated in Fig. HG-309 shall be designed in accordance with the following formulas:

(a) Heads of the Type Shown in Fig. HG-309, Sketch (a)

(1) The thickness of the head t shall be determined by the appropriate formula in HG-305.

(2) The head radius L or the knuckle radius r shall not exceed the limitations given in HG-305.

(3) The flange shall comply at least with the requirements of Section VIII, Division 1, Appendix 2, Fig. 2-4 and shall be

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:47 2003)

designed in accordance with the provisions of 2-1 through 2-7. (Within the range of ANSI B16.5, the flange facings and drillings should conform to those standards and the thickness specified therein shall be considered as a minimum requirement.)

(b) Heads of the Type Shown in Fig. HG-309, Sketch (b). (No joint efficiency factor is required.)

(1) Head thickness

$$t = \frac{5PL}{6S}$$

(2) Flange thickness *T:*

For ring gasket,

$$T = \sqrt{\frac{M_o}{SB}\left[\frac{A+B}{A-B}\right]}$$

For full-face gasket,

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:47 2003)

$$T = 0.6 \sqrt{\frac{P}{S}\left[\frac{B(A+B)(C-B)}{A-B}\right]}$$

NOTE: The radial components of the membrane load in the spherical segment are assumed to be resisted by its flange.

Within the range of ANSI B16.5, the flange facings and drillings should conform to those standards, and the thickness specified herein shall be considered as a minimum requirement.

(c) Heads of the Type Shown in Fig. HG-309, Sketch *(c).* (No joint efficiency factor is required.)

(1) Head thickness

$$t = \frac{5PL}{6S}$$

(2) Flange thickness for ring gaskets shall be calculated as follows:

(a) For heads with round bolting holes,

$$T = Q + \sqrt{\frac{1.875M_o(C+B)}{SB(7C-5B)}} \qquad \text{(I)}$$

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:47 2003)

(I)

where

$$Q = \frac{PL}{4S}\left[\frac{C + B}{7C - 5B}\right] \qquad \text{(II)}$$

(II)

(b) For heads with bolting holes slotted through the edge of the head,

$$T = Q + \sqrt{\frac{1.875M_o(C + B)}{SB(3C - 5B)}} \qquad \text{(III)}$$

(III)

where

$$Q = \frac{PL}{4S}\left[\frac{C + B}{3C - B}\right] \qquad \text{(IV)}$$

(IV)

(3) Flange thickness for full face gaskets shall be calculated by the following formula:

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:47 2003)

$$T = Q + \sqrt{Q^2 + \frac{3BQ(C - B)}{L}} \qquad \text{(V)}$$

(V)

The value of Q in Eq. (V) is calculated by Eq. (II) for round bolting holes or by Eq. (IV) for bolting holes slotted through the edge of the head.

(4) The required flange thickness shall be T as calculated in (2) or (3) above, but in no case less than the value of t calculated in (1) above.

(d) Heads of the Type Shown in Fig. HG-309, Sketch (d). (No joint efficiency factor is required.)

(1) Head thickness

$$t = \frac{5PL}{6S}$$

(2) Flange thickness

$$T = F + \sqrt{F^2 + J}$$

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:47 2003)

where

$$F = \frac{PB\sqrt{4L^2 - B^2}}{8S(A - B)}$$

and

$$J = \left(\frac{M_o}{SB}\right)\left(\frac{A + B}{A - B}\right)$$

HG-312 CYLINDRICAL PARTS UNDER EXTERNAL PRESSURE

HG-312.1 Plain Type Furnaces.

Plain furnaces that are complete cylinders shall conform to the following.

(a) The thickness of the furnace wall shall be not less than $^1/_4$ in. (6 mm).

(b) The design temperature of the furnace shall be taken as 500°F (260°C).

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:48 2003)

(c) Furnaces shall be rolled to a circle, with a maximum deviation from the true circle of not more than $^1/_4$ in. (6 mm).

(d) The thickness of the furnace wall shall be determined by the use of Fig. HG-312.1 or Fig. HG-312.2. The symbols defined below and shown in Fig. HG- 312.1 or Fig. HG-312.2 are used in the formulas of this paragraph:

t	= minimum required wall thickness of furnaces, in.
L	= design length of plain furnace taken as the distance from center to center of weld attachment, in.; design length of ring reinforced furnace section, taken as the greatest center-to-center distance between any two adjacent stiffening rings; or the distance from the center of the first stiffening ring to the center of the furnace weld attachment, in. In case a flared-end assembly is used, the distance shall be measured to the point of tangency between the flare and the furnace and the adjacent stiffening ring.
D_o	= outside diameter of furnace, in.
P	= design pressure, psi

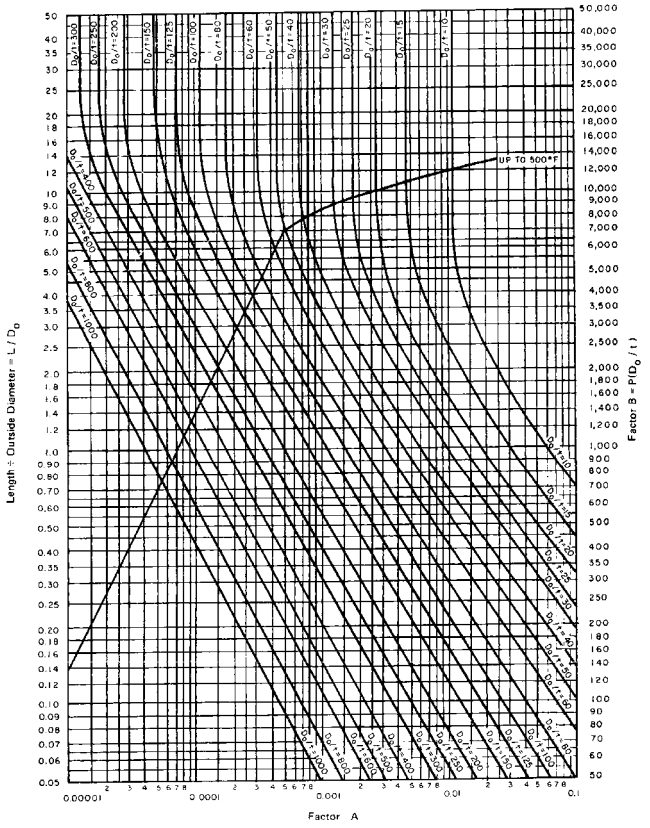


FIG. HG-312.1 CHART FOR DETERMINING WALL THICKNESS OF CYLINDRICAL FURNACES WHEN CONSTRUCTED OF CARBON STEEL
(Specified Yield Strength 24,000 psi to but Not Including 30,000 psi)

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:50 2003)

FIG. HG-312.1 CHART FOR DETERMINING WALL THICKNESS OF CYLINDRICAL FURNACES WHEN CONSTRUCTED OF CARBON STEEL

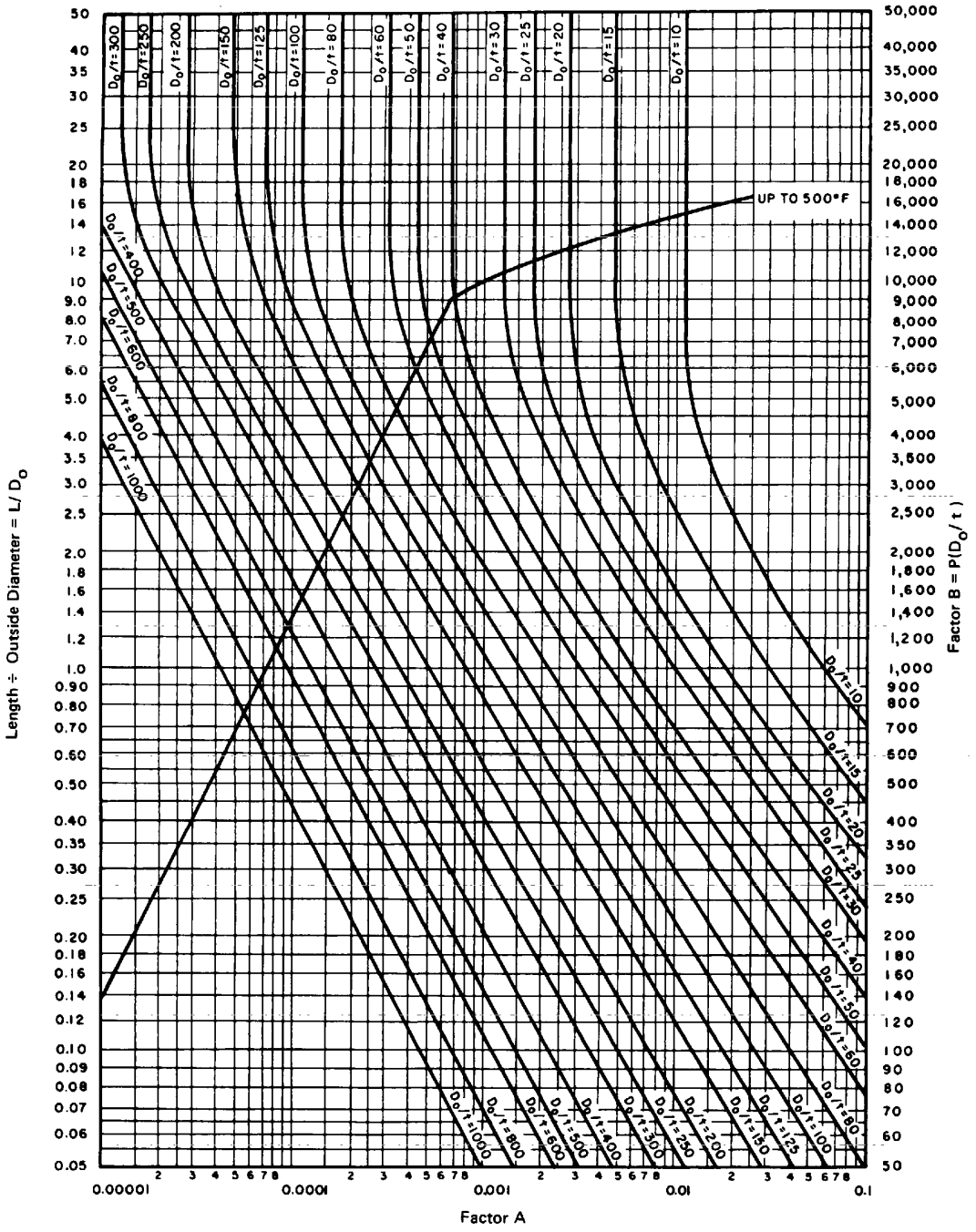


FIG. HG-312.2 CHART FOR DETERMINING WALL THICKNESS OF CYLINDRICAL FURNACES WHEN CONSTRUCTED OF CARBON STEEL
(Specified Yield Strength 30,000 psi to 38,000 psi)

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:52 2003)

FIG. HG-312.2 CHART FOR DETERMINING WALL THICKNESS OF CYLINDRICAL FURNACES WHEN CONSTRUCTED OF CARBON STEEL

HG-312.2 Tubes.

The wall thickness of ferrous tubes subject to external pressure shall be determined by use of Fig. HG-312.1 or Fig. HG-312.2, as applicable, using the procedure outlined in HG-312.3 and adding to that value a minimum additional thickness of 0.04 in. (1 mm) as an allowance for rolling and structural stability.

HG-312.3 Procedure for Determining Wall Thickness of Plain Furnaces and Tubes.

The required wall thickness of the furnace and tubes shall be not less than determined by the following procedure:

Step 1: Assume a value for t. Determine the ratio L/D_o and D_o/t.

Step 2: Enter left-hand side of Fig. HG-312.1 or Fig. HG-312.2 at value of L/D_o.

Step 3: Move horizontally to the line representing D_o/t determined in Step 1. (For intermediate D_o/t ratios, interpolations shall be made between lines on the chart in Fig. HG-312.1 or Fig. HG-312.2.)

Step 4: From this intersection move vertically to the material line of the proper temperature.

Step 5: From this intersection move horizontally to the right and read the value of B.

Step 6: Compute the allowable working pressure P_a by the following formula

$$P_a = \frac{B}{D_o / t}$$

Step 7: Compare P_a with P. If P_a is less than P, a greater value of t must be selected or a smaller value of L or some combination of both to increase P_a so that it is equal to or greater than P. (An example is included in Appendix C.)

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:53 2003)

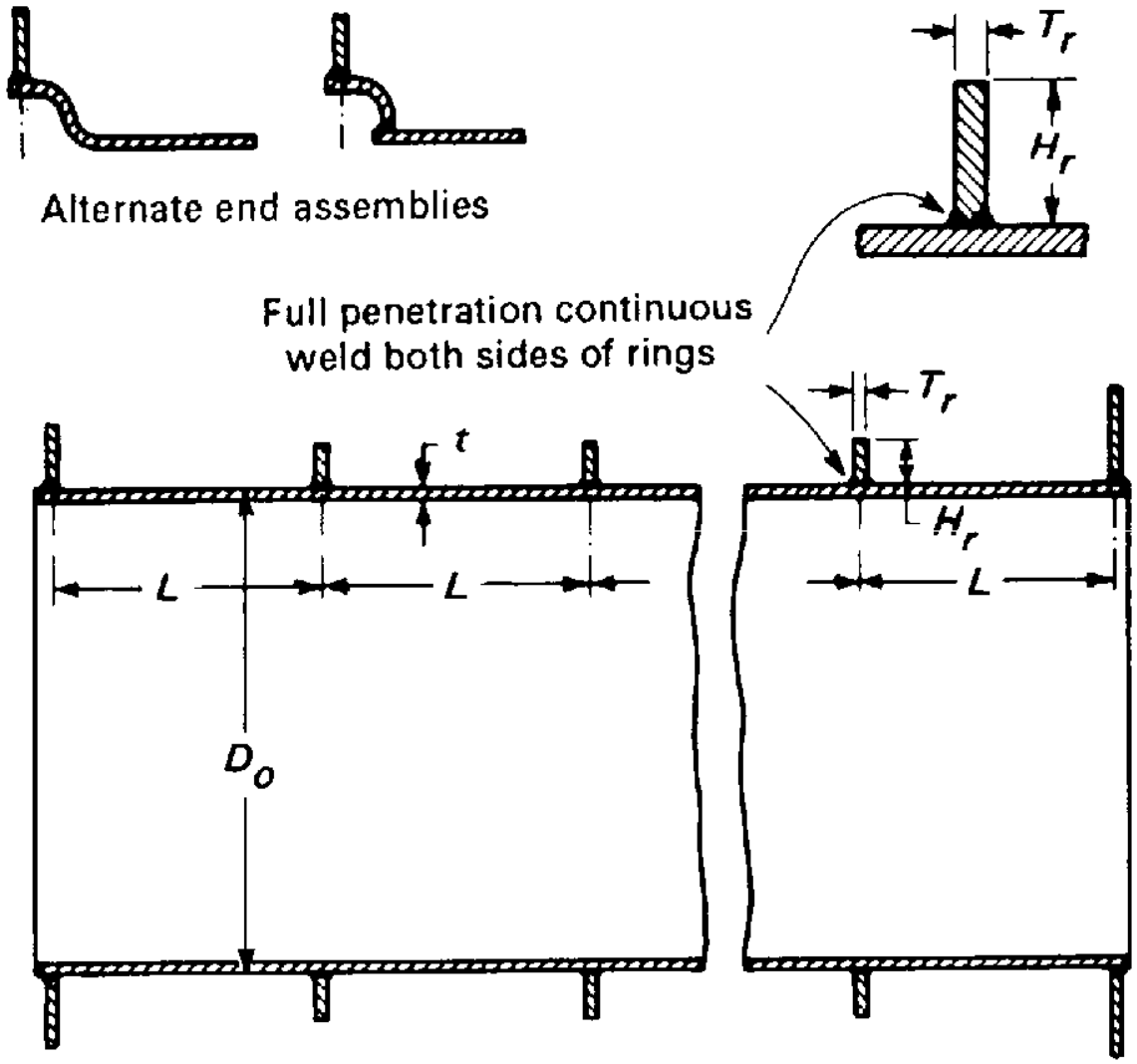


FIG. HG-312.3 ACCEPTABLE TYPE OF RING REINFORCED FURNACE

FIG. HG-312.3 ACCEPTABLE TYPE OF RING REINFORCED FURNACE

HG-312.4 Ring Reinforced Type Furnace.

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:53 2003)

Ring reinforced furnaces as shown in Fig. HG-312.3 may be constructed with completely circular stiffening rings provided:

(a) the stiffening ring is rectangular in cross section and is fabricated from one piece of plate, or from plate sections or bars provided full-penetration welds are used in assembling;

(b) the stiffening ring after fabrication has a thickness of not less than $^{5}/_{16}$ in. (8 mm) and not more than $^{13}/_{16}$ in. (21 mm) and in no case thicker than $1^{1}/_{4}$ times the furnace wall;

(c) the ratio of height of the stiffening ring to its thickness (H_r/T_r) is not over eight nor less than three;

(d) the stiffening ring is attached to the furnace by a full penetration weld as shown in Fig. HG-312.3;

(e) the thickness of the furnace wall is a minimum of $^{1}/_{4}$ in. (6 mm);

(f) the design temperature of the furnace shall be taken as 500°F (260°C);

(g) the boiler design permits replacement of the furnace. A flared or welded OG-ring may be accepted as meeting this requirement. (See Fig. HG-312.3.)

(h) the thickness of the furnace wall or tube wall and the design of stiffening rings are determined by the use of Figs. HG-312.1 or HG-312.2. The symbols defined in HG-312.1, and shown in Figs. HG-312.1 or

HG-312.2 are used in the design formula. Steps 1 through 7 of HG-312.3 shall apply.

(i) the required moment of inertia of a circumferential stiffening ring shall not be less than determined by the formula:

$$I_s = \frac{D_o^2 L \left(t + \frac{A_s}{L}\right) A}{14}$$

where

I_s = required moment of inertia of the stiffening ring about its neutral axis parallel to the axis of the furnace, in.^{4}

A_s = cross-sectional area of the stiffening ring, sq in.

A = factor determined from Figs. HG-312.1 or HG-312.2

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:53 2003)

P, D_o, and t are as defined in HG-312.1.

HG-312.5 Procedure for Determining Moment of Inertia of Stiffening Rings.

The moment of inertia for a stiffening ring shall be determined by the following procedure.

Step 1: Assuming that the furnace has been designed and D_o, L, and t are known, select a rectangular member to be used for a stiffening ring and determine its area A_s and its moment of inertia I. Then calculate B by the formula:

$$B = \frac{PD_o}{t + \frac{A_s}{L}}$$

where

B = factor on the right-hand side of Fig. HG-312.1 or Fig. HG-312.2

P, D_o, t, A_s, and L are defined above.

Step 2: Enter the right-hand side of Fig. HG-312.1 or Fig. HG-312.2 at the value of B determined in Step 1.

Step 3: Follow horizontally to the material line.

Step 4: Move down vertically to the bottom of the chart and read the value of A.

Step 5: Compute the value of the required moment of inertia I_s from the formula given above.

Step 6: If the required I_s is greater than the moment of inertia I for the section selected in Step 1, a new section with a larger moment of inertia must be selected and a new I_s determined. If the required I_s is smaller than I for the section selected by Step 1, that section should be satisfactory. (An example is included in Appendix C.)

HG-312.6 Corrugated Furnaces.

The design pressure of corrugated furnaces, such as the Leeds suspension bulb, Morison, Fox, Purves, or Brown, having plain portions at the ends not exceeding 9 in. (229 mm) in length shall be computed as follows:

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:53 2003)

$$P = Ct/D$$

where

P	= design pressure, psi
t	= thickness, in., not less than $^5/_{16}$ in. (8 mm) for Leeds, Morison, Fox, and Brown, and not less than $^7/_{16}$ in. (11 mm) for Purves and other furnaces corrugated by sections not over 18 in. (457 mm) long
D	= mean diameter, in.
C	= 17,300, a constant for Leeds furnaces, when corrugations are not more than 8 in. (203 mm) from center to center and not less than $2^1/_4$ in. (57 mm) deep
C	= 15,600, a constant for Morison furnaces, when corrugations are not more than 8 in. (203 mm) from center to center and the radius of the outer corrugation is not more than one-half of the suspension curve
C	= 14,000, a constant for Fox furnaces, when corrugations are not more than 8 in. (203 mm) from center to center and not less than $1^1/_2$ in. (38 mm) deep
C	= 14,000, a constant for Purves furnaces, when rib projections are not more than 9 in. (229 mm) from center to center and not less than $1^3/_8$ in. (35 mm) deep
C	= 14,000, a constant for Brown furnaces, when corrugations are not more than 9 in. (229 mm) from center to center and not less than $1^5/_8$ in. (41 mm) deep

(a) In calculating the mean diameter of the Morison furnace, the least inside diameter plus 2 in. (51 mm) may be taken as the mean diameter.

(b) The longitudinal and circumferential joints shall be fusion welded of the double-welded butt type.

(c) The thickness of a corrugated or ribbed furnace shall be ascertained by actual measurement by the furnace manufacturer, by gaging the thickness of the corrugated portions. If a hole is drilled through the sheet to determine the thickness, the hole shall be not more than $^3/_8$ in. (10 mm). When the furnace is installed, this hole shall be located in the bottom of the furnace

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:53 2003)

and closed by a threaded plug. For the Brown and Purves furnaces, the hole shall be in the center of the second flat from the boiler front; for the Morison, Fox, and other similar types, in the center of the top corrugation, at least as far in as the fourth corrugation from the front end of the furnace.

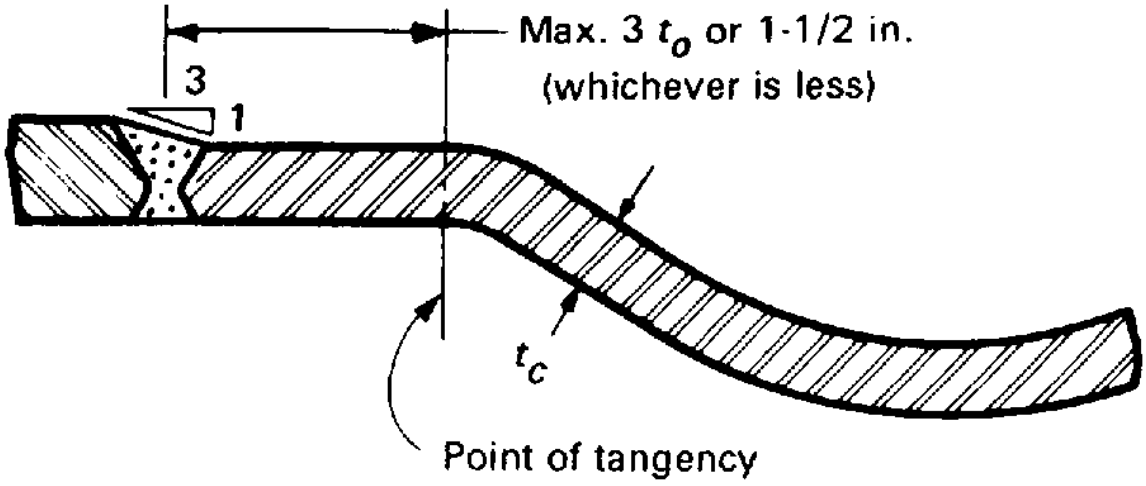


FIG. HG-312.6 CONNECTION BETWEEN PLAIN AND CORRUGATED FURNACE

FIG. HG-312.6 CONNECTION BETWEEN PLAIN AND CORRUGATED FURNACE

HG-312.7 Combination Type Furnaces.

Combination type furnaces for external pressure may be constructed by combining a plain circular section and a corrugated section provided:

(a) each type of furnace is designed to be self-supporting, requiring no support from the other furnace at their point of connection;

(b) HG-312.1 and HG-312.3 shall be used for calculating the design pressure of the plain section; in applying the length in the text, or *L* in the formulas, the length used shall always be twice the actual length of the plain section; the actual length of plain section is the distance measured from the center line of the head attachment weld to the center line of the full penetration weld joining the two sections.

(c) the design pressure of the corrugated section shall be determined from HG-312.6;

(d) the full penetration weld joining a plain self-supporting section to a corrugated self-supporting section shall be located as shown in Fig. HG-312.6.

HG-312.8

Unstayed furnaces or crown sheets where the top portion is semicircular and the unstayed portion does not exceed 120 deg. in arc shall conform to the following.

(a) The thickness of the semicircular furnace or crown sheet shall be not less than $^{5}/_{16}$ in. (8 mm).

(b) The design temperature of the semicircular furnace or crown sheet shall be taken as 500°F (260°C).

(c) Semicircular portions of the furnace or crown sheet shall be rolled to practically a true circle, with a maximum deviation from the true circle of not more than $^{1}/_{4}$ in. (6 mm).

(d) The allowable working pressure of the semicircular furnace or crown sheet shall be not more than 70% of P_a as computed from the procedure outlined in HG-312.1 and HG-312.3 and using the applicable chart, Fig. HG-312.1 or Fig. HG-312.2.

(e) Bar Reinforcement

(1) Bar reinforcement, when required to reduce the effective furnace length *L*, shall be computed using the formulas in HG-312.5 and HG-312.4.

(2) Bar reinforcement shall be fabricated and installed as shown in Fig. HG-312.7.

(3) Bar reinforcement, after fabrication, shall have a thickness of not less than $^{5}/_{16}$ in. (8 mm) and not more than $^{13}/_{16}$ in. (21 mm) and in no case thicker than $1^{1}/_{4}$ times the wall section of the semicircular portion.

(4) The ratio of height of the bar reinforcement to its thickness H_r/T_r shall be not more than eight nor less than three.

(f) For unstayed furnaces or crown sheets, where the top portion is semicircular and the unstayed portion exceeds 120 deg. in arc, that portion exceeding the 120 deg. arc shall be stayed as a flat plate in accordance with HG-340.

[98]
HG-315Deleted

[98]
HG-315.1Deleted

[98]
HG-315.2 Deleted

3 The rules governing openings as given in this Code are based on the stress intensification created by the existence of a hole in and otherwise symmetrical section. They are based on experience with vessels designed with safety factor of five applied to the specified minimum tensile strength of the shell material. External loadings such as those due to thermal expansion or to unsupported weight of connecting piping have not been evaluated. These factors should be given attention in unusual designs or under conditions of cyclic loading.

4 Typical examples of the application of these rules are given in Appendix D.

5 The opening made by a pipe or a circular nozzle, the axis of which is not perpendicular to the boiler wall or head, may be considered an elliptical opening for design purposes.

6 An obround opening is one which is formed by two parallel sides and semicircular ends.

HG-320 OPENINGS IN BOILERS, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS[3,4]

HG-320.1 Shape of Openings.[5]

Openings in cylindrical, spherical, or conical portions of boilers or in formed heads shall preferably be circular, elliptical, or obround[6] except as otherwise provided in HG-320.2. When the long dimension of an elliptical or obround opening exceeds twice the short dimension, the reinforcement

across the short dimension shall be increased as necessary to provide against excessive distortion due to twisting moment.

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:54 2003)

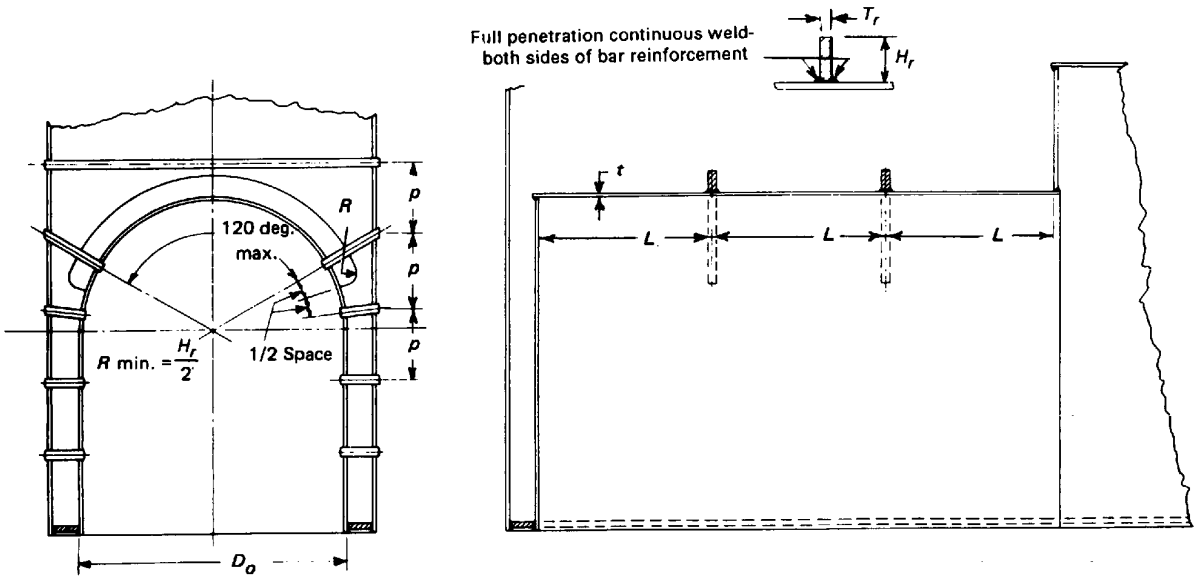


FIG. HG-312.7 ACCEPTABLE TYPE OF SEMICIRCULAR FURNACE REINFORCEMENT

FIG. HG-312.7 ACCEPTABLE TYPE OF SEMICIRCULAR FURNACE REINFORCEMENT

HG-320.2 Size of Openings.

While openings in cylindrical and spherical shells are not limited as to size provided they are adequately reinforced, the rules given herein for reinforcement are intended to apply to openings not exceeding the following dimensions:

(a) for boilers 60 in. (1520 mm) in diameter and less: one-half the boiler diameter but not over 20 in. (508 mm);

(b) for boilers over 60 in. (1520 mm) in diameter: one-third the boiler diameter, but not over 40 in. (1000 mm);

(c) larger openings should be given special attention and may be provided with reinforcement in any suitable manner that complies with the intent of the Code rules. It is recommended that the reinforcement provided be distributed close to the opening. (A provision of about two-thirds of the required reinforcement within a distance of one-fourth of the nozzle diameter on each side of the finished opening is suggested.) Special consideration should be given to the fabrication details used and the inspection employed on critical openings; reinforcement often may be advantageously obtained by use of a thicker shell plate for a boiler course or inserted locally around the openings; welds may be ground to concave contour and the inside corners of the opening rounded to a generous radius to reduce stress concentrations. Appropriate proof testing may be advisable in extreme cases of large openings approaching full boiler diameter, openings of unusual shape, etc.

HG-320.3 Strength and Design of Finished Openings

(a) All references to dimensions in this and succeeding paragraphs apply to the finished construction after adjustment has been made for any material added as corrosion or other allowance. For design purposes, no metal added as corrosion or other allowance may be considered as reinforcement. Reinforcement shall be provided to satisfy the requirements of HG-321 for all openings except as otherwise provided in (b), (c), and (d) below.

(b) Openings in a definite pattern, such as tube holes, may be designed in accordance with the rules for ligaments in HG-350 provided the diameter of the largest hole in the group does not exceed that permitted by the chart in Fig. HG-320.

The symbols given in Fig. HG-320 are defined as follows:

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:55 2003)

P = design pressure, psi

d = maximum allowable diameter of opening, in.

D = outer diameter of the shell, in.

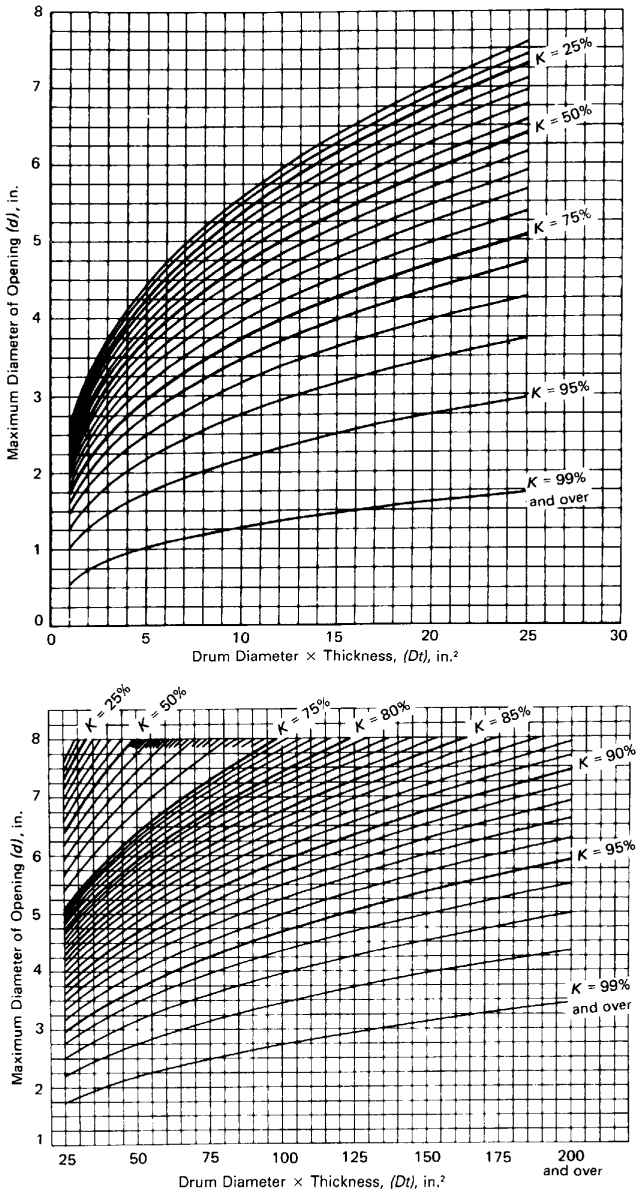


FIG. HG-320 CHART SHOWING LIMITS OF SIZES OF OPENINGS WITH INHERENT COMPENSATION IN CYLINDRICAL SHELLS
(Maximum Permissible Diameter of Opening Is 8 in.)

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:56 2003)

FIG. HG-320 CHART SHOWING LIMITS OF SIZES OF OPENINGS WITH INHERENT COMPENSATION IN CYLINDRICAL SHELLS

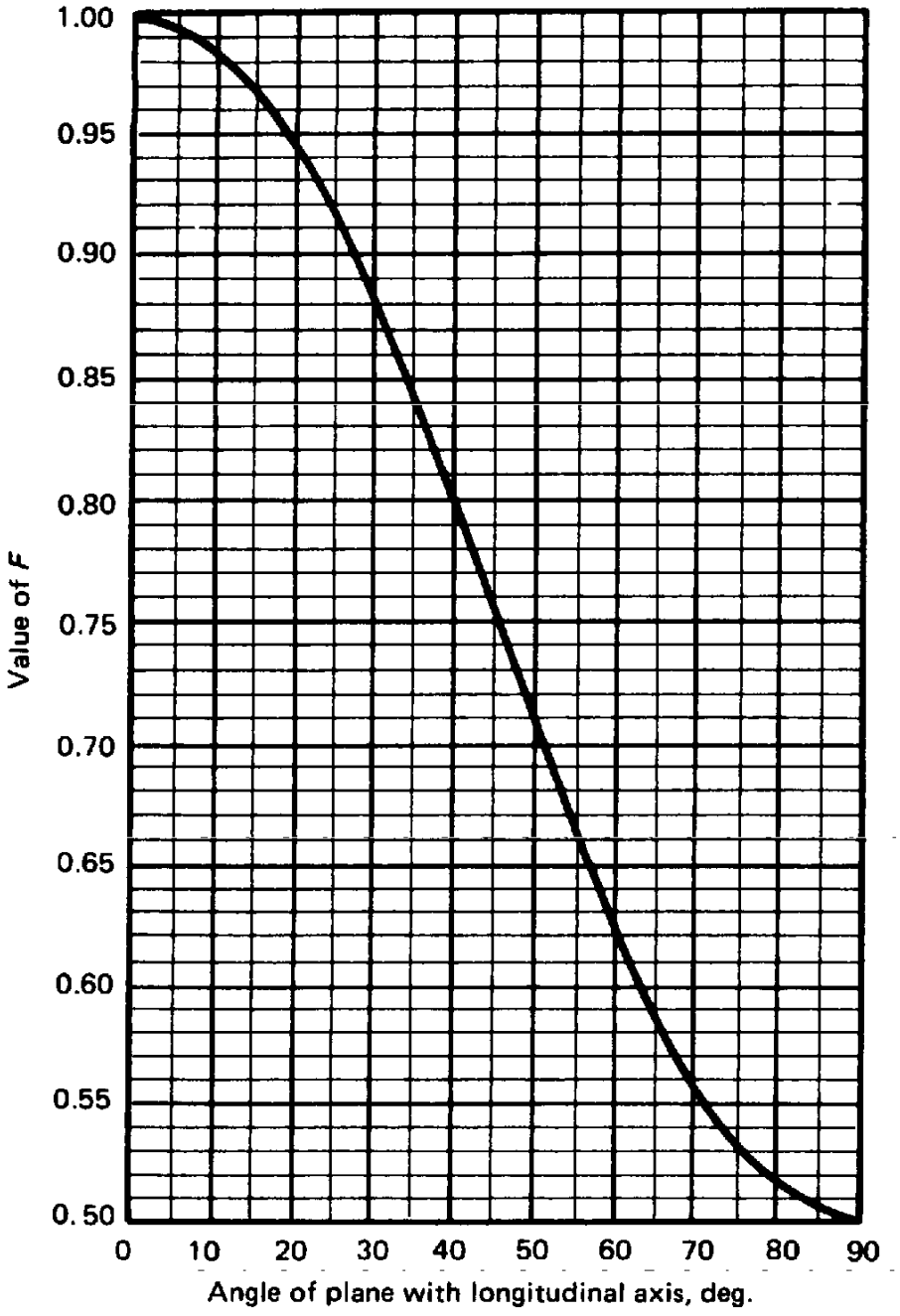


FIG. HG-321 CHART FOR DETERMINING VALUES OF *F*

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:56 2003)

FIG. HG-321 CHART FOR DETERMINING VALUES OF *F*

t	= nominal thickness of the shell, in.
S	= maximum allowable stress value, psi, taken from Table HF-300
K	= *PD*/2*St*

TABLE HG-321
VALUES OF SPHERICAL RADIUS FACTOR K_1
(Equivalent Spherical Radius = K_1 *D*; *D*/2*h* = axis ratio. Interpolation Permitted for Intermediate Values.)

D/2*h*	. . .	3.0	2.8	2.6	2.4	2.2
K_1	. . .	1.36	1.27	1.18	1.08	0.99
D/2*h*	2.0	1.8	1.6	1.4	1.2	1.0
K_1	0.90	0.81	0.73	0.65	0.57	0.50

GENERAL NOTES:
(a) *D* = inside length of major axis, in.
(b) *d* = inside depth of ellipsoidal head measured from the tangent line, in.

TABLE HG-321 VALUES OF SPHERICAL RADIUS FACTOR K_1

(c) No calculations need be made to determine the availability of reinforcement for single openings in boilers not subject to rapid fluctuations in pressure or temperature and in which the outside diameter of the opening does not exceed one-fourth of the inside diameter of the boiler, provided the diameter of the finished opening as defined in HG-321.2 does not exceed the following sizes:

(1) 2 in. pipe size (DN 50) for welded connections in boiler walls over $^3/_8$ in. (10 mm) thick and for all threaded, studded, or expanded connections;

(2) 3 in. pipe size (DN 75) for welded connections in boiler walls $^3/_8$ in. (10 mm) thick and under.

(d) No calculations need be made to demonstrate compliance with HG-321 for single openings not covered in HG-320.3(c) when the diameter of the opening in the shell or header does not exceed that permitted in Fig. HG-320.

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:57 2003)

HG-321 REINFORCEMENT REQUIRED FOR OPENINGS IN SHELLS AND FORMED HEADS

HG-321.1 General.

The rules in this subparagraph apply to all openings other than openings in a definite pattern covered by HG-320.3(b), openings covered by HG-320.3(c) and HG-320.3(d), flanged-in openings in formed heads covered by HG-323, and openings in flat heads covered by HG-325.

(a) Reinforcement shall be provided in such amount and distribution that the requirements for area of reinforcement are satisfied for all planes through the center of the opening and normal to the boiler surface. For a circular opening in a cylindrical shell, the plane containing the axis of the shell is the plane of greatest loading due to pressure.

HG-321.2 Design for Internal Pressure.

The total cross-sectional area of reinforcement A required in any given plane for a boiler under internal pressure shall be not less than

$$A = dt_r F + 2t_n t_r F (1 - f_{r1})$$

where

d = the diameter in the given plane of the finished opening, in. (as depicted in Fig. HG-326.1)

F = a correction factor which compensates for the variation in pressure stresses on different planes with respect to the axis of a vessel. A value of 1.00 shall be used for all configurations except that Fig. HG-321 may be used for integrally reinforced openings in cylindrical shells.

t_r = the required thickness of a seamless shell or head computed by the rules of the Code for the designated pressure, in., except that:

(a) when the opening and its reinforcement are in a torispherical head and are entirely within the spherical portion, t_r is the thickness required for a seamless hemispherical head of the same radius as that of the spherical portion;

(b) when the opening is in a cone, t_r is the thickness required for a seamless cone of diameter D measured where the nozzle axis pierces the inside wall of the cone;

(c) when the opening and its reinforcement are in an ellipsoidal head and are located entirely within a circle the

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:57 2003)

center of which coincides with the center of the head and the diameter of which is equal to 80% of the shell diameter, t_r is the thickness required for a sphere of radius K_1D where D is the shell diameter and K_1 is given by Table HG-321.

HG-323 FLANGED-IN OPENINGS IN FORMED HEADS

HG-323.1 Reinforcement Requirements.

Flanged-in openings in torispherical, ellipsoidal, and hemispherical heads shall be provided with reinforcement in accordance with HG-321, except for heads that meet the requirements in HG-323.2, HG-323.3, and HG-323.4.

HG-323.2 Restrictions on Location.

The flanged-in opening and its reinforcement shall be entirely within the spherical portion of torispherical heads, and within a circle the center of which coincides with the center of the head and the diameter of which equals 80% of the shell diameter for ellipsoidal and hemispherical heads. The center line of the opening shall not be closer to the above boundary circle than the diameter of the opening.

HG-323.3 Minimum Thickness Requirements of Flanged-in Openings

(a) For flanged-in openings that do not exceed 6 in. (152 mm) in any dimension and for flanged-in openings of any dimension that are stayed by an attached flue, the thickness of the head shall not be less than that required by HG-305 for a blank head, nor less than that required by HG-305 for torispherical heads.

(b) For unstayed flanged-in openings that exceed 6 in. (152 mm) in any inside dimension, the head thickness shall be increased 15% but not less than $^1/_8$ in. (3.2 mm) greater than that required by (a) above.

HG-323.4 Minimum Flange Depth.

The minimum depth of flange of a flanged-in opening, when not stayed by an attached flue, shall equal $3t$ or $(t + 3)$ in., whichever is less, where t is the required head thickness. The depth of flange shall be determined by placing a straightedge across the outside of the opening along the major axis and measuring from the straightedge to the edge of the flanged opening.

HG-323.5 Minimum Gasket Bearing Surface.

The minimum width of bearing surface for a gasket on a flanged-in manhole opening shall be $^{11}/_{16}$ in. (18 mm).

HG-325 REINFORCEMENT REQUIRED FOR OPENINGS IN FLAT HEADS

HG-325.1 General.

The rules in this paragraph apply to all openings other than small openings covered by HG-320.3(c).

HG-325.2 Specific Requirements.

Flat heads that have an opening with a diameter that does not exceed one-half of the head diameter or shortest span, as defined in HG-307, shall have a total cross-sectional area of reinforcement not less than that given by the formula:

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:57 2003)

$$A = 0.5dt$$

where

d = diameter of the finished opening, in.

t = minimum required thickness of plate, in.

As an alternative, the thickness of flat heads may be increased to provide the necessary opening reinforcement as follows:

(a) in Formula (1) or (3) of HG-307 by using $2C$ or 0.75 in place of C, whichever is less;

(b) in Formula (2) or (5) of HG-307 by doubling the quantity under the square root sign. Except for the types of construction shown in Fig. HG-307, sketches (j) and (k), the value of $2C$ to be used in the formulas need not exceed 0.75.

HG-326 LIMITS OF METAL AVAILABLE FOR REINFORCEMENT

HG-326.1 Designation of Limits of Reinforcement.

The boundaries of the cross-sectional area in any plane normal to the boiler shell and passing through the center of the opening within which area metal must

be located in order to have value as reinforcement are designated as the limits of reinforcement for that plane.

HG-326.2 Limits of Reinforcement Parallel to Boiler Shell.

The limits of reinforcement, measured parallel to the boiler shell, shall be at a distance, on each side of the axis of the opening, equal to the greater of the following:

(a) the diameter of the finished opening;

(b) the radius of the finished opening plus the thickness of the boiler shell, plus the thickness of the nozzle wall.

HG-326.3 Limits of Reinforcement Normal to Boiler Shell.

The limits of reinforcement, measured normal to the boiler shell, shall conform to the contour of the surface at a distance from each surface equal to the smaller of the following:

(a) $2^1/_2$ times the nominal shell thickness;

(b) $2^1/_2$ times the nozzle wall thickness, plus the thickness of any added reinforcement, exclusive of weld metal on the side of the shell under consideration.

HG-326.4 Use of Excess Boiler Shell and Other Thicknesses.

Metal which may be included as contributing to the area of reinforcement required by HG-321 shall lie within the limits of

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:58 2003)

reinforcement specified in HG-326.2 and HG-326.3 and shall be limited as set forth in (b), (c), (d), and (e) below (see Fig. HG-326.2).

(a) Notation. The symbols used in this paragraph are defined as follows:

A_1 = area in excess thickness in the boiler shell available for reinforcement, sq in.

A_2 = area in excess thickness in the nozzle wall available for reinforcement, sq in.

E_1 = 1 when an opening is in the solid plate or when the opening passes through a circumferential joint in a shell or cone (exclusive of head-to-shell joints)

E_1 = the joint efficiency obtained when any part of the opening passes through any other welded joint

D_p = outside diameter of reinforcing element, in. (actual size of reinforcing element may exceed the limits of available reinforcement established by HG-326; however, credit cannot be taken for any material outside these limits)

R_n = inside radius of the nozzle under consideration, in.

S = maximum allowable stress value, psi, taken from Table HF-300

S_n = allowable stress in nozzle, psi (see S above)

S_v = allowable stress in vessel, psi (see S above)

S_p = allowable stress in reinforcing element (plate), psi (see S above)

f_r = strength reduction factor, not greater than 1.0 (see HG-327.1)

f_{r1} = S_n/S_v for nozzle inserted through the vessel wall

f_{r1} = 1.0 for nozzle wall abutting the vessel wall [see Fig. HG-326.1 sketches (a-1), (a-2), and (a-3)]

f_{r2} = S_n/S_v

f_{r3} = (lesser of S_n or S_p)/ S_v

f_{r4} = S_p/S_v

h = distance nozzle projects beyond the inner surface of the vessel wall, in. (extension of the nozzle beyond the inside surface of the vessel wall is not limited; however, for reinforcement calculations the dimension shall not exceed the smaller of 2.5 t or 2.5 t_n without a reinforcing element and the smaller of 2.5 t or 2.5 $t_n + t_e$ with a reinforcing element or integral compensation)

t_e = thickness of attached reinforcing pad or height of the largest 60 deg. right triangle supported by the vessel and nozzle outside diameter projected surfaces and lying completely

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:56:58 2003)

	within the area of integral reinforcement, in. (see Fig. HG-326.1)
t	= nominal thickness of the boiler shell, in.
t_r	= required thickness of a seamless shell or head as defined in HG-321, in.
t_n	= nominal thickness of nozzle wall, in.
t_{rn}	= required thickness of a seamless nozzle wall, in.
d	= diameter in the plane under consideration of the finished opening, in. (see HG-321.2 and Fig. HG-326.1)
F	= factor F from HG-321.2 and Fig. HG-321

(b) Metal in the Boiler Shell Over and Above the Thickness Required to Resist Pressure. The area of the boiler shell available as reinforcement which shall be used is the larger of the values of A_1 given by the formulas in Fig. HG-326.2.

(c) Metal in the nozzle wall over and above the thickness required to resist pressure in that part of a nozzle wall extending outside the boiler shell. The maximum area in the nozzle wall available as reinforcement in the portion extending outside the boiler shell is the smaller of the values of A_2 given by the formulas in Fig. HG-326.2. All metal in the nozzle wall extending inside the boiler shell, designated as A_3 in Fig. HG-326.2, may be included. No allowance shall be taken for the fact that a differential pressure on an inwardly extending nozzle may cause opposing stress to that of the stress in the shell around the opening.

(d) Metal in the attachment welds, designated as A_4 in Fig. HG-326.2, may be included.

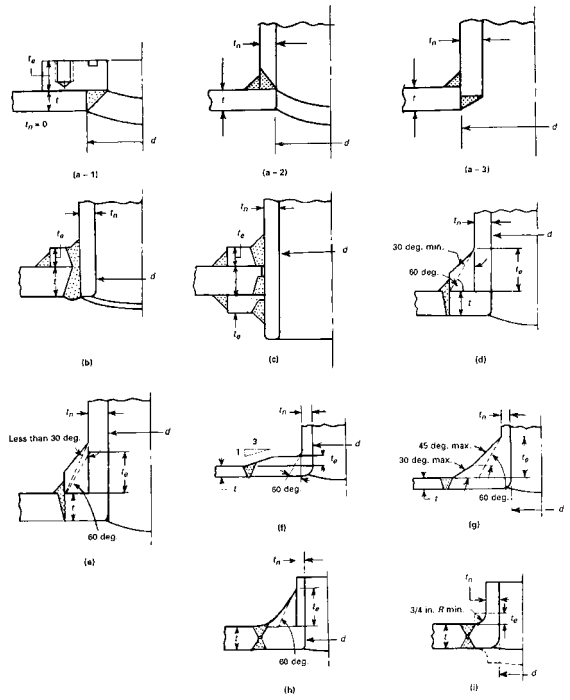
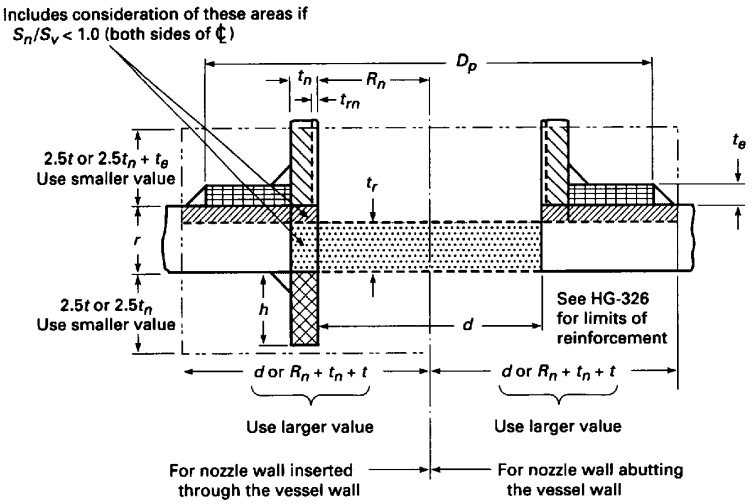


FIG. HG-326.1 SOME REPRESENTATIVE CONFIGURATIONS DESCRIBING THE REINFORCEMENT DIMENSION, t_e, AND THE FINISHED OPENING DIMENSION, d

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:04 2003)

FIG. HG-326.1 SOME REPRESENTATIVE CONFIGURATIONS DESCRIBING THE REINFORCEMENT DIMENSION, t_e, AND THE FINISHED OPENING DIMENSION, d



Without Reinforcing Element

A	$= dt_r F + 2t_n t_r F(1 - f_{r1})$	Area required
A_1	$= \begin{cases} d(E_1 t - Ft_r) - 2t_n (E_1 t - Ft_r)(1 - f_{r1}) \\ 2(t + t_n)(E_1 t - Ft_r) - 2t_n (E_1 t - Ft_r)(1 - f_{r1}) \end{cases}$	Area available in shell; use larger value
A_2	$= \begin{cases} 5(t_n - t_{rn}) f_{r2} t \\ 5(t_n - t_{rn}) f_{r2} t_n \end{cases}$	Area available in nozzle projecting outward; use smaller value
A_3	$= 2t_n f_{r2} h$	Area available in inward nozzle
A_{41}	= outward nozzle weld = $(\text{leg})^2 f_{r2}$	Area available in outward weld
A_{43}	= inward nozzle weld = $(\text{leg})^2 f_{r2}$	Area available in inward weld
If $A_1 + A_2 + A_3 + A_{41} + A_{43} > A$		Opening is adequately reinforced
If $A_1 + A_2 + A_3 + A_{41} + A_{43} < A$		Opening is not adequately reinforced so reinforcing elements must be added and/or thickness must be increased

With Reinforcing Element Added

A	= same as A above	Area required
A_1	= same as A_1 above	Area available
A_2	$= \begin{cases} 5(t_n - t_{rn}) f_{r2} t \\ 2(t_n - t_{rn})(2.5t_n + t_e) f_{r2} \end{cases}$	Area available in nozzle projecting outward; use smaller area
A_3	= same as A_3 above	Area available in inward nozzle
A_{41}	= outward nozzle weld = $(\text{leg})^2 f_{r3}$	Area available in outward weld
A_{42}	= outer element weld = $(\text{leg})^2 f_{r4}$	Area available in outer weld
A_{43}	= inward nozzle weld = $(\text{leg})^2 f_{r2}$	Area available in inward weld
A_5	$= (D_p - d - 2t_n)\, t_e\, f_{r4}$ [Note (1)]	Area available in element
If $A_1 + A_2 + A_3 + A_{41} + A_{42} + A_{43} + A_5 > A$		Opening is adequately reinforced

NOTE:
(1) This formula is applicable for a rectangular cross-sectional element that falls within the limits of reinforcement.

FIG. HG-326.2 NOMENCLATURE AND FORMULAS FOR REINFORCED OPENINGS
(This Figure Illustrates a Common Nozzle Configuration and Is Not Intended to Prohibit Other Configurations Permitted by the Code.)

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:06 2003)

FIG. HG-326.2 NOMENCLATURE AND FORMULAS FOR REINFORCED OPENINGS

(e) Metal added as reinforcement, designated as A_5 in Fig. HG-326.2, may be included.

HG-327 STRENGTH OF REINFORCEMENT

HG-327.1 Strength of Nozzle and Added Material.

Material in the nozzle wall and added material used for reinforcement shall preferably be the same as that of the boiler shell, but if material with a lower allowable stress value is used, the area provided by such material shall be increased in proportion to the inverse ratio of the allowable stress values of the reinforcement and the boiler shell material. No advantage may be taken of the increased strength of reinforcement material having a higher allowable stress value than the material of the boiler shell. Deposited weld metal outside of either the boiler shell or any reinforcing pad used as reinforcement shall be credited with an allowable stress value equivalent to the weaker of the materials connected by the weld. Boiler-to-nozzle or pad-to-nozzle attachment weld metal within the pad may be credited with a stress value equal to that of the boiler shell or pad, respectively.

HG-327.2 Strength of Attachment Material

(a) On each side of the plane defined in HG-326.1, the strength of the attachment joining the boiler shell and reinforcement or any two parts of the attached reinforcement shall be at least equal to the smaller of:

(1) the strength in tension of the cross section of the element of reinforcement being considered;

(2) the strength in tension of the area defined in HG-321 less the strength in tension of the reinforcement area which is integral in the boiler shell as permitted by HG-326.4;

(3) the strength of the attachment joint shall be considered for its entire length on each side of the plane of the area of reinforcement defined in HG-326.1. For obround openings, consideration shall also be given to the strength of the attachment joint on one side of the plane transverse to the parallel sides of the opening which passes through the center of the semicircular end of the opening.

HG-328 REINFORCEMENT FOR MULTIPLE OPENINGS

HG-328.1 When Limits of Reinforcement Overlap.

When any two adjacent openings are spaced at less than two times their average diameter so that their limits of reinforcement overlap, the two openings (or similarly for any larger group of openings) shall be provided with reinforcement in accordance with HG-321 with a combined reinforcement that has a strength equal to the combined strength of the reinforcement that would be required for the separate openings. No portion of the cross section shall be considered as applying to more than one opening or be evaluated more than once in a combined area.

HG-328.2 Combined Reinforcement for Multiple Openings.

When more than two adjacent openings are to be provided with a combined reinforcement, the minimum distance between centers of any two of these openings shall preferably be at least $1^1/_2$ times their average diameter, and the area of reinforcement between them shall be at least equal to 50% of the total required for these two openings.

(a) Two adjacent openings as considered under HG-328.2 shall have a distance between centers not less than $1^1/_3$ times their average diameter.

(b) In lieu of providing reinforcement for individual openings, reinforcement may be provided for any number of closely spaced adjacent openings, in any arrangement, by providing reinforcement for an assumed opening of a diameter enclosing all such openings.

(c) When a group of openings is provided with reinforcement by a thicker section butt welded into the shell or head, the edges of the inserted section shall be tapered as prescribed in HW-701.1.

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:06 2003)

HG-328.3 When Reinforcing Each of a Series of Openings Is Impractical.

When there is a series of tube openings in a boiler and it is impractical to reinforce each opening, the construction will be acceptable provided the ligaments between openings are calculated by the rules given in HG-350.

HG-330 INSPECTION AND ACCESS OPENINGS

HG-330.1 General Inspection Openings

(a) All boilers shall be provided with suitable manhole openings and handhole or washout plug openings to permit inspection and removal of accumulated sediment.

(b) Electric boilers of a design employing a removable cover which will permit access for inspection and cleaning and having an internal gross volume (exclusive of casing and insulation) of not more than 5 cu ft (0.14 m^3) need not be fitted with washout or inspection openings.

Electric boilers equipped with immersion type resistance elements not provided with a manhole shall have an inspection opening or handhole located in the lower portion of the shell or head. The inspection opening

shall not be smaller than 3 in. pipe size (DN 75). In addition, electric boilers designed for steam service shall have an inspection opening or manhole at or near the normal waterline.

(c) Furnaces of internally fired boilers shall be provided with access doors as required by HG-330.5.

HG-330.2 Manholes.

A manhole shall be placed in the front head below the tubes of a horizontal-return tubular boiler 60 in. (1520 mm) or over in diameter. There shall be a manhole in the upper part of the shell, or in the head of a firetube boiler over 60 in. (1520 mm) in diameter, except in a vertical firetube boiler.

HG-330.3 Size of Manholes and Gasket Surfaces

(a) An elliptical manhole opening shall not be less than 11 in. × 15 in. (280 mm × 381 mm) or 10 in. × 16 in. (254 mm × 406 mm) in size.

(b) A circular manhole opening shall not be less than 15 in. (381 mm) in diameter.

(c) The minimum width of bearing surface for a gasket on a manhole opening shall be $^{11}/_{16}$ in. (18 mm).

(d) No gasket for use on a manhole or handhole of any boiler shall have a thickness greater than $^{1}/_{8}$ in. (3.2 mm) when compressed.

HG-330.4 Handholes and Washout Plugs

(a) Boilers of the locomotive or firebox type, except those set in brick or otherwise so constructed as to render such openings inaccessible, shall have one handhole or washout plug near each corner in the lower part of the waterleg and at least one opening near the line of the crown sheet. In addition, boilers designed for steam service shall have at least one inspection opening above the top row of tubes. This inspection opening shall be a minimum of NPS 3 (DN 75) or a handhole as specified in (f) below and used solely for inspection purposes.

(b) A boiler of the scotch type shall have a handhole or washout plug in the front head below or on each side of the furnace or on each side of the shell near the front head, a handhole or washout plug in the bottom of the shell, an opening to inspect the top of the furnace and an inspection opening above the top row of tubes. This inspection opening shall be a minimum of NPS 3 (DN 75) or a handhole as specified in (f) below and used solely for inspection purposes. Scotch marine boilers (wet-back type) shall also have an opening for inspection of the water space at the rear of the combustion chamber.

(c) Vertical firetube or similar type boilers having gross internal volume (exclusive of casing and insulation) more than 5 cu ft (0.14 m^3) shall have at least three handholes or washout plugs in the lower part of the waterleg and at least two handholes or washout plugs near the line of the lower tubesheet. Such boilers having gross internal volume not over 5 cu ft (0.14 m^3)

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:06 2003)

shall have at least two washout openings in the lower part of the waterleg and at least one washout opening near the line of the lower tubesheet. In addition, boilers designed for steam service shall have at least one inspection opening above the lowest permissible water level. This inspection opening shall be a minimum of NPS 3 (DN 75) or a handhole as specified in (f) below and used solely for inspection purposes.

(d) Washout plugs shall be not smaller than $1^1/_2$ in. pipe size (DN 40) for boilers having gross internal volume more than 5 cu ft (0.14 m^3). Washout plugs shall be not smaller than 1 in. pipe size for boilers having gross internal volume not more than 5 cu ft (0.14 m^3).

(e) Washout openings may be used for return pipe connections and the washout plug placed in a tee so that the plug is directly opposite and as close as possible to the opening in the boiler.

(f) A handhole opening shall not be less than $2^3/_4$ in. × $3^1/_2$ in. (70 mm × 89 mm) but it is recommended that, where possible, larger sizes be used.

HG-330.5 Access Doors

(a) A fire door or other access not less than 11 in. × 15 in. (280 mm × 381 mm) or 10 in. × 16 in. (254 mm × 406 mm) or 15 in. (381 mm) in diameter, shall be provided for the furnace of an internally fired boiler in which the least furnace dimension is 28 in. (711 mm) or over. The minimum size of access door used in a boiler setting shall be 12 in. × 16 in. (305 mm × 406 mm), or equivalent area, the least dimension being 11 in. (280 mm).

(b) Fuel Burning Equipment. Fuel burning equipment may be installed in the fire door opening provided the cover plate can be unbolted or unlatched to give full-size access to the furnace through the fire door opening.

HG-340 STAYED SURFACES

HG-340.1 Required Thickness and Design Pressure

(a) The required thickness and design pressure for stayed flat plates and those parts which, by these rules, require staying, as flat plates with stays or staybolts of uniform cross section that are symmetrically spaced, shall be calculated by the following formulas:

$$t = p\sqrt{P/SC} \qquad (1)$$

$$P = t^2SC/p^2 \qquad (2)$$

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:06 2003)

where

t	= required thickness of plate, in.
P	= design pressure, psi
S	= maximum allowable stress value given in Tables HF-300.1 and HF-300.2
p	= maximum pitch measured between straight lines passing through the centers of the stays in the different rows, which lines may be horizontal, vertical, or inclined, in.
C	= 2.7 for stays welded to plates or for stays screwed through plates not over $^{7}/_{16}$ in. (11 mm) in thickness, with ends riveted over
C	= 2.8 for stays welded to plates or for stays screwed through plates over $^{7}/_{16}$ in. (11 mm) in thickness, with ends riveted over
C	= 3.1 for stays screwed through plates and fitted with single nuts outside of plate, or with inside and outside nuts, omitting washers
C	= 3.5 for stays with heads not less than 1.3 times the diameter of the stays screwed through plates, or made a taper fit and having the heads formed on the stays before installing them and not riveted over, said heads being made to have a true bearing on the plate
C	= 4.0 for stays fitted with inside and outside nuts and outside washers where the diameter of washers is not less than 0.4p and thickness not less than t
r	= radius of firebox corner, in.

(b) When two flat stayed surfaces intersect at an angle as shown in Fig. HG-340.1, the pitch from the staybolt nearest to the intersection to the point of tangency of the corner curve with the plate shall be

$$p = \frac{90t}{\beta}\sqrt{\frac{CS}{P}}$$

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:07 2003)

where β is the angle shown in Fig. HG-340.1.

(c) When two plates are connected by stays and only one of these plates requires staying, the value of *C* shall be governed by the thickness of the plate requiring staying.

HG-340.2 Proportions of Through-Stays With Washers.

Acceptable proportions for the ends of through-stays with washers are indicated in Fig. HG-340.2.

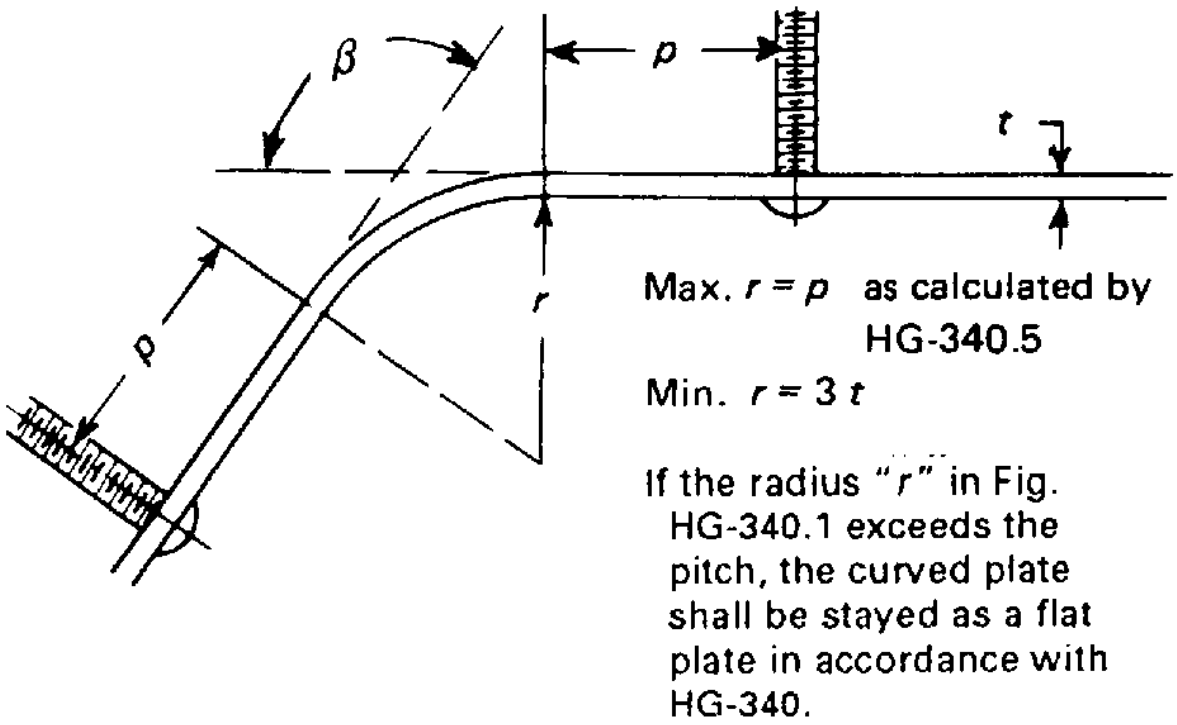


FIG. HG-340.1 PITCH OF STAYBOLTS ADJACENT TO UPPER CORNERS OF FIREBOXES

FIG. HG-340.1 PITCH OF STAYBOLTS ADJACENT TO UPPER CORNERS OF FIREBOXES

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:07 2003)

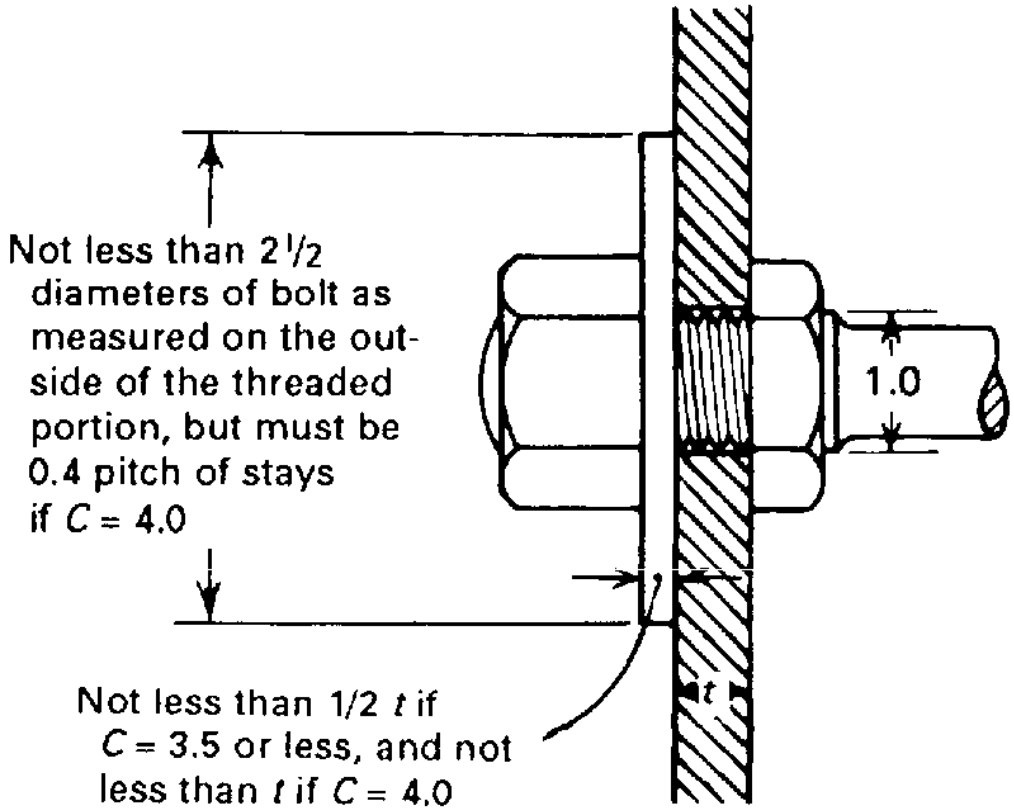


FIG. HG-340.2 ACCEPTABLE PROPORTIONS FOR ENDS OF THROUGH-STAYS

FIG. HG-340.2 ACCEPTABLE PROPORTIONS FOR ENDS OF THROUGH-STAYS

HG-340.3 Maximum Pitch of Stays.

The maximum pitch shall be $8^{1}/_{2}$ in. (216 mm) except that for welded-in stays the pitch may be greater provided it does not exceed 15 times the diameter of the stay.

HG-340.4 Unsymmetrical Staying.

Where the staying of shells is unsymmetrical by reason of the construction, it is permissible to consider the load carried by each stay as that on the area calculated by taking the distance from the center of the spacing on one side of the stay to the center of the spacing on the other side.

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:08 2003)

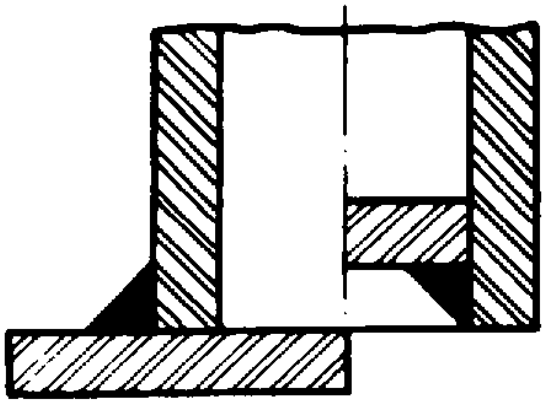


FIG. HG-340.3 EXAMPLES OF ACCEPTABLE CORNER WELDS FOR PRESSURES NOT OVER 30 psi

FIG. HG-340.3 EXAMPLES OF ACCEPTABLE CORNER WELDS FOR PRESSURES NOT OVER 30 psi

HG-340.5 Stay Distance to Corner Joints, Welded Joints, and Flanges

(a) In the construction of a heating boiler designed for not over 30 psi (207 kPa) and having welded joints, the allowable distance from a corner welded joint to the nearest row of stays may be a full pitch as provided by the formula in HG-340.1. A welded joint in a flat surface shall be between two rows of stays which are not over one pitch apart except that the type of joint shown in Fig. HG-340.3 shall have a row of stays not more than one pitch from the weld.

(b) In the construction of heating boilers to be designed for water pressures above 30 psi (207 kPa), corner joints shall comply with the requirements of HW-701.3.

(c) When the edge of a flat stayed plate is flanged, the distance from the center of the outermost stays to the inside of the supporting flange shall not be greater than the pitch of the stays plus the inside radius of the flange.

HG-340.6 Allowable Pitch of Stays.

The allowable pitch, in inches, for stays as given in Table HG-340 may be used in place of the pitch calculated under HG-340.1 when the allowable stress of the steel is 11,000 psi (76 MPa) or greater.

HG-341 STAYBOLTS

HG-341.1 Threaded Staybolts.

The ends of staybolts extending through the plate shall extend beyond the plate not less than two threads when installed, after which they shall be riveted over or upset by an equivalent process without excessive scoring of the plate, or they may be fitted with threaded nuts through which the staybolt shall extend. The outside ends of solid staybolts 8 in. (203 mm) or less in length, if of uniform diameter throughout their length, shall be drilled with telltale holes at least $^{3}/_{16}$ in. (4.8 mm) in diameter to a depth extending at least $^{1}/_{2}$ in. (13 mm) beyond the inside of the plate. If such staybolts are reduced in section

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:08 2003)

below their diameter at the root of the thread, the telltale holes shall extend at least $^1/_2$ in. (13 mm) beyond the point where the reduction in section commences. Hollow staybolts may be used in place of solid staybolts with drilled ends. Solid staybolts over 8 in. (203 mm) long need not be drilled. Staybolts used in waterlegs of watertube boilers shall be hollow or drilled at both ends, in accordance with the requirements above stated, irrespective of their length. All threaded staybolts not normal to the stayed surface shall have not less than three engaging threads of which at least one shall be a full thread; but if the thickness of the material in the boiler is not sufficient to give one full engaging thread, the plates shall be sufficiently reinforced on the inside by a steel plate welded thereto. Telltale holes are not required in staybolts attached by welding.

HG-341.2 Staybolts Upset for Threading.

The ends of steel stays upset for threading shall be fully annealed after upsetting.

HG-341.3 Staybolts Fitted With Nuts.

The ends of staybolts fitted with nuts shall not be exposed to direct radiant heat from fire.

HG-341.4 Welded-in Staybolts.

Requirements for welded-in staybolts are given in HW-710.

HG-342 DIMENSIONS OF STAYS

HG-342.1 Required Area of Stays.

The required area of a stay at its minimum cross section (usually at the root of the thread) and exclusive of any allowance for corrosion shall be obtained by dividing the load on the stay computed in accordance with HG-342.2, HG-342.3, and HG-342.4 by the allowable stress value for the material.

HG-342.2 Load Carried by Stays.

The area supported by a stay shall be computed on the basis of the full pitch dimensions with a deduction for the area occupied by the stay. The load carried by a stay is the product of the area supported by the stay and the design pressure.

HG-342.3 Stays Longer Than 120 Diameters.

Stays exceeding 120 diameters in length shall be supported at intervals not exceeding 120 diameters or the cross-sectional area of the stay shall be increased by not less than 15% of the required area of the stays calculated in HG-342.1.

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:09 2003)

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:09 2003)

TABLE HG-340
ALLOWABLE PITCH[1] OF STAYS, in.[2] (Limited by HG-340.3)

Design Pressure, psi	Plate Thickness, in.															
	1/4	9/32	5/16	11/32	3/8	13/32	7/16	15/32	1/2	17/32	9/16	19/32	5/8	21/32	11/16	3/4
30	7 7/8	8 13/16	9 13/16	10 13/16	11 13/16	12 3/4	13 3/4	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	24
40	6 13/16	7 5/8	8 1/2	9 3/8	10 3/16	11 1/16	11 15/16	13	13 7/8	14 3/4	15 11/16	16 7/16	17 5/16	18 3/16	19 1/16	20 13/16
50	6 1/16	6 7/8	7 5/8	8 3/8	9 1/8	9 7/8	10 5/8	11 5/8	12 3/8	13 3/16	13 15/16	14 3/4	15 1/2	16 1/4	17 1/16	18 5/8
60	5 9/16	6 1/4	6 15/16	7 5/8	8 5/16	9	9 3/4	10 5/8	11 5/16	11 15/16	12 3/4	13 7/16	14 1/8	14 7/8	15 9/16	17
70	5 1/8	5 13/16	6 7/16	7 1/16	7 11/16	8 3/8	9	9 13/16	10 1/2	11 1/8	11 13/16	12 7/16	13 1/8	13 3/4	14 3/8	15 11/16
75	4 15/16	5 9/16	6 1/4	6 13/16	7 7/16	8 1/16	8 11/16	9 1/2	10 1/8	10 3/4	11 3/8	12	12 5/8	13 5/16	13 15/16	15 3/16
80	4 13/16	5 3/8	6	6 5/8	7 3/16	7 13/16	8 7/16	9 3/16	9 13/16	10 7/16	11	11 5/8	12 1/4	12 7/8	13 1/2	14 11/16
90	4 9/16	5 1/8	5 11/16	6 1/4	6 13/16	7 3/8	7 15/16	8 11/16	9 1/4	9 13/16	10 3/8	11	11 9/16	12 1/8	12 11/16	13 7/8
100	4 5/16	4 13/16	5 3/8	5 15/16	6 7/16	7	7 1/2	8 3/16	8 3/4	9 5/16	9 7/8	10 3/8	10 15/16	11 1/2	12 1/16	13 1/8
110	...	4 5/8	5 1/8	5 5/8	6 1/8	6 11/16	7 3/16	7 13/16	8 3/8	8 7/8	9 3/8	9 15/16	10 7/16	11	11 1/2	12 9/16
120	...	4 7/16	4 7/8	5 3/8	5 7/8	6 3/8	6 7/8	7 1/2	8	8 1/2	9	9 1/2	10	10 1/2	11	12
125	...	4 5/16	4 13/16	5 5/16	5 3/4	6 1/4	6 3/4	7 3/8	7 13/16	8 5/16	8 7/8	9 5/16	9 13/16	10 5/16	10 3/4	11 3/4
130	...	...	...	5 3/16	5 5/8	6 1/8	6 5/8	7 3/16	7 11/16	8 3/16	8 5/8	9 1/8	9 5/8	10 1/8	10 9/16	11 1/2
140	...	...	...	5	5 7/16	5 7/8	6 3/8	6 15/16	7 3/8	7 7/8	8 5/16	8 13/16	9 1/4	9 3/4	10 3/16	11 1/8
150	...	...	...	4 13/16	5 1/4	5 11/16	6 1/8	6 11/16	7 1/8	7 5/8	8 1/16	8 1/2	8 15/16	9 3/8	9 13/16	10 3/4
160	...	...	...	4 11/16	5 1/8	5 1/2	5 15/16	6 1/2	6 15/16	7 3/8	7 13/16	8 1/4	8 11/16	9 1/16	9 1/2	10 7/16

NOTE:
(1) The pitches in Table HG-340 are calculated from the formula $p = \sqrt{t^2 \times SC/P}$. In calculating these pitches, $C = 2.7$ for plate thicknesses not over 7/16 in. and $C = 2.8$ for plate thicknesses exceeding 7/16 in.; $S = 11{,}000$ psi.

TABLE HG-340 ALLOWABLE PITCH[1] OF STAYS, in.[2]

HG-342.4 Stays Fabricated by Welding.

Stays made of parts jointed by welding shall be computed for strength using a joint efficiency of 60% for the weld. Welded stays shall be used only where it is impractical to use stays of one-piece construction.

HG-342.5 Minimum Cross-Sectional Area.

No ferrous screwed stay, or ferrous stay welded in by the fusion process of welding shall have a cross-sectional area less than 0.44 sq in. (284 mm^2).

HG-342.6 Minimum Diameter of Nonferrous Stays

(a) For nonferrous staybolted construction using unthreaded copper staybolts and copper plates, the minimum diameter of the staybolts shall be as follows:

Copper Plate Thickness, in.	**Min. Staybolt Diameter, in**
Not exceeding $^1/_8$	$^1/_2$
Over $^1/_8$, but not over $^3/_{16}$	$^5/_8$
Over $^3/_{16}$	$^3/_4$

(b) For nonferrous staybolted construction using unthreaded copper-nickel staybolts and copper-nickel plates, the minimum diameter of staybolts shall be as follows:

Copper-Nickel Plate Thickness, in.	**Min. Staybolt Diameter, in.**
Not exceeding $^1/_8$	$^3/_8$
Over $^1/_8$, but not over $^3/_{16}$	$^7/_{16}$
Over $^3/_{16}$	$^1/_2$

HG-343 DIMENSIONS OF DIAGONAL STAYS

HG-343.1 Required Area of Diagonal Stays.

To determine the required area of a diagonal stay, multiply the area of the direct stay, required to support the surface, by the slant or diagonal length of the stay; divide this product by the length of a line (drawn perpendicular to the surface supported) to the center of the palm of the diagonal stay, as follows:

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:09 2003)

$$A = \frac{aL}{l}$$

where

A	= sectional area of diagonal stay, sq in.
a	= sectional area of direct stay, sq in.
L	= length of diagonal stay as indicated in Fig. HG-343, in.
l	= length of line, drawn perpendicular to boiler head or surface supported, to center of palm of diagonal stay, as indicated in Fig. HG-343, in.

Example:

Given diameter of direct stay = 1 in., $a = 0.7854$ sq in., $L = 60$ in., $l = 48$ in.; substituting and solving:

$$A = \frac{0.7854 \times 60}{48} = 0.98 \text{ sectional area, sq in.}$$

Diameter = 1.11 in. (Use $1^{1}/_{8}$ in.)

HG-343.2 Diagonal Stays for Segments of Tubesheets.

For staying segments of tubesheets such as in horizontal firetube boilers, where L is not more than 1.15 times l for any stay, the stays may be calculated as direct stays using 90% of the allowable stress values calculated in HG-342.1.

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:09 2003)

HG-345 STAYING OF HEADS

HG-345.1 General

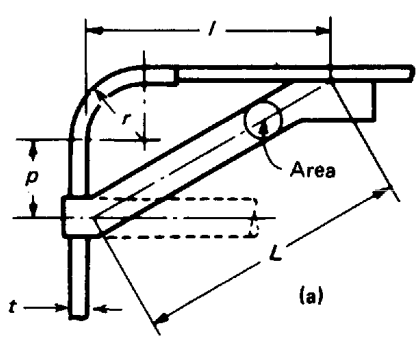
(a) Those portions of heads which require staying shall be stayed as flat plates under the provisions of these rules.

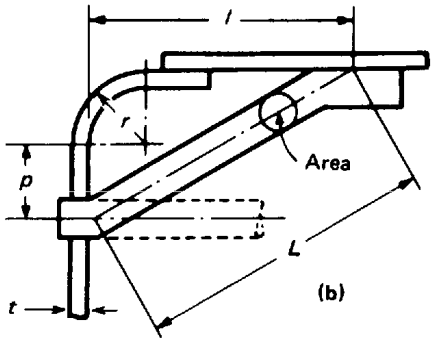
(b) For unflanged heads in boilers designed for not over 30 psi (207 kPa) pressure, with the heads attached with single fillet welds in accordance with HW-701.3(a), staying is not required if the greatest distance measured along a radial line from the inner surface of the shell to a fully supported line or point does not exceed 1.25*p*. For unflanged heads in boilers designed for over 30 psi (207 kPa) with heads attached in accordance with HW-701.3(b), or for flanged heads of any pressure, staying is not required if the greatest distance measured as above does not exceed 1.5*p*. The value of *p* shall be obtained by applying the equation of HG-340 with a *C* value of 2.7 or 2.8 depending on the plate thickness.

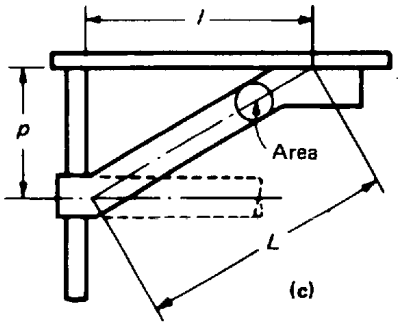
(c) For purposes of applying the above paragraph a fully supported point is a stay rod or tube passed through the head and welded, having sufficient area to meet the requirements of HG-342, and having an area of weld in shear at least 1.25 times the required area of the staying member. A fully supported line is a flanged or welded corner joint or is a line tangent to a row of tubes or stays not over one pitch apart between edges and extending to within one pitch of the shell or the diametrically opposite side of the shell.

(d) For unflanged heads, the maximum distance between the inner surface of the shell and the centers

of stays shall not be more than the allowable pitch as determined by HG-340, using the value of *C* given for the thickness of plate and the type of stay used.







GENERAL NOTES:

1. Determine area of diagonal stays per HG-343.1
2. Determine weld details and weld size for stay-to-tube-sheet and stay-to-shell per HW-710
3. Determine diagonal stay pitch per HG-340.1
4. Max. $r = 8t$
   Min. $r = 3t$
   t = nominal thickness of tubesheet

FIG. HG-343 DETAILS OF INSTALLATION OF DIAGONAL STAYS

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:10 2003)

FIG. HG-343 DETAILS OF INSTALLATION DIAGONAL STAYS

(e) For a flanged head welded to the shell, the maximum distance between the inner surface of the supporting flange and lines parallel to the surface of the shell passing through the centers of the stays shall be *p* as determined by the formula in HG-340, plus the inside radius of the supporting flange, using the value of *C* given for the thickness of plate and the type of stay used.

(f) The maximum distance between the edges of the tube holes and the center of the first row of stays shall be *p* as determined by the formula in HG-340, using the value of *C* given for the thickness of plate and the type of stay used.

(g) When a portion of the head in a horizontal firetube boiler is provided with a manhole opening, the flange of which is formed from the solid plate and turned inward to a depth of not less than three times the required thickness of the head, measured from the outside or, when an unflanged manhole ring meeting the requirements of HG-321 is provided in a flat stayed head of a firetube boiler, the area to be stayed may be reduced by 100 sq in. (645 cm^2) provided both the following requirements are met [see Figs. HG-345.1(a) and HG-345.1(b)].

(1) The distance between the manhole opening and the inner surface of the supporting flange does not exceed one-half the maximum allowable pitch for an unflanged manhole or one-half the maximum allowable pitch plus the inside radius of the supporting flange for a flanged-in manhole in a flanged head.

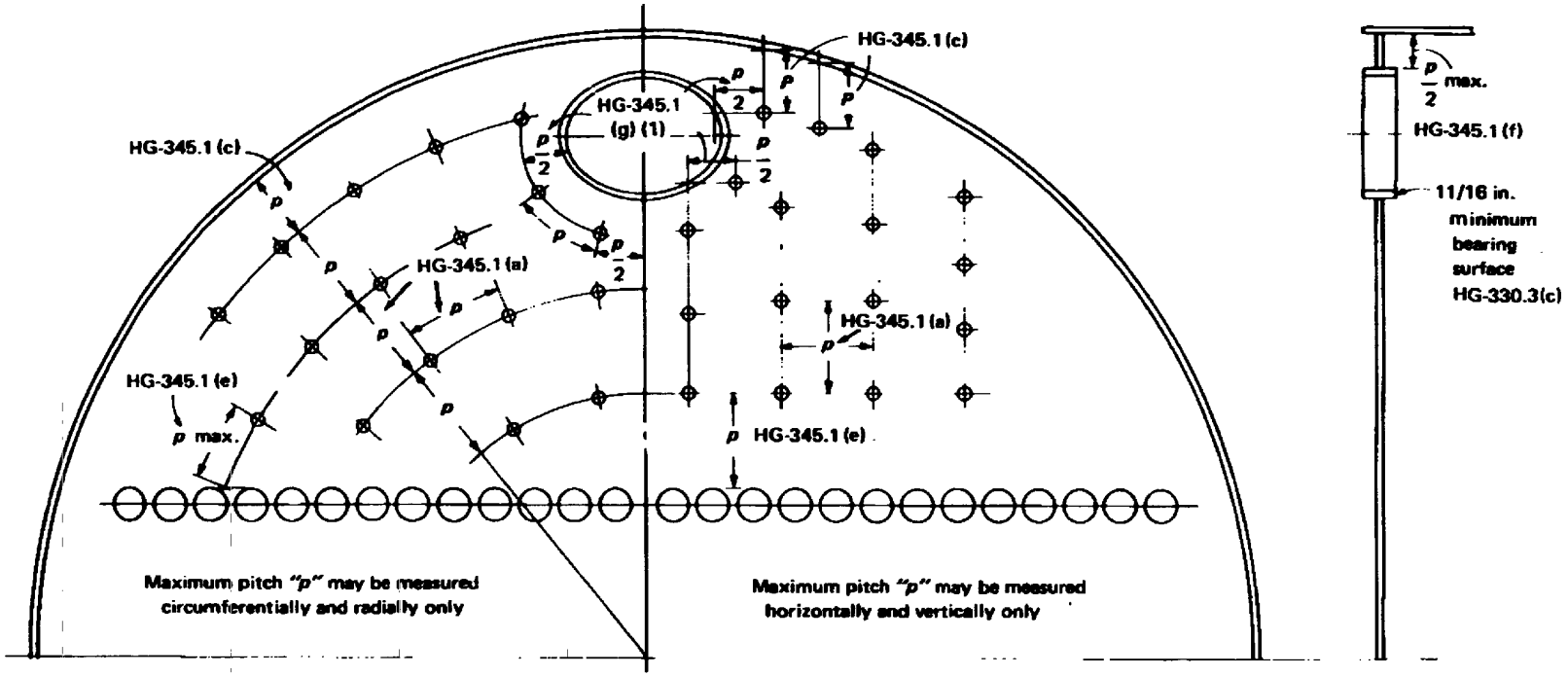
(2) The distance between the centers of the first row of stays, or the edges of the tube holes, and the manhole opening does not exceed one-half the maximum allowable pitch as determined by HG-340.

HG-345.2 Flanged Heads

(a) The area of a segment of a flanged head to be stayed shall be the area enclosed by lines drawn 2 in. (51 mm) from the tubes and a distance of 3 in. (76 mm) from the shell, as shown in Fig. HG-345.2.

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:11 2003)

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:11 2003)



GENERAL NOTES:

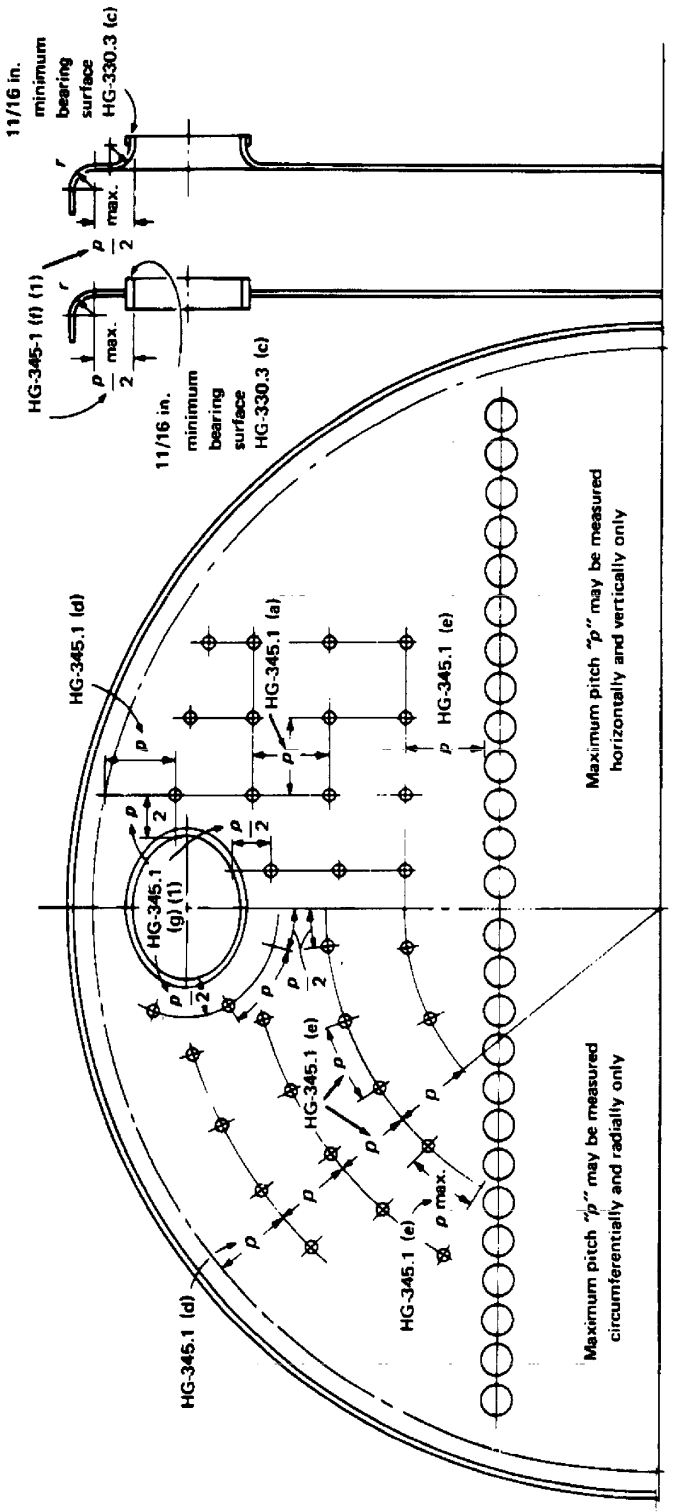
(1) Required cross-sectional area to carry total load on segment based upon allowable stresses from Table HF-300.1 and computed by HG-342.1.

(2) Provide the number of stays required to not exceed the maximum calculated pitch.

(3) Diagonal stay stresses must not exceed limits computed from HG-343.1.

FIG. HG-345.1(a) SKETCH SHOWING APPLICATION OF HG-345.1 TO THE STAYING OF BOILERS

FIG. HG-345.1(a) SKETCH SHOWING APPLICATION OF HG-345.1 TO THE STAYING OF BOILERS



GENERAL NOTES:
(1) Required cross-sectional area to carry total load on segment based upon allowable stresses from Table HF-300.1 and computed by HG-342.1.
(2) Provide the number of stays required to not exceed the maximum calculated pitch.
(3) Diagonal stay stresses must not exceed limits computed from HG-343.1.

FIG. HG-345.1(b) SKETCH SHOWING APPLICATION OF HG-345.1 TO THE STAYING OF BOILERS

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:12 2003)

FIG. HG-345.1(b) SKETCH SHOWING APPLICATION OF HG-345.1 TO THE STAYING OF BOILERS

(b) The net area to be stayed in a segment of a flanged head may be determined by the following formula:

$$A = \frac{4(H - d - 2)^2}{3} \sqrt{\frac{2(R - d)}{H - d - 2} - 0.608}$$

where

A	= area to be stayed, sq in.
H	= distance from tubes to shell, in.
R	= radius of boiler head, in.
d	= 3 in. (See Fig. HG-345.2.)

HG-345.3 Unflanged Heads

(a) The area of a segment of an unflanged head to be stayed shall be the area enclosed by the shell and a line drawn 2 in. (51 mm) from the tubes.

(b) The net area to be stayed in a segment of an unflanged head may be determined by the following formula:

$$A = \frac{4(H - 2)^2}{3} \sqrt{\frac{2R}{(H - 2)} - 0.608}$$

HG-346 TUBESHEETS WITH FIRETUBES USED AS STAYS

HG-346.1 Required Thickness, Maximum Pitch, and Design Pressure.

The required thickness, maximum pitch, and design pressure for tubesheets with firetubes used as stays shall be calculated using the following formulas:

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:12 2003)

$$t = \sqrt{\left(\frac{P}{CS}\right)\left(p^2 - \frac{\pi D^2}{4}\right)} \qquad (1)$$

$$p = \sqrt{\left(\frac{CSt^2}{P}\right) + \left(\frac{\pi D^2}{4}\right)} \qquad (2)$$

$$P = \frac{CSt^2}{p^2 - \left(\frac{\pi D^2}{4}\right)} \qquad (3)$$

(1 - 3)

where

t	= required thickness of plate, in.
p	= maximum pitch measured between the centers of tubes in different rows, which lines may be horizontal, vertical, or inclined, in.
C	= 2.7 for firetubes welded to plates not over $^{7}/_{16}$ in. (11 mm) in thickness
C	= 2.8 for firetubes welded to plates over $^{7}/_{16}$ in. (11 mm) in thickness
S	= maximum allowable stress value given in Tables HF-300.1 and HF-300.2
P	= design pressure, psi

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:13 2003)

D = outside diameter of the tube, in.

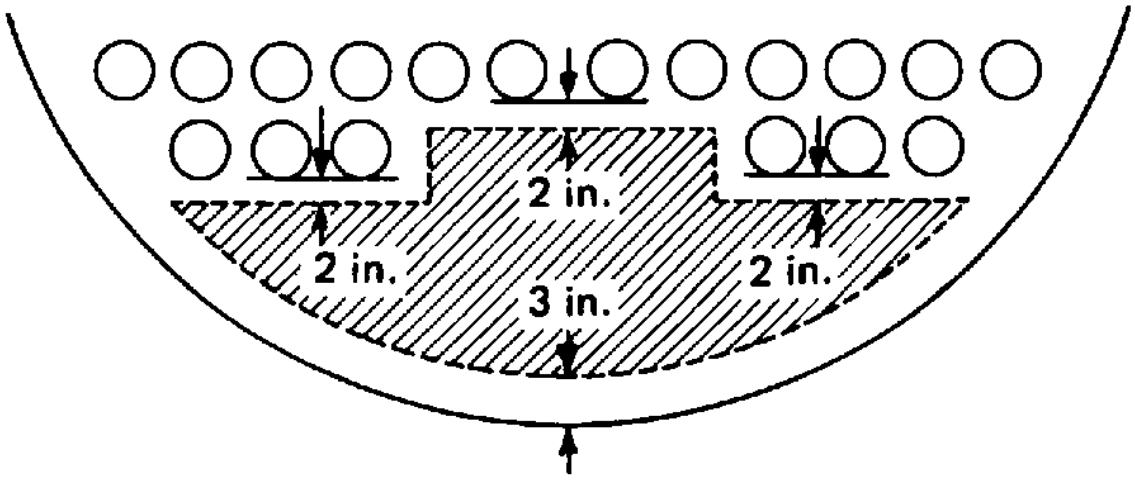


FIG. HG-345.2 METHOD OF DETERMINING NET AREA OF IRREGULAR SEGMENT OF A HEAD

FIG. HG-345.2 METHOD OF DETERMINING NET AREA OF IRREGULAR SEGMENT OF A HEAD

HG-346.2 Maximum Pitch of Firetubes Used as Stays.

The pitch of firetubes used as stays shall not exceed 15 times the diameter of the tube.

HG-346.3 Dimensions and Welding of Firetubes Used as Stays

(a) The dimensions of firetubes used as stays shall meet the requirements of HG-312.2 and HG-342.

(b) Firetubes welded to the tubesheet and used as stays shall meet the requirements of HW-713.

HG-350 LIGAMENTS

HG-350.1 General.

The rules in this paragraph apply to groups of openings which form a definite pattern in cylindrical pressure parts and to openings spaced not more than two diameters center to center.

(a) The symbols defined below are used in the formulas of this paragraph:

p = longitudinal pitch of adjacent openings, in.

p' = diagonal pitch of adjacent openings, in.

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:13 2003)

p'	= transverse pitch of adjacent openings, in.
p_1	= pitch between corresponding openings in a series of symmetrical groups of openings, in.
d	= diameter of openings, in.
n	= number of openings in length p_1
E	= efficiency of ligament

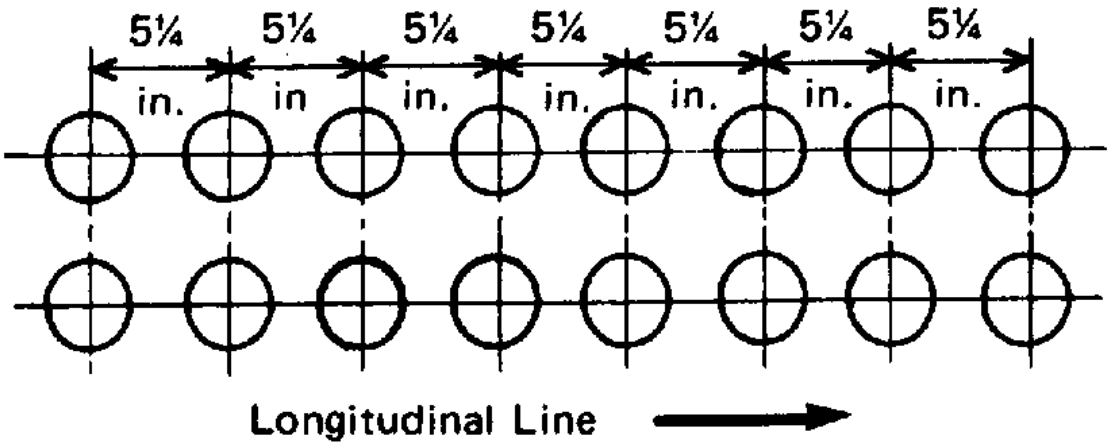


FIG. HG-350.1 EXAMPLE OF TUBE SPACING WITH PITCH OF HOLES EQUAL IN EVERY ROW

FIG. HG-350.1 EXAMPLE OF TUBE SPACING WITH PITCH OF HOLES EQUAL IN EVERY ROW

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:13 2003)

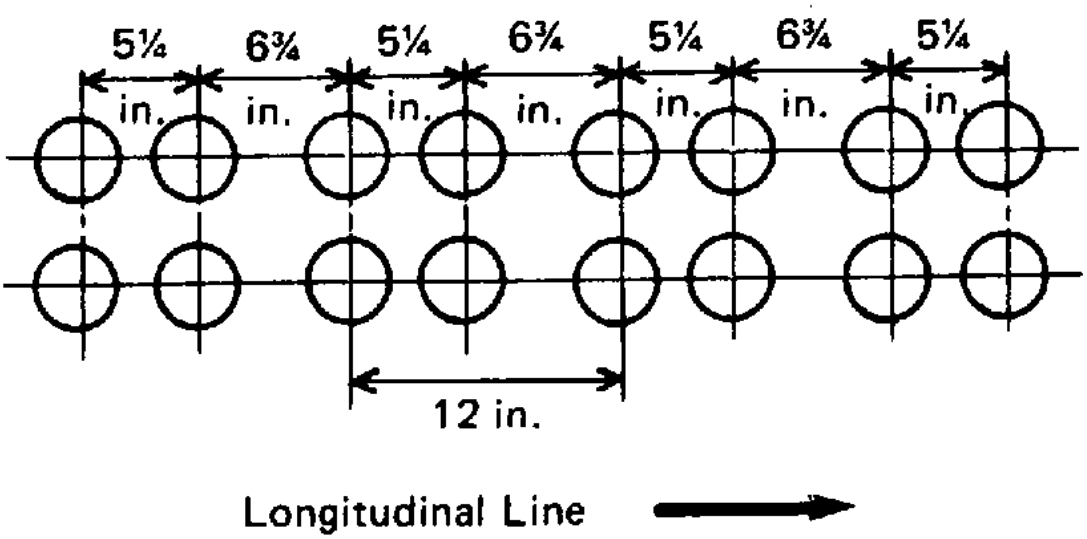


FIG. HG-350.2 EXAMPLE OF TUBE SPACING WITH PITCH OF HOLES UNEQUAL IN EVERY SECOND ROW

FIG. HG-350.2 EXAMPLE OF TUBE SPACING WITH PITCH OF HOLES UNEQUAL IN EVERY SECOND ROW

(b) The efficiency of ligaments between openings is defined as the ratio of the average strength of the material between adjacent openings to the average strength of the plate away from the openings. Where a series of openings has more than one efficiency, the lowest value shall govern.

(c) The pitch shall be measured on the flat plate before rolling.

HG-350.2 Openings Parallel to Shell Axis.

The ligament efficiency shall be determined as follows.

(a) For equal pitch of openings in every row (see Fig. HG-350.1), the efficiency is given by the formula:

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:13 2003)

$$E = \frac{p - d}{p} \qquad (1)$$

(1)

(b) For unequal pitch in symmetrical groups of openings (as in Figs. HG-350.2 and HG-350.3), the efficiency is given by the formula:

$$E = \frac{p_1 - nd}{p_1} \qquad (2)$$

(2)

(c) For openings which do not fall into symmetrical groups, the efficiency shall be the value calculated as follows for the group of openings which gives the lowest efficiency:

(1) the efficiency given by Formula (2) above using p_1 equal to the inside diameter of the shell or 60 in. (1520 mm), whichever is less;

(2) 1.25 times the efficiency given by Formula (2) above using p_1 equal to the inside radius of the shell or 30 in. (760 mm), whichever is less.

HG-350.3 Openings Transverse to Shell Axis.

The ligament efficiency of openings spaced at right angles to the axis of the shell is equal to two times the efficiency of similarly spaced holes parallel to the shell axis as calculated in accordance with the rules in HG-350.2.

HG-350.4 Holes Along a Diagonal.

The ligament efficiency shall be determined as follows.

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:14 2003)

(a) The efficiency of openings which are equally spaced along diagonal lines (see Fig. HG-350.4) is given by the formula:

$$E = \frac{p' - d}{p' F} \qquad (3)$$

(3)

where F is a factor from Fig. HG-321 for the angle which the diagonal makes with a plane through the longitudinal axis of the boiler.

(b) The ligament efficiency of openings which are unequally spaced along diagonal lines shall be determined as in HG-350.1(c) except that Formula (3) shall be used in place of Formula (2).

HG-360 REQUIREMENTS FOR TUBE HOLES AND TUBE ATTACHMENTS

HG-360.1 Tube Holes and Ends

(a) Tube holes shall be drilled full size from the solid plate, or they may be punched $^1/_2$ in. (13 mm) smaller in diameter than full size when the plate thickness exceeds $^3/_8$ in. (10 mm) and $^1/_8$ in. (3.2 mm) smaller in diameter than full size when the plate thickness is $^3/_8$ in. (10 mm) or less, and then drilled, reamed, or finished full size with rotating cutters. Tube holes may be counterbored where the metal is thicker than that required to get a proper bearing by expanding, so as to form narrow seats into which the tube ends

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:14 2003)

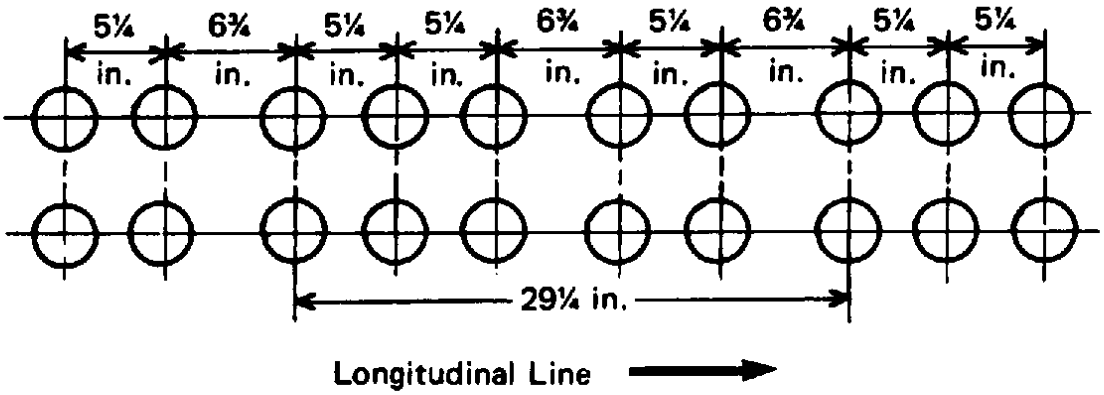


FIG. HG-350.3 EXAMPLE OF TUBE SPACING WITH PITCH OF HOLES VARYING IN EVERY SECOND AND THIRD ROW

FIG. HG-350.3 EXAMPLE OF TUBE SPACING WITH PITCH OF HOLES VARYING IN EVERY SECOND AND THIRD ROW

can properly expand, provided there is space available to permit a proper amount of flare of the tube end.

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:14 2003)

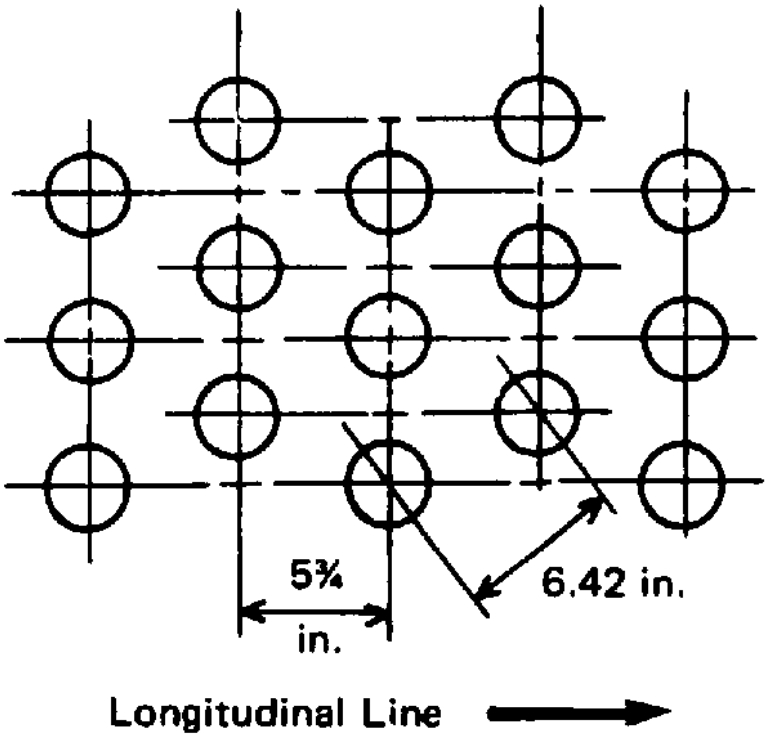


FIG. HG-350.4 EXAMPLE OF TUBE SPACING WITH TUBE HOLES ON DIAGONAL LINES

FIG. HG-350.4 EXAMPLE OF TUBE SPACING WITH TUBE HOLES ON DIAGONAL LINES

(b) The sharp edges of tube holes shall be taken off on both sides of the plate with a file or other tool.

HG-360.2 Requirements for Tube Attachment.

Ends of firetubes may be expanded, expanded and flared, expanded and beaded, expanded and welded, or welded. Firetubes attached by expanding and welding or welding shall comply with HW-713. Firetubes attached by expanding and flaring or expanding shall comply with the following:

(a) If the firetube ends are in contact with primary furnace gases, the tubes shall extend beyond the tubesheet a distance not less than the tube thickness or $^{1}/_{8}$ in. (3.2 mm), whichever is greater, but not more than $^{1}/_{4}$ in. (6 mm) or the tube thickness, whichever is greater.

(b) If the firetube ends are not in contact with primary furnace gases, the tubes shall extend beyond the tubesheet a distance not less than the tube thickness or $^{1}/_{8}$ in. (3.2 mm), whichever is greater, but not more than $^{3}/_{8}$ in. (10 mm) or the tube thickness, whichever is greater.

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:14 2003)

(c) Watertubes may be attached by expanding, expanding and flaring, expanding and beading, expanding and welding, or welding. Where attached by other than expanding and beading, the tubes shall extend beyond the tubesheet a distance not less than $^{1}/_{4}$ in. (6 mm) nor more than $^{1}/_{2}$ in. (13 mm). Watertubes not exceeding 2 in. (51 mm) O.D. with welded tapered ferrules, when not expanded, expanded and flared, expanded and beaded, expanded and welded, or welded, may be attached mechanically. When such method of attachment is used, the tapered ferrule shall completely penetrate the head or drum and be mechanically clamped to the header or drum with bolting of no less than $^{3}/_{8}$ in. (10 mm) diameter, and the tubing shall not be used to support the pressure vessel.

(d) Where firetubes or watertubes are attached by welding, the tube holes may be drilled, flame cut, or punched. The tube holes may be punched full size provided the thickness of the tubesheet does not exceed $^{5}/_{16}$ in. (8 mm). The diameter of the tube hole in any case shall not be more than $^{1}/_{32}$ in. (0.8 mm) greater than the outside diameter of the tube. Where tubes are attached by fillet welding from one side only to a tubesheet exceeding $^{5}/_{16}$ in. (8 mm) thickness, the tubes shall be expanded before being welded. Tubes may be attached by welding as provided in HW-713.

(e) Watertubes in hot water boilers may be installed into headers with the use of O-ring seals in lieu of expanding, welding, or brazing, provided the following conditions are met.

(1) The watertube shall not exceed 2 in. (51 mm) outside diameter, nor 12 ft (3.7 m) in length.

(2) The tube hole diameter shall be not more than $^{1}/_{32}$ in. (0.8 mm) larger than the outside diameter of the tube.

(3) The tube hole shall be recessed to accommodate the O-ring.

(4) The cross section of the O-ring shall have a diameter not less than $^{1}/_{8}$ in. (3.2 mm) nor greater than $^{1}/_{4}$ in. (6 mm).

(5) The outside diameter of the O-ring shall not be less than the outside diameter of the recessed groove.

(6) The inside diameter of the O-ring shall be at least $^{1}/_{32}$ in. (0.8 mm) smaller than the outside diameter of the tube.

(7) The O-ring material shall be ASTM D 2000 M3GE 705 A19 silicon.

(8) The O-ring shall be located or shielded from the combustion chamber in such a manner that the temperature of the O-ring shall not exceed 450°F (232°C).

(9) The headers shall be held together by stay rods adequately designed to carry the end loading and prevent the headers from spreading apart. The design stress of the stay rods shall not exceed that permitted in the appropriate stress table in Section IV.

(10) Means shall be provided to prevent the tubes from losing contact with the O-ring seal due to tube movement without loosening the stay rods.

(11) If the tube length exceeds 6 ft (1.8 m), the tubes shall be supported at their midlength.

HG-370 EXTERNAL PIPING CONNECTIONS

HG-370.1 Threaded Connections.

Pipe connections, if threaded, shall be tapped into material having a

minimum thickness as specified in Table HG-370, except that when a curved surface is to be tapped the minimum thickness shall be sufficient to permit at least four full threads to be engaged.

[SEC IV PT HG A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:15 2003)

TABLE HG-370
MINIMUM THICKNESS OF MATERIAL FOR THREADED CONNECTIONS TO BOILERS

Size of Pipe Connection, in.	Minimum Thickness of Material Required, in.
Under 3/4	1/4
3/4 to 1, incl.	5/16
1 1/4 to 2 1/2, incl.	7/16
3 to 3 1/2, incl.	5/8
4 to 5, incl.	7/8
6 to 8, incl.	1
9 to 12, incl.	1 1/4

TABLE HG-370 MINIMUM THICKNESS OF MATERIAL FOR THREADED CONNECTION TO BOILERS

HG-370.2 Flanged Connections

(a) It is recommended that dimensional requirements of bolted flange connections to external piping conform to ANSI B16.5, Steel Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings. Such flanges may be used for pressure-temperature ratings in accordance with the Standard.

(b) Steel flanges which do not conform to ANSI B16.5 shall be designed in accordance with the rules in Appendix II of Section VIII, Division 1, for the design pressure and temperature conditions. The outside diameter and bolting shall conform to a standard approved by ANSI.

HG-400 PRESSURE RELIEVING VALVE REQUIREMENTS

HG-400.1

[SEC IV PT HG A-4] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:15 2003)

(a) Each steam boiler shall have one or more officially rated safety valves that are identified with the V or HV Symbol of the spring pop type adjusted and sealed to discharge at a pressure not to exceed 15 psi (103 kPa).

(b) No safety valve for a steam boiler shall be smaller than NPS $^1/_2$ (DN 15). No safety valve shall be larger than NPS $4^1/_2$ (DN 115). The inlet opening shall have an inside diameter equal to, or greater than, the seat diameter.

(c) The minimum relieving capacity of valve or valves shall be governed by the capacity marking on the boiler called for in HG-530.

(d) The minimum valve capacity in pounds per hour shall be the greater of that determined by dividing the maximum Btu output at the boiler nozzle obtained by the firing of any fuel for which the unit is installed by 1000, or shall be determined on the basis of the pounds of steam generated per hour per square foot of boiler heating surface as given in Table HG-400.1. For cast iron boilers constructed to the requirements of Part HC, the minimum valve capacity shall be determined by the maximum output method. In many cases a greater relieving capacity of valves will have to be provided than the minimum specified by these rules. In every case, the requirement of HG-400.1(e) shall be met.

(e) The safety valve capacity for each steam boiler shall be such that with the fuel burning equipment installed, and operated at maximum capacity, the pressure cannot rise more than 5 psi (35 kPa) above the maximum allowable working pressure.

(f) When operating conditions are changed, or additional boiler heating surface is installed, the valve capacity shall be increased, if necessary, to meet the new conditions and be in accordance with HG-400.1(e). The additional valves required, on account of changed conditions, may be installed on the outlet piping provided there is no intervening valve.

TABLE HG-400.1
MINIMUM POUNDS OF STEAM PER HOUR PER SQUARE FOOT OF HEATING SURFACE

Boiler Heating Surface	Firetube Boilers	Watertube Boilers
Hand fired	5	6
Stoker fired	7	8
Oil, gas, or pulverized fuel fired	8	10
Waterwall heating surface:		
Hand fired	8	8
Stoker fired	10	12
Oil, gas, or pulverized fuel fired	14	16

GENERAL NOTES:

(a) When a boiler is fired only by a gas having a heat value not in excess of 200 Btu/cu ft, the minimum safety valves or safety relief valve relieving capacity may be based on the values given for hand fired boilers above.

(b) The minimum safety valve or safety relief valve relieving capacity for electric boilers shall be $3^1/_2$ lb/hr/kw input.

(c) For heating surface determination, see HG-403.

[SEC IV PT HG A-4] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:15 2003)

TABLE HG-400.1 MINIMUM POUNDS OF STEAM PER HOUR PER SQUARE FOOT OF HEATING SURFACE

HG-400.2 Safety Relief Valve Requirements for Hot Water Boilers

(a) Each hot water heating or supply boiler shall have at least one officially rated safety relief valve, of the automatic reseating type, identified with the V or HV Symbol, and set to relieve at or below the maximum allowable working pressure of the boiler.

(b) Hot water heating or supply boilers limited to a water temperature not in excess of 210°F (99°C) may have, in lieu of the valve(s) specified in (a) above, one or more officially rated temperature and pressure safety relief valves of the automatic reseating type identified with the HV symbol, and set to relieve at

or below the maximum allowable working pressure of the boiler.

(c) When more than one safety relief valve is used on either hot water heating or hot water supply boilers, the additional valves shall be officially rated and may have a set pressure within a range not to exceed 6 psi (42 kPa) above the maximum allowable working pressure of the boiler up to and including 60 psi (414 kPa), and 5% for those having a maximum allowable working pressure exceeding 60 psi (414 kPa).

(d) No safety relief valve shall be smaller than NPS $^{3}/_{4}$ (DN 20) nor larger than NPS $4^{1}/_{2}$ (DN 115) except that boilers having a heat input not greater than 15,000 Btu/hr (4.4 kW) may be equipped with a rated safety relief valve of NPS $^{1}/_{2}$ (DN 15).

(e) The required steam relieving capacity, in pounds per hour, of the pressure relieving device or devices on a boiler shall be the greater of that determined by dividing the maximum output in Btu at the boiler nozzle obtained by the firing of any fuel for which the unit is installed by 1000, or shall be determined on the basis of pounds of steam generated per hour per square foot of boiler heating surface as given in Table HG-400.1. For cast iron boilers constructed to the requirements of Part HC, the minimum valve capacity shall be determined by the maximum output method. In many cases a greater relieving capacity of valves will have to be provided than the minimum specified by these rules. In every case, the requirements of HG-400.2(g) shall be met.

(f) When operating conditions are changed, or additional boiler heating surface is installed, the valve capacity shall be increased, if necessary, to meet the new conditions and shall be in accordance with HG-400.2(g). The additional valves required, on account of changed conditions, may be installed on the outlet piping provided there is no intervening valve.

(g) Safety relief valve capacity for each boiler with a single safety relief valve shall be such that, with the fuel burning equipment installed and operated at maximum capacity, the pressure cannot rise more than 10% above the maximum allowable working pressure. When more than one safety relief valve is used, the overpressure shall be limited to 10% above the set pressure of the highest set valve allowed by HG-400.2(a).

HG-400.3 Safety and Safety Relief Valves for Tanks and Heat Exchangers

(a) Steam to Hot Water Supply. When a hot water supply is heated indirectly by steam in a coil or pipe within the service limitations set forth in HG-101, the pressure of the steam used shall not exceed the safe working pressure of the hot water tank, and a safety relief valve at least NPS 1 (DN 25), set to relieve at or below the maximum allowable working pressure of the tank, shall be applied on the tank.

(b) High Temperature Water to Water Heat Exchanger.[1] When high temperature water is circulated through the coils or tubes of a heat exchanger to warm water for space heating or hot water supply, within the service limitations set forth in HG-101, the heat exchanger shall be equipped with one or more officially rated safety relief valves that are identified with the V or HV Symbol, set to relieve at or below the maximum allowable working pressure of the heat exchanger, and of sufficient rated capacity to prevent the heat exchanger pressure from rising more than 10% above the maximum allowable working pressure of the vessel.

(c) High Temperature Water to Steam Heat Exchanger.[1] When high temperature water is circulated through the coils or tubes of a heat exchanger to generate low pressure steam, within the service limitations set forth in HG-101, the heat exchanger shall be equipped with one or more officially rated safety valves that are identified with the V or HV Symbol, set

[SEC IV PT HG A-4] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:15 2003)

to relieve at a pressure not to exceed 15 psi (103 kPa), and of sufficient rated capacity to prevent the heat exchanger pressure from rising more than 5 psi (35 kPa) above the maximum allowable working pressure of the vessel. For heat exchangers requiring steam pressures greater than 15 psi (103 kPa), refer to Section I or Section VIII, Division 1.

HG-401 MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS FOR SAFETY AND SAFETY RELIEF VALVES

HG-401.1 Mechanical Requirements

(a) The inlet opening shall have an inside diameter approximately equal to, or greater than, the seat diameter. In no case shall the maximum opening through any part of the valve be less than $^1/_4$ in. (6 mm) in diameter or its equivalent area.

(b) Safety relief valves officially rated as to capacity shall have pop action when tested by steam.

(c) O-rings or other packing devices when used on the stems of safety relief valves shall be so arranged as not to affect their operation or capacity.

(d) The design shall incorporate guiding arrangements necessary to insure consistent operation and tightness. Excessive lengths of guiding surfaces should be avoided.

1 Suggested installation practices for the secondary side of heat exchangers.

Bottom guided designs are not permitted on safety relief valves.

(e) Safety valves shall have a controlled blowdown of 2 psi to 4 psi (13.8 kPa to 28 kPa) and this blowdown need not be adjustable.

(f) Safety valves shall be spring loaded. The spring shall be designed so that the full lift spring compression shall be no greater than 80% of the nominal solid deflection. The permanent set of the spring (defined as the difference between the free height and height measured 10 min after the spring has been compressed solid three additional times after presetting at room temperature) shall not exceed 0.5% of the free height.

(g) There shall be a lifting device and a mechanical connection between the lifting device and the disk capable of lifting the disk from the seat a distance of at least $^1/_{16}$ in. (1.6 mm) with no pressure on the boiler.

(h) A body drain below seat level shall be provided by the Manufacturer for all safety valves and safety relief valves, except that the body drain may be omitted when the valve seat is above the bottom of the inside diameter of the discharge piping. For valves exceeding NPS $2^1/_2$ (DN 65) the drain hole or holes shall be tapped not less than NPS $^3/_8$ (DN 10). For valves NPS $2^1/_2$ (DN 65) or smaller, the drain hole shall not be less than $^1/_4$ in. (6 mm) in diameter. Body drain connections shall not be plugged during or after field installation. In safety relief valves of the diaphragm type, the space above the diaphragm shall be vented to prevent a buildup of pressure above the diaphragm. Safety relief valves of the diaphragm type shall be so designed that failure or deterioration of the diaphragm material will not impair the ability of the valve to relieve at the rated capacity.

(i) In the design of the body of the valve consideration shall be given to minimizing the effects of water deposits.

(j) Valves shall be provided with wrenching surfaces to allow for normal installation without damaging operating parts.

(k) The set pressure tolerances, plus or minus, of safety valves shall not exceed 2 psi (13.8 kPa), and for safety relief valves shall not exceed 3 psi (20.6 kPa) for pressures up to and including 60 psig (414 kPa) and 5% for pressures above 60 psig (414 kPa).

(l) Safety valves shall be arranged so that they cannot be reset to relieve at a higher pressure than the maximum allowable working pressure of the boiler.

HG-401.2 Material Selection

(a) Cast iron seats and disks are not permitted.

(b) Adjacent sliding surfaces such as guides and disks shall both be of corrosion resistant material.

[SEC IV PT HG A-4] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:16 2003)

(c) Springs of corrosion resistant material or having a corrosion resistant coating are required.

(d) Material for seats and disks should be such as to provide a reasonable degree of resistance to steam cutting.

(e) Material for valve bodies and bonnets or their corresponding metallic pressure containing parts shall be listed in Section II, except that in cases where a manufacturer desires to make use of materials other than those listed in Section II, he shall establish and maintain specifications requiring equivalent control of chemical and physical properties and quality.

(f) Synthetic disk inserts of O-ring or other types if used shall be compatible with the maximum design temperature established for the valve.

(g) No materials liable to fail due to deterioration or vulcanization when subjected to saturated steam temperature corresponding to capacity test pressure shall be used.

HG-401.3 Manufacture and Inspection

(a) A Manufacturer shall demonstrate to the satisfaction of an ASME designee that his manufacturing, production, and testing facilities and quality control procedures will insure close agreement between the performance of random production samples and the performance of those valves submitted for capacity certification.

(b) Manufacturing, inspection, and test operations including capacity are subject to inspections at any time by an ASME designee.

(c) A Manufacturer may be granted permission to apply the HV Code Symbol to production pressure relief valves capacity certified in accordance with HG-402.3 provided the following tests are successfully completed. This permission shall expire on the fifth anniversary of the date it is initially granted. The permission may be extended for 5 year periods if the following tests are successfully repeated within the 6 month period before expiration.

(1) Two sample production pressure relief valves of a size and capacity within the capability of an ASME accepted laboratory shall be selected by an ASME designee.

(2) Operational and capacity tests shall be conducted in the presense of an ASME designee at an ASME accepted laboratory. The valve Manufacturer shall be notified of the time of the test and may have representatives present to witness the test.

(3) Should any valve fail to relieve at or above its certified capacity or should it fail to meet performance requirements of this Section, the test shall be repeated at the rate of two replacement valves, selected in

accordance with HG-401.3(c)(1), for each valve that failed.

(4) Failure of any of the replacement valves to meet the capacity or the performance requirements of this Section shall be cause for revocation within 60 days of the authorization to use the Code Symbol on that particular type of valve. During this period, the Manufacturer shall demonstrate the cause of such deficiency and the action taken to guard against future occurence, and the requirements of HG-401.3(c) above shall apply.

(d) Safety valves shall be sealed in a manner to prevent the valve from being taken apart without breaking the seal. Safety relief valves shall be set and sealed so that they cannot be reset without breaking the seal.

HG-401.4 Manufacturer's Testing

(a) Every safety valve shall be tested to demonstrate its popping point, blowdown, and tightness. Every safety relief valve shall be tested to demonstrate its opening point and tightness. Safety valves shall be tested on steam or air and safety relief valves on water, steam, or air. When the blowdown is nonadjustable, the blowdown test may be performed on a sampling basis.

(b) A Manufacturer shall have a well-established program for the application, calibration, and maintenance of test gages.

(c) Testing time on safety valves shall be sufficient, depending on size and design, to insure that test results are repeatable and representative of field performance.

(d) Test fixtures and test drums shall be of adequate size and capacity to assure representative pop action and accuracy of

[SEC IV PT HG A-4] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:16 2003)

blowdown adjustment.

(e) A tightness test shall be conducted at maximum expected operating pressure, but not at a pressure exceeding the reseating pressure of the valve.

HG-401.5 Design Requirements.

At the time of the submission of valves for capacity certification, or testing in accordance with this Section, the ASME Designee has the authority to review the design for conformity with the requirements of this Section, and to reject or require modification of designs which do not conform, prior to capacity testing.

HG-402 DISCHARGE CAPACITIES OF SAFETY AND SAFETY RELIEF VALVES

HG-402.1 Valve Markings.

Each safety or safety relief valve shall be plainly marked with the required data by the Manufacturer in such a way that the markings will not be obliterated in service. The markings shall be stamped, etched, impressed, or cast on the valve or on a nameplate which shall be securely fastened to the valve. The markings shall include the following:

FIG. HG-402 OFFICIAL SYMBOL FOR STAMP TO DENOTE THE AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS' STANDARD

FIG. HG-402 OFFICIAL SYMBOL FOR STAMP TO DENOTE THE AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS' STANDARD

(a) the name or an acceptable abbreviation of the Manufacturer;

(b) Manufacturer's design or type number;

(c) NPS size _____ in. (the nominal pipe size of the valve inlet);

(d) set pressure _____ psi ;

[SEC IV PT HG A-4] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:16 2003)

(e) capacity _____ lb/hr, or capacity _____ Btu/hr in accordance with HG-402.3;

(f) year built or, alternatively, a coding may be marked on the valves such that the valve Manufacturer can identify the year the valve was assembled and tested;

(g) ASME Symbol as shown in Fig. HG-402.

HG-402.2 Authorization to Use ASME Stamp.

Each safety valve to which the Code Symbol (Fig. HG-402) is to be applied shall be produced by a Manufacturer and/or Assembler who is in possession of a valid Certificate of Authorization. (See HG-540.)

[98]
HG-402.3 Determination of Capacity to Be Stamped on Valves.

The Manufacturer of the valves that are to be stamped with the Code symbol shall submit valves for testing to a place where adequate equipment and personnel are available to conduct pressure and relieving-capacity tests which shall be made in the presence of and certified by an authorized observer. The place, personnel, and authorized observer shall be approved by the Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee. The valves shall be tested in one of the following three methods.

(a) Coefficient Method. Tests shall be made to determine the lift, popping, and blowdown pressures, and the capacity of at least three valves each of three representative sizes (a total of nine valves). Each valve of a given size shall be set at a different pressure. However, safety valves for steam boilers shall have

all nine valves set at 15 psig (103 kPa). A coefficient shall be established for each test as follows:

$$K_D = \frac{\text{Actual steam flow}}{\text{Theoretical steam flow}} = \text{Coefficient of discharge}$$

The average of the coefficients K_D of the nine tests required shall be multiplied by 0.90, and this product shall be taken as the coefficient K of that design. The stamped capacity for all sizes and pressures shall not exceed the value determined from the following formulas:

For 45 deg. seat,

$$W = 51.5\,\pi DLP \times 0.707K$$

For flat seat,

$$W = 51.5\,\pi DLPK$$

For nozzle,

$$W = 51.5\,APK$$

where

W = weight of steam/hr, lb

[SEC IV PT HG A-4] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:16 2003)

D	= seat diameter, in.
L	= lift, in.
P	= (1.10 × set pressure + 14.7) psia for hot water applications or = (5.0 psi + 15 psi set + 14.7) psia for steam boilers
K	= coefficient of discharge for the design
A	= nozzle-throat area, sq in.

NOTE: The maximum and minimum coefficient determined by the tests of a valve design shall not vary more than ±5% from the average. If one or more tests are outside the acceptable limits, one valve of the Manufacturer's choice shall be replaced with another valve of the same size and pressure setting or by a modification of the original valve. Following this test a new average coefficient shall be calculated, excluding the replaced valve test. If one or more tests are now outside the acceptable limits, as determined by the new average coefficient, a valve of the Manufacturer's choice must be replaced by two valves of the same size and pressure as the rejected valve. A new average coefficient, including the replacement valves, shall be calculated. If any valve, excluding the two replaced valves, now falls outside the acceptable limits, the tests shall be considered unsatisfactory.

(b) Slope Method. If a Manufacturer wishes to apply the Code Symbol to a design of pressure relief valves, four valves of each combination of pipe and orifice size shall be tested. These four valves shall be set at pressures that cover the approximate range of pressures for which the valve will be used, or that cover the range available at the certified test facility that shall conduct the tests. The capacities shall be based on these four tests as follows.

(1) The slope (W/P) of the actual measured capacity versus the flow pressure for each test point shall be calculated and averaged:

$$\text{slope} = W/P = \frac{\text{measured capacity}}{\text{absolute flow pressure, psia}}$$

All values derived from the testing must fall within ±5% of the average value:

$$\text{minimum slope} = 0.95 \times \text{average slope}$$

$$\text{maximum slope} = 1.05 \times \text{average slope}$$

If the values derived from the testing do not fall between the minimum and maximum slope values, the Authorized Observer shall require that additional valves be tested at the rate of two for each valve beyond the maximum and minimum values with a limit of four additional valves.

(2) The relieving capacity to be stamped on the valve shall not exceed 90% of the average slope times the absolute accumulation pressure:

[SEC IV PT HG A-4] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:17 2003)

rated slope = 0.90 × average slope

stamped capacity ≤ rated slope × (1.10 × set pressure + 14.7) psia for hot water applications

(c) Three-Valve Method. If a Manufacturer wishes to apply the Code Symbol to steam safety valves or safety relief valves of one or more sizes of a design set at one pressure, he shall submit three valves of each size of each design set at one pressure for testing and the stamped capacity of each size shall not exceed 90% of the average capacity of the three valves tested.

NOTE: The discharge capacity as determined by the test of each valve tested shall not vary by more than ±5% of the average capacity of the three valves tested. If one of the three valve tests falls outside of the limits, it may be replaced by two valves and a new average calculated based on all four valves, excluding the replaced valve.
[98]

HG-402.4 Pressures at Which Capacity Tests Shall Be Conducted.

Safety valves for steam boilers shall be tested for capacity at 5 psi (35 kPa) over the set pressure for which the valve is set to operate. Capacity certification tests of safety relief valves for hot water

heating and hot water supply boilers shall be conducted at 110% of the pressure for which the valve is set to operate.

HG-402.5 Opening Tests of Temperature and Pressure Safety Relief Valves.

For the purpose of determining the set (opening) pressure, the test medium shall be room temperature water. The actual set pressure is defined as the pressure at the valve inlet when the flow rate through the valve is 40 cc/min. Capacity tests shall be conducted with steam (see HG-402.7) at a pressure 10% above the actual water set pressure. For production capacity check tests, the rated capacity shall be based on the actual water set pressure.

HG-402.6 Capacity Tests of Temperature and Pressure Safety Relief Valves.

For the purpose of determining the capacity of temperature and pressure safety relief valves, dummy elements of the same size and shape as the regularly applied thermal element shall be substituted and the relieving capacity shall be based on the pressure element only. Valves selected to meet the requirements of production testing, HG-401.3, shall have their temperature elements deactivated by the Manufacturer prior to or at the time of capacity testing.

HG-402.7 Fluid Medium for Capacity Tests.

The tests shall be made with dry saturated steam. For test purposes the limits of 98% minimum quality and 20°F (11°C) maximum superheat shall apply. Correction from within these limits may be made to the dry saturated condition. The relieving capacity shall be measured by condensing the steam or with a calibrated steam flowmeter.

(a) To determine the discharge capacity of safety relief valves in terms of Btu, the relieving capacity in pounds for steam per hour *W* is multiplied by 1000.

HG-402.8 Where and by Whom Capacity Tests Shall Be Conducted

(a) Tests shall be conducted at a place where the testing facilities, methods, procedures, and person supervising the tests (Authorized Observer) meet the applicable requirements of ASME PTC 25-1994. The tests shall be made under the supervision of and certified by an Authorized Observer. The testing facilities, methods, procedures, and qualifications of the Authorized Observer shall be subject to the acceptance of ASME on recommendation of an ASME Designee. Acceptance of the testing facility is subject to review within each 5 year period.

(b) Capacity test data reports for each valve model, type, and size, signed by the Manufacturer and the Authorized Observer witnessing the tests, shall be submitted to the ASME Designee for review and acceptance.[2]

NOTE: When changes are made in the design, capacity certification tests shall be repeated.

[SEC IV PT HG A-4] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:17 2003)

HG-402.9 Test Record Data Sheet.

A data sheet for each valve shall be filled out and signed by the authorized observer witnessing the test. Such data sheet will be the manufacturer's authority to build and stamp valves of corresponding design and construction. When changes are made in the design of a safety or safety relief valve in such a manner as to affect the flow path, lift, or performance characteristics of the valve, new tests in accordance with this Section shall be performed.

NOTE: See HG-512 for safety and safety relief valve accumulation test requirements. See HG-701 for safety and safety relief valve installation requirements.

HG-403 HEATING SURFACE

The heating surface shall be computed as follows.

(a) Heating surface, as part of a circulating system in contact on one side with water or wet steam being heated and on the other side with gas or refractory being cooled, shall be measured on the side receiving heat.

(b) Boiler heating surface and other equivalent surface outside the furnace shall be measured circumferentially plus any extended surface.

(c) Waterwall heating surface and other equivalent surface within the furnace shall be measured as the projected tube area (diameter × length) plus any extended surface on the furnace side. In computing the heating surface for this purpose, only the tubes, fireboxes, shells, tubesheets, and the projected area of headers need be considered, except that for vertical firetube steam boilers, only that portion of the tube surface up to the middle of the gage glass is to be computed.

2 Valve capacities are published in "Pressure Relief Device Certifications." This publication may be obtained from The National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors, 1055 Crupper Avenue, Columbus, OH 43229.

HG-405 TEMPERATURE AND PRESSURE SAFETY RELIEF VALVES

The thermal sensing elements for temperature and pressure safety relief valves shall be so designed and constructed that they will not fail in any manner which could obstruct flow passages or reduce capacities of the valves when the elements are subjected to saturated

steam temperature corresponding to capacity test pressure. Temperature and pressure safety relief valves incorporating these elements shall comply with a nationally recognized standard.[3]

3 An example of a nationally recognized standard is ANSI Z21.22, Relief Valves and Automatic Gas Shutoff Devices for Hot Water Supply Systems.

HG-500 PROOF TESTS TO ESTABLISH DESIGN PRESSURE

HG-501 GENERAL

(a) The design pressure for pressure parts of boilers for which the strength cannot be computed with a satisfactory assurance of accuracy shall be established in accordance with the requirements of this paragraph, using one of the test procedures applicable to the type of loading and to the material used in its construction.

(b) The tests in these paragraphs may be used only for the purpose of establishing the design pressure of those elements or component parts for which the thickness cannot be determined by means of the design rules given in the Code. The design

[SEC IV PT HG A-5] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:17 2003)

pressure of all other elements or component parts shall not be greater than that determined by means of the applicable design rules.

HG-501.1 Types of Tests.

Provision is made for two types of tests for determining the internal design pressure:

(a) tests based on yielding of the part to be tested; these tests are limited to materials with a ratio of minimum specified yield to minimum specified ultimate strength of 0.625 or less. If a proof tested part shows no evidence of permanent yielding per HG-502.1 and HG-502.2, it may be Code stamped.

(b) tests based on bursting of the part. The part proof tested under the burst test provisions shall not be Code stamped.

HG-501.2 Retests.

A retest shall be allowed on a duplicate pressure part if errors or irregularities are obvious in the test results.

HG-501.3 Precautions.

Safety of testing personnel should be given serious consideration when conducting proof tests, and particular care should be taken during the conducting of bursting tests per HG-502.3.

HG-501.4 Pressure Application

(a) Previously Applied. The pressure parts for which the design pressure is to be established shall not previously have been subjected to a pressure greater than $1^{1}/_{2}$ times the desired or anticipated design pressure.

(b) Application. In the procedures given in HG-502.1 for the strain measurement test and HG-502.2 for the displacement measurement test, the hydrostatic pressure in the pressure part shall be increased gradually until approximately one-half the anticipated design pressure is reached. Thereafter, the test pressure shall be increased in steps of approximately one-tenth or less of the anticipated design pressure until the pressure required by the test procedure is reached. The pressure shall be held stationary at the end of each increment for a sufficient time to allow the observations required by the test procedure to be made and shall be released to zero to permit determination of any permanent strain or displacement after any pressure increment that indicates an increase in strain or displacement over the previous equal pressure increment.

HG-501.5 Critical Areas.

As a check that the measurements are being taken on the most critical areas, the Inspector may require a lime wash or other brittle coating to be applied on all areas of probable high stress concentrations in the test procedures given in HG-502.1 and HG-502.2. The surfaces shall be suitably clean before the coating is applied in order to obtain satisfactory adhesion. The technique shall be suited to the coating material.

NOTE: Strains should be measured as they apply to membrane stresses. In regard to bending stresses it is recognized that high localized and secondary stresses may exist in pressure parts designed and fabricated in accordance with these rules. Insofar as practical, design rules for details have been written to hold such stresses at a safe level consistent with experience.

HG-501.6 Yield Strength and Tensile Strength.

For proof tests based on yielding, HG-502.1 and HG-502.2, the yield strength (or yield point for those materials which exhibit that type of yield behavior

indicated by a "sharp-kneed" portion of the stress-strain diagram) of the material in the part tested, shall be determined in accordance with the method prescribed in the applicable material specification and as described in ASTM E 8, Tension Testing of Metallic Materials. For proof tests based on bursting, HG-502.3, the tensile strength instead of the yield strength of the material in the part tested shall be similarly determined.

[SEC IV PT HG A-5] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:17 2003)

(a) Yield or tensile strength so determined shall be the average from three or four specimens cut from the part tested after the test is completed. The specimens shall be cut from a location where the stress during the test has not exceeded the yield strength. The specimens shall not be oxygen cut because this might affect the strength of the material. If yield or tensile strength is not determined by test specimens from the pressure part tested, alternative methods are given in HG-502.1, HG-502.2, and HG-502.3 for evaluation of proof test results to establish the design pressure.

(b) When excess stock from the same piece of wrought material is available the test specimens may be cut from this excess stock. The specimens shall not be removed by flame cutting or any other method involving sufficient heat to affect the properties of the specimen.

HG-502 PROCEDURE

HG-502.1 Strain Measurement Test

(a) Subject to limitations of HG-501.1(a), this procedure may be used for pressure parts under internal pressure, constructed of any material permitted to be used under the rules of Section IV. Strains shall be measured in the direction of the maximum stress at the most highly stressed parts (see HG-501.5) by means of strain gages of any type capable of indicating strains to 0.00005 in./in. (0.005%). Pressure shall be applied as provided in HG-501.4(b).

(b) After each increment of pressure has been applied, readings of the strain gages and the hydrostatic pressure shall be taken and recorded. The pressure shall be released and any permanent strain at each gage shall be determined after any pressure increment that indicates an increase in strain for this increment over the previous equal pressure increment. Only one application of each increment of pressure is required.

(c) Two curves of strain against test pressure shall be plotted for each gage line as the test progresses, one showing the strain under pressure and one showing the permanent strain when the pressure is removed. The test may be discontinued when the test pressure reaches the value H which will, by the formula, justify the desired working pressure, but shall not exceed the pressure at which the plotted points for the most highly strained gage line reaches the value given below for the material used:

(1) 0.2% permanent strain for carbon, low alloy, and high alloy steels;

(2) 0.5% strain under pressure for copper-base alloys.

(d) The design pressure P, psi, for parts tested under this paragraph shall be computed by one of the following formulas:

(1) if the average yield strength is determined by HG-501.6,

$$P = 0.5H \frac{Y_s}{Y_a}$$

(2) if the actual average yield strength is not determined by test specimens,

$$P = 0.4H$$

where

H = hydrostatic test pressure, psi, at which the test was stopped in accordance with HG-502.1(c)

Y_s = specified minimum yield strength

Y_a = actual average yield strength from test specimens

HG-502.2 Displacement Measurement Test

(a) Subject to the limitations of HG-501.1(a), this procedure may be used only for pressure parts under internal pressure, constructed of materials having a definitely determinable yield point. Displacement shall be measured at the most highly stressed parts (see HG-501.5) by means of measuring devices of any type capable of measuring to 0.001 in. (0.02 mm). This displacement may be measured between two diametrically opposed reference points in a symmetrical structure, or between a reference point and a fixed base point. Pressure shall be applied as provided in HG-501.4(b).

(b) After each increment of pressure has been applied, readings of the displacement and the hydrostatic pressure shall be taken and recorded. The pressure shall be released and any permanent displacement shall be determined after any pressure increment that indicates an increase in measured displacement for this increment over the previous equal pressure increment. Only one application of each increment is required. Care must be taken to insure that the readings represent only displacements of the parts on which measurements are being made and do not include any slip of the measuring

devices or any movement of the fixed base points or of the pressure part as a whole.

(c) Two curves of displacement against test pressure shall be plotted for each reference point as the test progresses, one showing the displacement under pressure, and one showing the permanent displacement when the pressure is removed. The application of pressure shall be stopped when it is evident that the curve through the points representing displacement under pressure has deviated from a straight line.

(d) The pressure coincident with the proportional limit of the material shall be determined by noting the pressure at which the curve representing displacement under pressure deviates from a straight line. The pressure at the proportional limit may be checked from the curve of permanent displacement by locating the point where the permanent displacement begins to increase regularly with further increases in pressure. Permanent deformation at the beginning of the curve that results from the equalization of stresses and irregularities in the material may be disregarded.

The design pressure P, psi, at test temperature for parts tested under this paragraph shall be computed by one of the following formulas.

(1) If the average yield strength is determined by HG-501.6,

$$P = 0.5H \frac{Y_s}{Y_a}$$

[SEC IV PT HG A-5] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:17 2003)

(2) In order to eliminate the necessity of cutting tensile specimens and determining the actual yield strength of the material under test, one of the following formulas may be used to determine the design pressure:

(a) for carbon steel, meeting an acceptable Code specification, with a specified minimum tensile strength of not over 70,000 psi (481 MPa),

$$P = 0.5H\left(\frac{S}{S + 5000}\right) \qquad \text{(2a)}$$

(2a)

(b) for any acceptable material listed in Section IV,

$$P = 0.4H \qquad \text{(2b)}$$

where

H	= hydrostatic test pressure coincident with the proportional limit of the weakest element of the component part tested, psi
Y_s	= specified minimum yield strength, psi
Y_a	= actual average yield strength from test specimens, psi
S	= specified minimum tensile strength, psi

(e) When Formula (2a) or (2b) is used, the material in the pressure part shall have had no appreciable cold working or other treatment that would tend to raise the yield strength above the normal.

HG-502.3 Bursting Tests

(a) This procedure may be used for pressure parts under internal pressure when constructed of any material permitted to be used under the rules of Section IV. The design pressure of any component part proof tested by this method shall be established by a hydrostatic test to failure by rupture of a full-size sample of such pressure part. As an alternative, the hydrostatic test may be stopped when the test pressure reaches a value that will, by the formula in (b) below, justify the design pressure.

(b) The design pressure *P*, psi, for parts tested under this paragraph shall be computed by the following formula:

[SEC IV PT HG A-5] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:18 2003)

$$P = \frac{B}{5} \times \frac{S}{S_a \text{ or } S_m}$$

where

B	= bursting test pressure, psi
S	= specified minimum tensile strength, psi
S_a	= average actual tensile strength of test specimens, psi
S_m	= maximum tensile strength of range of specification, psi

HG-502.4 Brittle Coating Test Procedure

(a) Subject to the limitations of HG-501.1(a), this procedure may be used only for boiler and boiler parts under internal pressure, constructed of materials having a definitely determinable yield point. The component parts that require proof testing shall be coated with a lime wash or other brittle coating in accordance with HG-501.5. Pressure shall be applied in accordance with HG-501.4. The parts being proof tested shall be examined between pressure increments for signs of yielding as evidenced by flaking of the brittle coating, or by the appearance of strain lines. The application of pressure shall be stopped at the first sign of yielding, or if desired, at some lower pressure.

(b) The design pressure P, psi, for parts tested under this paragraph shall be computed by one of the following formulas:

(1) if the average yield strength is determined in accordance with HG-501.6,

[SEC IV PT HG A-5] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:18 2003)

$$P = 0.5H \frac{Y_s}{Y_a}$$

(2) to eliminate the necessity of cutting tensile specimens and determining the actual yield strength of the material under test, one of the following formulas may be used to determine the design pressure:

(a) for carbon steel meeting an acceptable Code specification, with a specified minimum tensile strength of not over 70,000 psi (481 MPa),

$$P = 0.5H \left(\frac{S}{S + 5000} \right) \qquad \text{(2a)}$$

(2a)

(b) for any acceptable material listed in Section IV,

(2b)$P = 0.4H$

where

H	= hydrostatic test pressure at which the test was stopped, psi
Y_s	= specified minimum yield strength, psi
Y_a	= actual average yield strength from test specimens, psi
S	= specified minimum tensile strength, psi

(c) When Formula (2a) or (2b) is used, the material in the pressure part shall have had no appreciable cold working or other treatment that would tend to raise the yield strength above the normal.

HG-503 TESTS OF PARTS SUBJECT TO COLLAPSE

Parts of the boiler normally subject to collapse for which specified rules are not provided in this Section shall withstand without excessive deformation a hydrostatic test of not less than three times the desired design pressure.

[SEC IV PT HG A-5] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:18 2003)

HG-504 TESTS OF DUPLICATE PARTS

When the design pressure of a pressure part has been established by a proof test, duplicate parts of the same materials, design, and construction need not be proof tested but shall be given the standard hydrostatic test at $1^1/_2$ times the maximum allowable working pressure. The dimensions and minimum thickness of the structure to be tested should not vary materially from those actually used. A geometrically similar part may be qualified by a series of tests covering the complete size range of the pressure part.

HG-505 TEST GAGES

(a) An indicating gage shall be connected directly to the pressure part. If the indicating gage is not readily visible to the operator controlling the pressure applied, an additional indicating gage shall be provided where it will be visible to the operator throughout the duration of the test. For large pressure parts, it is recommended that a recording gage be used in addition to indicating gages.

(b) Dial indicating pressure gages used in testing shall be graduated over a range of about double the intended maximum test pressure, but in no case shall the range be less than $1^1/_2$ nor more than 4 times that pressure. Digital reading pressure gages having a wider range of pressure may be used provided the readings give the same or greater degree of accuracy as obtained with dial pressure gages.

(c) All gages used in proof testing shall be calibrated against a standard deadweight tester or a calibrated master gage before the proof test is begun. Gages shall be recalibrated at any time that there is reason to believe they are in error.

HG-506 INSPECTION OF PROOF TESTS

Tests to establish the design pressure of pressure parts shall be witnessed and accepted by an Authorized Inspector.

HG-510 HYDROSTATIC TESTS

Cast iron boilers shall be tested in accordance with HC-410. All other boilers shall be subjected to a hydrostatic test pressure which falls between the following limits.

(a) The lower limit shall be the greater of 60 psi (414 kPa) or $1^1/_2$ times the maximum allowable working pressure to be stamped on the boiler.

(b) The upper limit shall be the greater of 60 psi (414 kPa) or $1^1/_2$ times the design pressure, except if a boiler made of material in Part HF has its maximum allowable working pressure limited by a Part HC cast iron part, the upper limit of the test pressure may be extended to $2^1/_2$ times the design pressure of the cast iron part or $1^1/_2$ times the design pressure of the next limiting part, whichever is less.

Close visual inspection is not required during this stage. The hydrostatic test pressure may then be reduced to the maximum allowable working pressure to be stamped on the boiler and maintained at this pressure while close visual inspection for leakage is made of all joints and connections. In making hydrostatic pressure tests, the pressure shall be under such control that the test pressure established shall not be exceeded by more than 10 psi (69 kPa).

HG-512 SAFETY AND SAFETY RELIEF VALVE ACCUMULATION TESTS

If the safety valve or safety relief valve capacity cannot be computed or if it is desirable to prove the computations, it may be checked in any one of the following ways and, if found insufficient, additional capacity shall be provided:

(a) by making an accumulation test, that is, by shutting off all discharge outlets from the boiler and forcing the fires to the maximum, the safety valve equipment shall be sufficient to prevent an excess pressure beyond that specified in HG-400.1(f) and HG-400.2(f);

(b) by measuring the maximum amount of fuel that can be burned, and computing the corresponding evaporative capacity upon the basis the heating value of the fuel. (See B-100, B-101, and B-102.)

[SEC IV PT HG A-5] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:18 2003)

HG-515 INSPECTION TESTS AND CERTIFICATION OF BOILERS

HG-515.1 General.

The inspection and testing of boilers to be marked with the Code H Symbol shall conform to the general requirements for inspection and testing in the following paragraphs and, in addition, to the specific requirements for inspection and tests given in Parts HF and HC.

HG-515.2 Manufacturer's Responsibility.

The Manufacturer has the responsibility of providing the Inspector with all specified information and of assuring that the quality control, the detailed examination, and the tests required by this Section are performed at the stages of construction necessary to permit them to be meaningful (see F-202.5). These responsibilities shall include, but not be limited to, providing or making available for review the following:

(a) the Certificate of Authorization from the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee authorizing the Manufacturer to fabricate the type of boiler being constructed (see HG-540);

(b) the drawings and design calculations for the boiler or part (see Part HG, Article 3; Part HF, Article 3; Subpart HW, Article 7; Subpart HB, Article 1300; and Part HC, Article 3);

(c) identification for all materials used in the fabrication of the boiler or part (see Part HG, Article 2; Subpart HW, Article 5; Subpart HB, Article 1100; and Part HC, Article 2);

(d) any Partial Data Reports when required (see HG-531);

(e) access for the Inspector to those parts of the plant concerned with the supply or fabrication of materials for the boiler; keeping the Inspector informed of the progress of the work so that the required inspections can be performed in the proper sequence (see HW-900, HB-1500, and F-202.5);

(f) evidence of examination of all material before and during fabrication to make certain it has the required thickness, has no unacceptable defects, is one of the acceptable materials permitted by this Section, and that traceability to the material identification has been maintained (see HG-201, HC-502.5, F-202.4, and HF-210);

(g) concurrence of the Inspector for correction of nonconformities in accordance with the Quality Control System (see F-202.6);

(h) evidence of qualification of the welding and/or brazing procedures before they are used in fabrication (see HW-610, HB-1001, HB-1202, and F-202.7);

(i) evidence of qualification of all welders, welding operators, or brazers before the welders, welding operators, or brazers are used in production work, except that performance qualification by radiography, in conformance with Section IX, QW-304 for welders or QW-305 for welding operators, may be performed within the first 3 ft (0.9 m) of the first production weld (see HW-401, HW-610, HB-1001, HB-1202, and F-202.7);

(j) records of examination of parts prior to joining to make certain that they have been properly fitted for welding or brazing and that the surfaces to be joined have been cleaned and the alignment tolerances are maintained (see Subpart HW, Article 8; Subpart HB, Article 14; and F-202.7);

(k) records of examination of parts as fabrication progresses for material marking, that surface defects are not evident, and that dimensional geometrics are maintained (see HG-515.1; HF-210; Subpart HW, Article 8; HC-200; HC-502.5; and HC-502.6);

(l) subjecting the boiler to the required hydrostatic test (see HG-510);

(m) affixing the required stamping and/or nameplate to the boiler and making certain it is affixed to the proper boiler (see HG-530);

(n) preparing the required Manufacturer's Data Report and having it certified by the Inspector (see HG-520) for boilers

[SEC IV PT HG A-5] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:18 2003)

and boiler parts constructed of wrought materials, and having it certified by the test engineer if constructed of cast material (see HC-403);

(o) providing for retention of Manufacturer's Data Reports [see HG-520.1(b), HC-403, and HC-502.10].

HG-515.3 Inspection by Authorized Inspector

(a) Except as otherwise permitted by Part HC, the inspection required by this Section shall be by an Inspector employed by an ASME Accredited Authorized Inspection Agency,[1] that is, the inspection organization of a state or municipality of the United States, a Canadian province, or of an insurance company authorized to write boiler and pressure vessel insurance. These Inspectors shall have been qualified by written examination under the rules of any state of the United States or province of Canada which has adopted the Code.

(b) The Inspector shall make all inspections specifically required of him plus such other inspections as he believes are necessary to enable him to certify that all boilers and boiler parts constructed of wrought material which he authorizes to be stamped with the Code Symbol have been designed and constructed in accordance with the requirements of this Code Section. The required inspections and verifications shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

(1) checking to see that the Manufacturer has a valid Certificate of Authorization (see HG-540) and is working to the quality control system accepted by the Society (see HG-540.1);

(2) checking to see that the design calculations, drawings, specifications, procedures, records, and test results are available (see HG-300, HG-200, HG-500, HF-200, and HW-700);

(3) checking to see that material used in the construction of the boiler and parts complies with the requirements (see HG-200, HF-200, and HB-1100);

(4) checking to see that all welding procedures have been qualified (see HW-910);

(5) checking to see that all welders and welding operators have been qualified (see HW-911);

(6) checking to see that all brazing procedures have been qualified (see HB-1501);

1 Whenever Authorized Inspection Agency or AIA is used in this Code, it shall mean an ASME Accredited Authorized Inspection Agency.

(7) checking to see that all brazer and brazer operators have been qualified (see HB-1502);

(8) checking to see that the proper joint factor is used for brazed joints that can only be inspected from one side (blind joint) (see HB-1503);

(9) checking to see that material imperfections repaired by welding were acceptably repaired (see HW-830 and HB-1402);

(10) visual inspection of boiler parts to confirm that the material identification numbers have been properly transferred (see HF-210);

(11) witnessing of proof tests conducted to establish the maximum allowable working pressure of boilers (see HG-500);

(12) inspecting each boiler and water heater during construction and after completion (see HG-515.3);

(13) performing internal and external inspections and witnessing hydrostatic tests (see HG-510);

(14) verifying that stamping and/or nameplate is proper and that it has been stamped and/or attached to the proper boiler (see HG-530 through HG-533);

(15) signing the certificate of inspection on the Manufacturer's Data Report when the boiler or part is complete and in compliance with all the provisions of this Section (see HG-532.3, HG-533.6, and HG-520.2).

HG-515.4 Duty of Authorized Inspector

(a) Each boiler shall be inspected during construction and after completion and, at the option of the Authorized Inspector, at such other stages of the work as he may designate. For specific requirements, see the applicable parts of this Section. Each Manufacturer or assembler is required to arrange for the services of Authorized Inspectors (see HG-515.2)

Section. Each Manufacturer or assembler is required to arrange for the services of Authorized Inspectors (see HG-515.2) to perform such inspections on all of this work within the scope of this Section, whether performed in the shop or in the field.

(b) When multiple, duplicate boiler fabrication makes it impracticable for the Inspector to personally perform each of his required duties, the Manufacturer, in collaboration with the Inspector, shall prepare an inspection and quality control procedure setting forth in complete detail the method by which the requirements of this Section shall be maintained (see HG-515 for summaries of the responsibilities of the Manufacturer and the duties of the Inspector). This procedure shall be included in the Manufacturer's written Quality Control System (see HG-540). This procedure shall be submitted to, and shall have received the acceptance of, the inspection agency. It shall then be submitted by the inspection agency for written acceptance by the legal jurisdiction concerned and by an ASME Designee. The inspection procedure shall be used in the plant of the named Manufacturer by the inspection agency submitting it,

and shall be carried out by an Inspector in the employ of that inspection agency. Any changes in this inspection and Quality Control Procedure that affect the requirements of this Section are subject to review and acceptance by the parties required for a joint review. The joint reviews required by HG-540 shall include an ASME Designee. The Data Report for a multiple duplicate boiler shall include under "Remarks," the statement "Constructed under the provisions of HG-515.4(b)."

HG-520 MASTER AND PARTIAL DATA REPORTS

HG-520.1 Manufacturer's Master Data Report.

Each manufacturer of heating boilers of wrought materials to which the Code H Symbol is to be applied shall compile a Manufacturer's Data Report for each boiler he produces, except that an individual Manufacturer's Data Report may be used to include the serial numbers in uninterrupted sequence of identical boilers completed, inspected, and stamped in a continuous 8 hr period. Form H-2 or H-3 shall be used.

(a) The boiler Manufacturer shall have the responsibility of furnishing a copy of the completed Manufacturer's Data Report at the place of installation to the inspection agency, the purchaser, and the state, municipal, or provincial authority.

(b) The Manufacturer shall either keep a copy of the Manufacturer's Data Report on file for at least 5 years, or the boiler may be registered and the original Data Report filed with the National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors, 1055 Crupper Avenue, Columbus, Ohio 43229.

HG-520.2 Partial Data Reports

(a) Manufacturer's Partial Data Reports for those parts of a boiler requiring inspection under this Code, which are furnished by other than the shop of the manufacturer responsible for the completed boiler, shall be executed by the parts manufacturer and shall be forwarded in duplicate to the manufacturer of the finished boiler.

(b) Partial Data Reports (Form H-4) shall be completed for all parts that require inspection under this Code which are fabricated by a manufacturer other than the manufacturer of the completed boiler. These Partial Data Reports, together with his own inspection, shall be the final Authorized Inspector's authority to witness the application of the Code Symbol to the completed boiler.

[SEC IV PT HG A-5] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:19 2003)

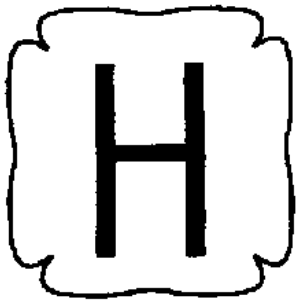


FIG. HG-530.1 OFFICIAL SYMBOL FOR STAMP TO DENOTE THE AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS' STANDARD

FIG. HG-530.1 OFFICIAL SYMBOL FOR STAMP TO DENOTE THE AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS' STANDARD

HG-530 STAMPING OF BOILERS

[98]
HG-530.1 Stamping Requirements for Boilers Other Than Those Constructed Primarily of Cast Iron (See HG-530.2)

(a) All boilers to which the Code Symbol is to be applied shall be built according to the rules of this Section by a manufacturer who is in possession of a Code Symbol Stamp and a valid Certificate of Authorization. Each boiler shall be stamped with the Code Symbol shown in Fig. HG-530.1 and with the following data:

(1) the boiler manufacturer's name, preceded by the words "Certified by"

(2) maximum allowable working pressure;

(3) safety or safety relief valve capacity (minimum), lb/hr or MBH,[2] as determined according to HG-400.1(d) and HG-400.2(d);

(4) heating surface, sq ft, as determined according to HG-403 (or kilowatt power input for electric boilers);

(5) manufacturer's serial number;

(6) year built;

(7) maximum water temperature.

NOTE: The year built may be incorporated into the serial number as a prefix consisting of the last two digits of the year.

(b) Items (1) through (7) listed in (a) above, with the markings arranged substantially as shown in Fig. HG-530.2 or Fig. HG-530.3, shall be stamped with letters at least $^{5}/_{16}$ in. (8 mm) high and in some conspicuous place on the boiler proper or

[SEC IV PT HG A-5] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:19 2003)

on a nameplate at least $^{3}/_{64}$ in. (1.2 mm) thick permanently fastened to the boiler proper. The location of the stamping shall be as follows:

(1) Horizontal Tubular Flue Type Boilers: on the front head above the central rows of tubes or flues.

(2) Locomotive Firebox, Compact, or Vertical Firetube Type Boilers: over or near the fire door or handhole or washout plug opening on the front end or side.

2Thousands of Btu per hr.

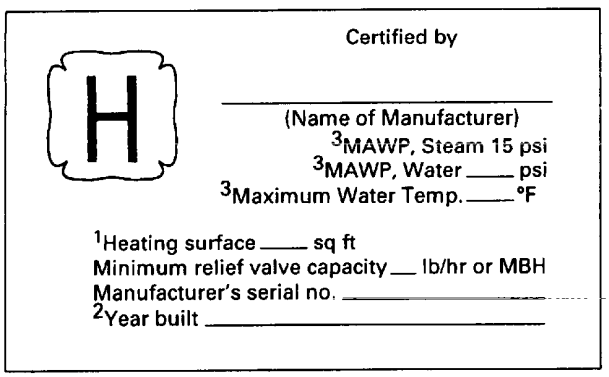


FIG. HG-530.2 STEAM AND WATER BOILERS

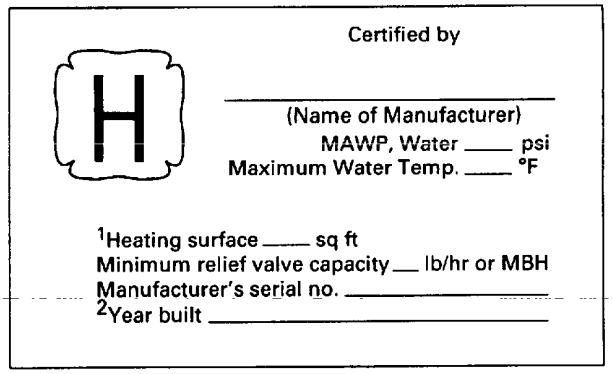


FIG. HG-530.3 BOILERS SUITABLE FOR WATER ONLY

NOTES:
Acceptable abbreviations to any of the stamp wording may be used.
(1) Kilowatt power input for electric boilers.
(2) May be omitted when year built is prefix to serial number (see HG-530.1).
(3) For steam only boilers, MAWP Water and Maximum Water Temperature markings are optional.

FIG. HG-530.2 STEAM AND WATER BOILERS

[SEC IV PT HG A-5] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:20 2003)

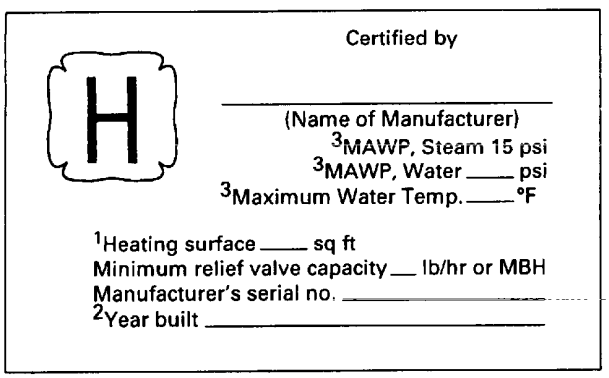


FIG. HG-530.2 STEAM AND WATER BOILERS

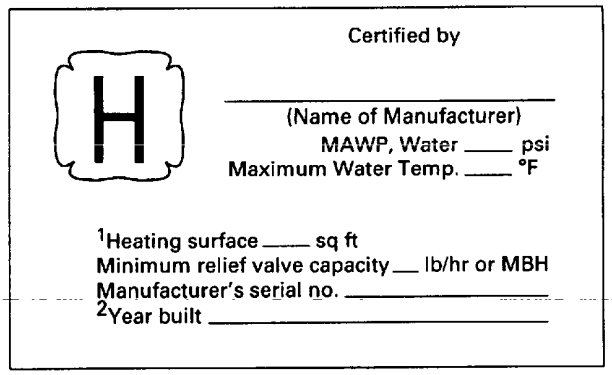


FIG. HG-530.3 BOILERS SUITABLE FOR WATER ONLY

NOTES:
Acceptable abbreviations to any of the stamp wording may be used.
(1) Kilowatt power input for electric boilers.
(2) May be omitted when year built is prefix to serial number (see HG-530.1).
(3) For steam only boilers, MAWP Water and Maximum Water Temperature markings are optional.

FIG. HG-530.3 BOILERS SUITABLE FOR WATER ONLY

(3) Watertube Type Boilers: on a head of the top outlet drum. Waterwalls and headers shall carry identifying markings.

(4) Split-Section and Section Firebox Type Wrought Boilers: over or near the fire door or handhole or washout plug opening on the front end or side. Each section shall carry identifying markings.

(5) Scotch Type Boilers: on either side of the shell near the normal water level line adjacent to the front tubesheet.

(c) On any of the above type boilers where there is not sufficient space in the places designated and on other types and new designs of boilers, the nameplate shall be located in a conspicuous place.

(d) The stamping or nameplate on the boiler proper shall not be covered with insulating or other material unless:

(1) the required markings are duplicated and stamped directly on the boiler casing in some conspicuous place using letters and numerals at least $^{5}/_{16}$ in. (8 mm) high;

(2) an opening with a removable cover is provided in the jacket or other form of casing so that, when removed, the stamping or nameplate on the boiler proper can be viewed;

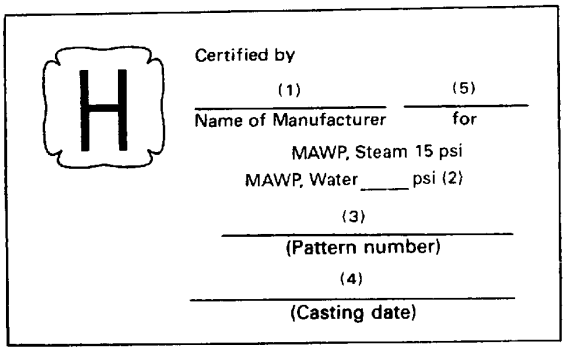
(3) the required data are duplicated by stamping or marking with letters at least $^{1}/_{8}$ in. (3.2 mm) high on a nonferrous nameplate at least 3 in. × 4 in. (76 mm × 102 mm) size and permanently attaching the nameplate to the casing in some conspicuous place by mechanical means or by an adhesive system meeting the requirements of Appendix 3.

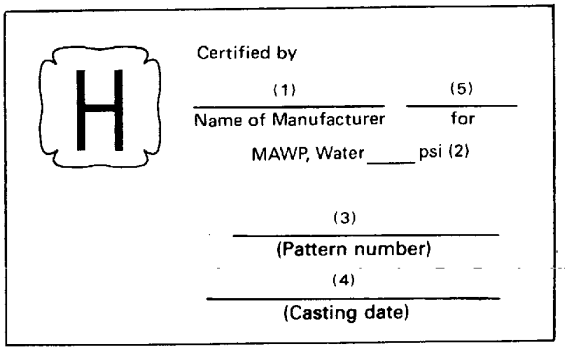
(e) The Code Symbol may be preapplied to a nameplate. The nameplate may be attached to the boiler after the final fabrication and examination sequence but before the hydrostatic test, provided the procedure for sequence of stamping is described in the manufacturer's accepted quality control system. The Code Symbol and manufacturer's serial number shall be stamped on nameplates but the other data may be stamped, etched, cast, or impressed thereon.

(f) The ASME Code Symbol Stamp(s) shall not be used by an organization to which it was not issued.
[98]

HG-530.2 Marking Requirements for Cast Iron Boilers

(a) All boiler parts or sections to which the Code Symbol is to be applied shall be built according to





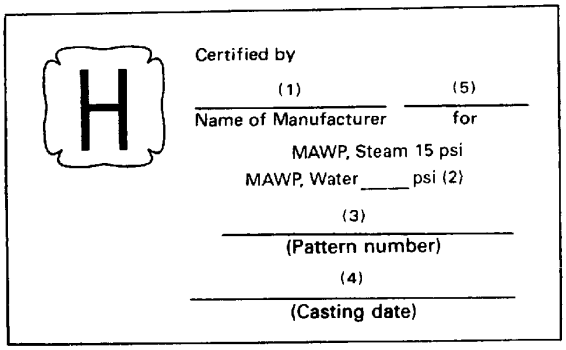
NOTE: (1) through (5) refer to HG-530.2(a)(1)–(a)(5); (5) is optional.

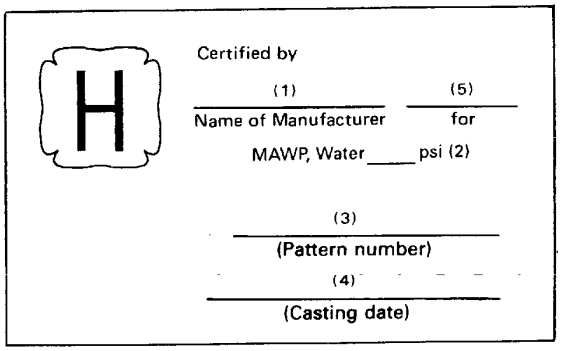
FIG. HG-530.4 STEAM AND WATER BOILERS

FIG. HG-530.5 BOILERS SUITABLE FOR WATER ONLY

FIG. HG-530.4 STEAM AND WATER BOILERS

the rules of this Section by a manufacturer[3] who is in possession of a Code Symbol Stamp and a valid Certificate of Authorization. Each boiler section, including end and intermediate cored sections, shall be cast with the Code Symbol shown in Fig. HG-530.1 and with the following data cast in letters or numerals at least $^{5}/_{16}$ in. (8 mm) high:





NOTE: (1) through (5) refer to HG-530.2(a)(1)–(a)(5); (5) is optional.

FIG. HG-530.4 STEAM AND WATER BOILERS

FIG. HG-530.5 BOILERS SUITABLE FOR WATER ONLY

FIG. HG-530.5 BOILERS SUITABLE FOR WATER ONLY

(1) the boiler or parts manufacturer's[3] name or acceptable abbreviation, preceded by the words "Certified by:" (or "Cert. by" on cast iron boiler sections only where space for marking is limited; the abbreviation "Cert. by" shall not be used on nameplates);

[SEC IV PT HG A-5] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:21 2003)

(2) maximum allowable working pressure[4]

(3) pattern number;

(4) casting date;

(5) [5] the shop assembler's[6] name or acceptable abbreviation (if different from manufacturer).

Arrangement of data cast on sections shall be substantially as shown in Fig. HG-530.4 or Fig. HG-530.5.

Other data may be cast on the sections. The marking "ASME" or "ASME standard" shall not be used.

(b) When the boiler size and number of sections have been decided, the completed boiler shall be marked with the Code Symbol shown in Fig. HG-530.1 and with the following data:

3 The foundry that casts the boiler parts or sections and that may shop assemble.

4 May be stamped.

5 Optional.

6 The shop that assembles sections into boilers and that is in possession of a Code Symbol Stamp and valid Certificate of Authorization.

(1) the shop assembler's name preceded by the words "Certified by"

(2) maximum allowable working pressure;

(3) safety or safety relief valve capacity (minimum), lb/hr or MBH, as determined according to HG-400.1(e) and HG-400.2(d);

(4) maximum water temperature.

(c) The markings for the completed boiler shall be arranged substantially as shown in Fig. HG-530.6 or Fig. HG-530.7.

(d) The provisions of (b) above shall be met utilizing one of the following methods:

(1) stamping the required markings on a nonferrous nameplate at least 3 in. × 4 in. (76 mm × 102 mm) in size and $^{3}/_{64}$ in. (1.2 mm) thick using letters and numerals at least $^{1}/_{8}$ in. (3.2 mm) high and permanently attaching the nameplate to the boiler proper in some conspicuous place. The nameplate shall not be covered with insulating or other material except that when a jacket or other form of casing is applied to a boiler, an opening with a removable cover shall be provided for viewing the required stamping.

(2) stamping the required markings directly into the boiler casing in some conspicuous place using letters and numerals at least $^{5}/_{16}$ in. (8 mm) high;

(3) stamping or marking the required data on a nonferrous or nonmetallic nameplate at least 3 in. × 4 in. (76 mm × 102 mm) in size using letters and numerals at least $^{1}/_{8}$ in. (3.2 mm) high and permanently attaching the nameplate to the casing in some conspicuous place by mechanical means or by an adhesive

[SEC IV PT HG A-5] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:22 2003)

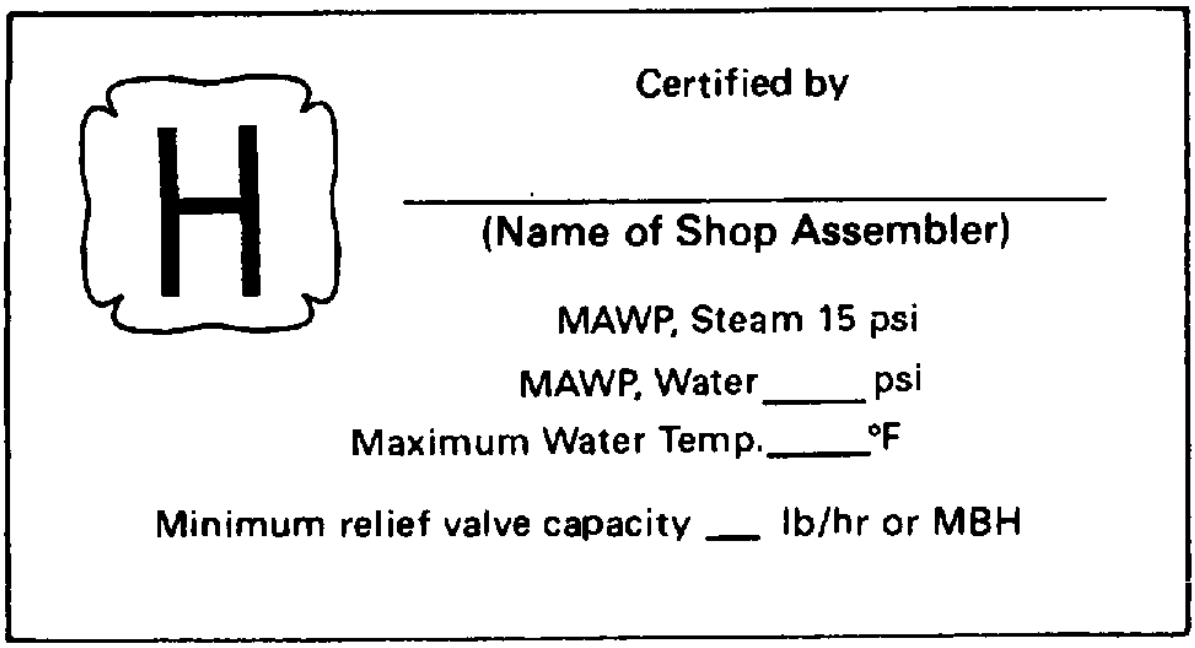


FIG. HG-530.6 STEAM AND WATER BOILERS

FIG. HG-530.6 STEAM AND WATER BOILERS

system. The nameplate and the adhesive system shall meet the requirements of Appendix 3.

[SEC IV PT HG A-5] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:22 2003)

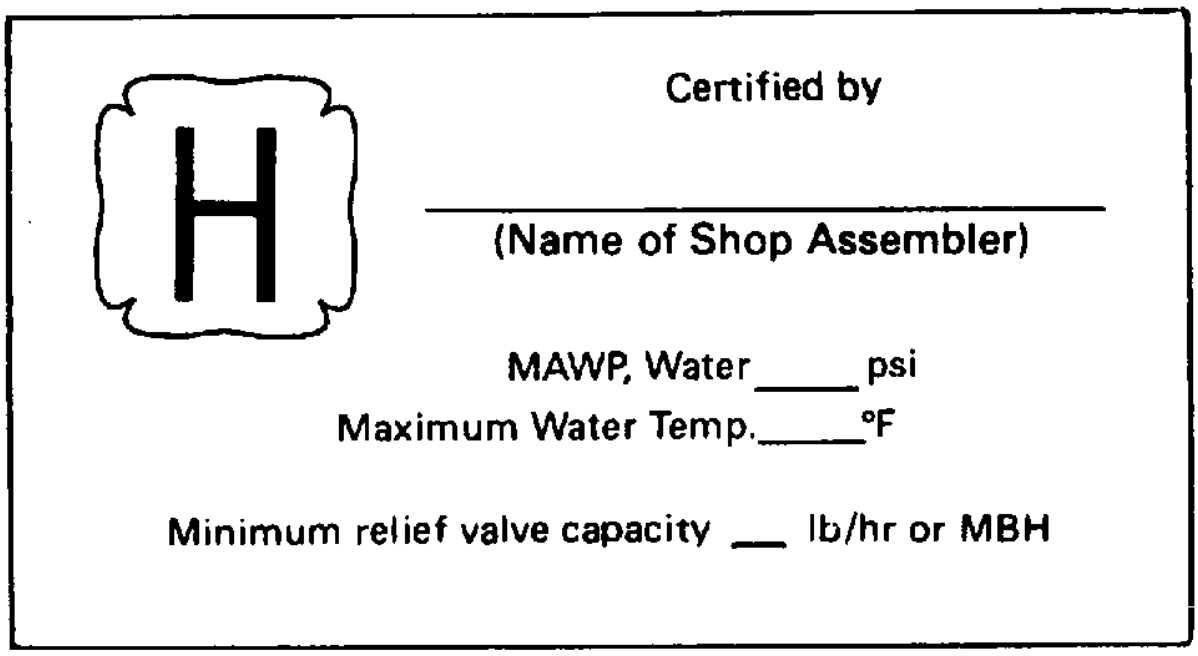


FIG. HG-530.7 BOILERS SUITABLE FOR WATER ONLY

FIG. HG-530.7 BOILERS SUITABLE FOR WATER ONLY

Other data may be stamped on the casing or the nameplate provided the required markings are distinct and separate from the other data. The marking "ASME" or "ASME standard" shall not be used.

(4) when nameplates are shipped detached, the space for attachment shall bear the statement: "This installation is not complete unless the nameplate is attached here."

(5) the Code Symbol may be preapplied to a nameplate.

(6) the ASME Code Symbol Stamp(s) shall not be used by an organization to which it was not issued.

HG-531 STAMPING OF PARTS AND ACCESSORIES

(a) Parts of boilers for which Partial Data Reports are required by HG-520.2 shall be marked with the following:

(1) the official Code Symbol shown in Fig. HG-530.1 above the word "Part;"

(2) the part manufacturer's name;

(3) the part manufacturer's serial number.

(b) No part or accessory of a boiler may be marked with the Code Symbol shown in Fig. HG-530.1 unless so specified in the Code. The markings "ASME" or "ASME standard" shall not be used.

HG-532 STAMPING OF FIELD ASSEMBLED WROUGHT BOILERS

[SEC IV PT HG A-5] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:22 2003)

HG-532.1 Responsibility of Manufacturer of Boiler Unit.

When a boiler manufactured of wrought material is furnished by one manufacturer and is not assembled and subjected to hydrostatic test prior to shipment, the manufacturer of the boiler unit shall compile a Manufacturer's Data Report Form H-2 or H-3 recording all items of the complete boiler unit.

HG-532.2 Execution of Manufacturer's Data Report.

The Manufacturer's Data Report shall be properly executed by the manufacturer and the Authorized Inspector, who shall sign the certificate of shop inspection certifying that each enumerated item which has been inspected at the shop conforms to the requirements of the ASME Code. The manufacturer in signing each Data Report shall state under his signature the expiration date on the Certificate of Authorization to use the Symbol.

HG-532.3 Application of Stamping and Signing Data Sheets.

Proper stamping as required by HG-530.2 shall be applied at the shop and the data sheets shall be signed by the same or different Inspectors who shall indicate the portions of the inspections made at the shop and in the field.

HG-533 INSPECTION AND STAMPING OF FIELD ASSEMBLED BOILER PRESSURE PARTS

HG-533.1 Authorized Assemblers and Welders.

The assembly of any parts or subassemblies of the unit that requires welding shall be made by one possessing a heating boiler stamp. The welding of any parts or subassemblies during field assembly shall be done by persons who meet the requirements of HW-610.

HG-533.2 Execution of Data Report Sheet.

When the assembly is made by anyone other than the manufacturer of the boiler unit, the Data Report sheet properly executed in accordance with HG-532 shall be forwarded to the assembler who shall be responsible for the proper handling of the Data Report and who shall fill in such items as are not filled in at the shop, and sign the Data Sheet as the "assembler" or "assembling organization" instead of "manufacturer." He shall also append, above his signature, the statement: "We certify that the field assembly of all parts conform with the requirements of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code."

HG-533.3 Field Inspection by Authorized Inspector.

The field inspection shall be made by an Authorized Inspector (as defined in HG-515.3) and the Inspector shall make such inspections as he believes are needed to enable him to certify that the boiler has been constructed in accordance with the Code. Properly executed Manufacturer's Data Reports, together with the Inspector's own inspection, shall constitute his authority to sign the certificate of field inspection.

HG-533.4 Application of Assembler's Stamp.

The Assembler's H Stamp, together with the assembler's name or an acceptable abbreviation, shall be applied in the field on the boiler near the stamping called for in HG-530.2, when the assembly is accepted by the Authorized Inspector.

HG-533.5 Application for H Symbol.

Applicants for an H Symbol to be used only in the field assembly of heating boilers shall so state on the application form, and the Certificate of Authorization issued to such applicants shall show that the authorization to use the H Symbol is limited to the field assembly of welded boilers constructed to Section IV (see HG-540).

HG-533.6 Certificate of Field Inspection.

[SEC IV PT HG A-5] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:22 2003)

The certificate of field inspection on the Data Report shall be executed by the Authorized Inspector. The assembler or assembling organization shall have the responsibility for forwarding and filing of Manufacturer's Data Reports as required by HG-520.1(a) and HG-520.1(b).

HG-533.7 Mechanical Field Assembly.

For a boiler manufactured of wrought materials that has not been completed in the Manufacturer's shop, field assembly involving no welding does not need to be performed by a Company possessing a heating boiler stamp. However, when a boiler is not assembled by a stamp holder, the Manufacturer assuming responsibility for the completed boiler is responsible for providing for field inspection by an Authorized Inspector employed by the Manufacturer's Authorized Inspection Agency, and signature of the Certificate of Field Assembly Compliance by a representative of the Manufacturer, after the required hydrostatic test has been completed. Application of an assembler H stamp in accordance with HG-533.4 is not required.

HG-540 CODE SYMBOL STAMPS

HG-540.1 Authorization.

A Certificate of Authorization to use the Code Symbols H, HLW, and/or HV will be granted by the Society pursuant to the provisions of the following paragraphs. Stamps for applying the Code Symbol shall be obtained from the Society.

HG-540.2 Application for Certificate of Authorization

(a) Any organization desiring a Certificate of Authorization shall apply to the Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee of the Society, on forms issued by the Society,[7] specifying the Stamp desired and the scope of Code activities to be performed. When an organization intends to build Code items in plants in more than one geographical area, either separate applications for each plant or a single application listing the addresses of all such plants may be submitted. Each application shall identify the Authorized Inspection Agency providing Code inspection at each plant. A separate Certificate of Authorization will be prepared and a separate fee charged by the Society for each plant.

Each applicant must agree that each Certificate of Authorization and each Code Symbol Stamp are at all times the property of the Society, that they will be used according to the rules and regulations of this Section of the Code, and that they will be promptly returned to the Society upon demand, or when the applicant discontinues the Code activities covered by his Certificate, or when the Certificate of Authorization has expired and no new Certificate has been issued. The holder of a Code Symbol Stamp shall not allow any other organization to use it.

7 The application forms and related information and instructions may be obtained by writing to the Secretary, ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee, Three Park Avenue, New York, NY 10016.

(b) Issuance of Authorization. Authorization to use Code Symbol Stamps may be granted or withheld by the Society in its absolute discretion. If authorization is granted, and the proper administrative fee paid, a Certificate of Authorization evidencing permission to use any such Symbol, expiring on the triennial anniversary date thereafter, will be forwarded to the applicant. Each such certificate will identify the Code Symbol to be used, and the type of shop and/or field operations

for which authorization is granted (see Appendix K). The Certificate will be signed by the Chairman of the Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee and the Director of Accreditation.

(c) Six months prior to the date of expiration of any such Certificate, the applicant must apply for a renewal of such authorization and the issuance of a new Certificate. The Society reserves the absolute right to cancel or refuse to renew such authorization, returning, pro rata, fees paid for the unexpired term.

The Certificate of Authorization for the use of the H, HLW, and/or HV Code Symbol Stamp is valid for 3 years; the H (cast iron) Certificate of Authorization for the H (cast iron) Code Symbol Stamp is valid for one year.

HG-540.3 Inspection Agreement.

As a condition of obtaining and maintaining a Certificate of Authorization to use the H or HLW Code Symbol Stamps, the Manufacturer (except for cast iron heating boilers) must have in force at all times an inspection contract or agreement

[SEC IV PT HG A-5] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:22 2003)

with an Authorized Inspection Agency as defined in HG-515.3 to provide inspection services. This inspection agreement is a written agreement between the Manufacturer and the Inspection Agency which specifies the terms and conditions under which the inspection services are to be furnished and which states the mutual responsibilities of the Manufacturer and the Authorized Inspectors. A Certificate Holder shall notify the Society whenever his agreement with an Authorized Inspection Agency is cancelled or changed to another Authorized Inspection Agency. Neither Manufacturers nor Assemblers of pressure relief valves are required to have an inspection agreement with an Authorized Inspection Agency.

A Certificate of Authorization may be granted to a Manufacturer or Assembler of safety valves to use the safety valve Symbol Stamp providing such stamp is applied only to safety valves that have been capacity certified in accordance with the requirements of this Section.

HG-540.4 Quality Control System.

Any Manufacturer or Assembler holding or applying for a Certificate of Authorization to use the H, HLW, or HV Stamp shall have, and demonstrate, a quality control system to establish that all Code requirements, including material, design, fabrication, examination (by the Manufacturer), inspection of boilers, vessels, parts (by the Authorized Inspector), pressure testing, and certification will be met. The quality control system shall be in accordance with the requirements of Appendix F, except for Cast Iron Boiler Certificate Holders. It must be in accordance with the requirements of Article 5 of Part HC.

HG-540.5 Evaluation for Authorization and Reauthorization.

Before issuance or triennial renewal of a Certificate of Authorization for use of the H or HLW Stamp, the Manufacturer's facilities and organization are subject to a joint review by his Inspection Agency and an individual certified as an ASME designee who is selected by the concerned legal jurisdiction, except that for H (cast iron) the review shall be yearly by an ASME designee selected by ASME. A written description or checklist of the quality control system that identifies what documents and what procedures the Manufacturer will use to produce a Code item shall be available for review.

The purpose of the review is to evaluate the applicant's quality control system and its implementation. The applicant shall demonstrate sufficient administrative and fabrication functions of the system to show that he has the knowledge and ability to produce the Code items covered by his quality control system. Fabrication functions may be demonstrated using current work, a mock-up, or a combination of the two.

A written report to the Society shall be made jointly by the ASME designee and the Inspection Agency employed by the Manufacturer to do his Code inspection. This report is then reviewed by the Subcommittee on Boiler and Pressure Vessel Accreditation, which will either issue a Certificate of Authorization or notify the applicant of deficiencies revealed by the review. In such a case, the applicant will be given an opportunity to explain or correct these deficiencies.

Certificates of Authorization will be endorsed to indicate the scope of activity authorized. Authorization may include field operations if the review team determines that these operations are adequately described in the quality control manual, and this determination is accepted by the Society.

Before issuance or renewal of a Certificate of Authorization for use of the H (cast iron) Stamp to produce cast iron boilers, each Manufacturer (the foundry who casts the boiler parts or sections and who may shop assemble) or Assember is subject to review by an ASME designee. A written description or checklist of the quality control system in accordance with the requirements of Part HC shall be available for review. The ASME designee shall make a written report to the Society, where the Subcommittee on Boiler and Pressure Vessel Accreditation will act on it as described above.

HG-540.6 Authorization of Changes.

The Manufacturer may at any time make changes in the quality control system concerning the methods of achieving results, subject to acceptance by the Authorized Inspector.

For Manufacturers of multiple duplicate pressure vessels,[8] acceptance of these changes by the jurisdiction (if applicable) and an ASME designee is also required. For Manufacturers and Assemblers of HV stamped safety and safety relief valves, such acceptance shall be by the ASME designee.

For those areas where there is no jurisdiction, that function shall be performed by an ASME designee selected by

[SEC IV PT HG A-5] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:23 2003)

ASME. Where a jurisdiction does not review a Manufacturer's facility, that function shall be performed by an ASME designee who is selected by the concerned legal jurisdiction. Where the jurisdiction is the Manufacturer's Inspection Agency, the joint review and joint report shall be made by the jurisdiction and an ASME designee selected by ASME.

8 See HG-515.4 for additional requirements applicable to multiple, duplicate pressure vessel fabrication.

HG-540.7 Code Construction Before Receipt of Certificate of Authorization.

When used to demonstrate his quality control system, a Manufacturer may start fabricating Code items before receipt of a Certificate of Authorization to use a Code Symbol Stamp under the following conditions.

(a) The fabrication is done with the participation of the Authorized Inspector and is subject to his acceptance.

(b) The activity is in conformance with the applicant's quality control system.

(c) The item is stamped with the appropriate Code Symbol and certified once the applicant receives his Certificate of Authorization from the Society.

HG-540.8 Regulations on Use of Code Symbol Stamps.

The Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee may at any time make such regulations concerning the issuance and use of Code Symbol Stamps as it deems appropriate, and all such regulations shall become binding upon the holders of any valid Certificates of Authorization.

HG-600 GENERAL

All instruments, fittings, and controls described in this Article shall be installed prior to operation.

HG-601 FOR STEAM HEATING BOILERS

HG-602 STEAM GAGES

(a) Each steam boiler shall have a steam gage or a compound steam gage connected to its steam space or to its water column or to its steam connection. The gage or piping to the gage shall contain a siphon or equivalent device that will develop and maintain a water seal that will prevent steam from entering the gage tube. The piping shall be so arranged that the gage cannot be shut off from the boiler except by a cock placed in the pipe at the gage and provided with a tee- or lever-handle arranged to be parallel to the pipe in which it is located when the cock is open. The gage connection boiler tapping, external siphon, or piping to the boiler shall not be less than NPS $^1/_4$ (DN 10). Where steel or wrought iron pipe or tubing is used, the boiler connection and external siphon shall be not less than NPS $^1/_2$ (DN 15). Ferrous and nonferrous tubing having inside diameters at least equal to that of standard pipe sizes listed above may be substituted for pipe.

(b) The scale on the dial of a steam boiler gage shall be graduated to not less than 30 psi (207 kPa) nor more than 60 psi (414 kPa). The travel of the pointer from 0 psi to 30 psi (0 kPa to 207 kPa) pressure shall be at least 3 in. (76 mm).

HG-603 WATER GAGE GLASSES

(a) Each steam boiler shall have one or more water gage glasses attached to the water column or boiler by means of valved fittings not less than NPS $^1/_2$ (DN 15), with the lower fitting provided with a drain valve of a type having an unrestricted drain opening not less than $^1/$ in. (6 mm) in diameter to facilitate cleaning. Gage glass replacement shall be possible under

[SEC IV PT HG A-6] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:23 2003)

pressure. Water glass fittings[4] may be attached directly to a boiler.

Boilers having an internal vertical height of less than 10 in. (254 mm) may be equipped with a water level indicator of the Glass Bull's-Eye type provided the indicator is of sufficient size to show the water at both normal operating and low-water cutoff levels.

(b) The lowest visible part of the water gage glass shall be at least 1 in. (25 mm) above the lowest permissible water level recommended by the boiler Manufacturer. With the boiler operating at this lowest permissible water level, there shall be no danger of overheating any part of the boiler.

Each boiler shall be provided at the time of the manufacture with a permanent marker indicating the lowest permissible water level. The marker shall be stamped, etched, or cast in metal; or it shall be a metallic plate attached by rivets, screws, or welding; or it shall consist of material with documented tests showing its suitability as a permanent marking for the application. This marker shall be visible at all times. Where the boiler is shipped with a jacket, this marker may be located on the jacket.

NOTE: Transparent material other than glass may be used for the water gage provided that the material will remain transparent and has proved suitable for the pressure, temperature, and corrosive conditions expected in service.

(c) In electric boilers of the submerged electrode type, the water gage glass shall be so located to indicate the water levels both at startup and under maximum steam load conditions as established by the manufacturer.

(d) In electric boilers of the resistance element type, the lowest visible part of the water gage shall be located at least 1 in. (25 mm) above the lowest permissible water level specified by the Manufacturer. Each electric boiler of this type shall also be equipped with an automatic low-water cutoff on each boiler pressure vessel so located as to automatically cut off the power supply

to the heating elements before the surface of the water falls below the visible part of the glass.

(e) Tubular water glasses on electric boilers having a normal water content not exceeding 100 gal (300 l) shall be equipped with a protective shield.

HG-604 WATER COLUMN AND WATER LEVEL CONTROL PIPES

(a) The minimum size of ferrous or nonferrous pipes connecting a water column to a steam boiler shall be 1 in. (25 mm). No outlet connections, except for damper regulator, feedwater regulator, steam gages, or apparatus which does not permit the escape of any steam or water except for manually operated blowdowns, shall be attached to a water column or the piping connecting a water column to a boiler (see HG-705 for introduction of feedwater into a boiler). If the water column, gage glass, low-water fuel cutoff, or other water level control device is connected to the boiler by pipe and fittings, no shutoff valves of any type shall be placed in such pipe, and a cross or equivalent fitting to which a drain valve and piping may be attached shall be placed in the water piping connection at every right angle turn to facilitate cleaning. The water column drain pipe and valve shall be not less than NPS $^{3}/_{4}$ (DN 20).

(b) The steam connections to the water column of a horizontal firetube wrought boiler shall be taken from the top of the shell or the upper part of the head, and the water connection shall be taken from a point not above the center line of the shell. For a cast iron boiler, the steam connection to the water column shall be taken from the top of an end section or the top of the steam header, and the water connection shall be made on an end section not less than 6 in. (152 mm) below the bottom connection to the water gage glass.

HG-605 PRESSURE CONTROL

Each automatically fired steam boiler shall be protected from overpressure by two pressure-operated controls.

(a) Each individual automatically fired steam boiler shall have a safety limit control that will cut off the fuel supply to prevent steam pressure from exceeding the 15 psi (103 kPa) maximum allowable working pressure of the boiler. Each control shall be constructed to prevent a pressure setting above 15 psi (103 kPa).

(b) Each individual steam boiler or each system of commonly connected steam boilers shall have a control that will cut off

[SEC IV PT HG A-6] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:23 2003)

the fuel supply when the pressure reaches an operating limit, which shall be less than the maximum allowable pressure.

(c) Shutoff valves of any type shall not be placed in the steam pressure connection between the boiler and the controls described in (a) and (b) above. These controls shall be protected with a siphon or equivalent means of maintaining a water seal that will prevent steam from entering the control. The control connection boiler tapping, external siphon, or piping to the boiler shall not be less than NPS $^1/_4$ (DN 10), but where steel or wrought iron pipe or tubing is used, they shall not be less than NPS $^1/_2$ (DN 15). The minimum size of an external siphon shall be NPS $^1/_4$ (DN 10) or $^3/_8$ in. (10 mm) O.D. nonferrous tubing.

HG-606 AUTOMATIC LOW-WATER FUEL CUTOFF AND/OR WATER FEEDING DEVICE

(a) Each automatically fired steam or vapor-system boiler shall have an automatic low-water fuel cutoff so located as to automatically cut off the fuel supply when the surface of the water falls to the lowest visible part of the water gage glass. If a water feeding device is installed, it shall be so constructed that the water inlet valve cannot feed water into the boiler through the float chamber and so located as to supply requisite feedwater.

(b) Such a fuel cutoff or water feeding device may be attached directly to a boiler. A fuel cutoff or water feeding device may also be installed in the tapped openings available for attaching a water glass direct to a boiler, provided the connections are made to the boiler with nonferrous tees or Y's not less than NPS $^1/_2$ (DN 15) between the boiler and the water glass so that the water glass is attached directly and as close as possible to the boiler; the run of the tee or Y shall take the water glass fittings, and the side outlet or branch of the tee or Y shall take the fuel cutoff or water feeding device. The ends of all nipples shall be reamed to full-size diameter.

(c) Fuel cutoffs and water feeding devices embodying a separate chamber shall have a vertical drain pipe and a blowoff valve not less than NPS $^3/_4$ (DN 20), located at the lowest point in the water equalizing pipe connections so that the chamber and the equalizing pipe can be flushed and the device tested.

HG-607 MODULAR STEAM HEATING BOILERS

(a) Each module of a modular steam heating boiler shall be equipped with:

(1) steam gage, see HG-602

(2) water gage glass, see HG-603

(3) pressure control, see HG-605(a)

(4) low water cutoff, see HG-606

(b) The assembled modular steam boiler shall also be equipped with pressure control, see HG-605(b).

HG-610 FOR HOT WATER HEATING OR HOT WATER SUPPLY BOILERS

HG-611 PRESSURE OR ALTITUDE GAGES

(a) Each hot water heating or hot water supply boiler shall have a pressure or altitude gage connected to it or to its flow connection in such a manner that it cannot be shut off from the boiler except by a cock with tee or lever handle, placed on the pipe near the gage. The handle of the cock shall be parallel to the pipe in which it is located when the cock is open.

(b) The scale on the dial of the pressure or altitude gage shall be graduated approximately to not less than $1^1/_2$ nor more than $3^1/_2$ times the pressure at which the safety relief valve is set.

(c) Piping or tubing for pressure- or altitude-gage connections shall be of nonferrous metal when smaller than NPS 1 (DN 25).

HG-612 THERMOMETERS

Each hot water heating or hot water supply boiler shall have a thermometer so located and connected that it shall be easily readable. The thermometer shall be so located that it shall at all times indicate the temperature of the water in the boiler at or

[SEC IV PT HG A-6] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:23 2003)

near the outlet.

[98]
HG-613 TEMPERATURE CONTROL

Each automatically fired hot water heating or hot water supply boiler shall be protected from over-temperature by two temperature-operated controls.

(a) Each individual automatically fired hot water heating or hot water supply boiler shall have a high temperature limit control that will cut off the fuel supply to prevent water temperature from exceeding its marked maximum water temperature at the boiler outlet. This control shall be constructed to prevent a temperature setting above the maximum.

(b) Each individual hot water heating or hot water supply boiler or each system of commonly connected boilers without intervening valves shall have a control that will cut off the fuel supply when the system water temperature reaches a preset operating temperature, which shall be less than the maximum water temperature.
[98]

HG-614 LOW-WATER FUEL CUTOFF

(a) Each automatically fired hot water boiler with heat input greater than 400,000 Btu/hr (117 kW) shall have an automatic low-water fuel cutoff that has been designed for hot water service, and it shall be so located as to automatically cut off the fuel supply when the surface of the water falls to the level established in (b) below (see Fig. HG-703.2).

(b) As there is no normal waterline to be maintained in a hot water boiler, any location of the low-water fuel cutoff above the lowest safe permissible water level established by the boiler manufacturer is satisfactory.

(c) A coil-type boiler or a watertube boiler with heat input greater than 400,000 Btu/hr (117 kW) requiring forced circulation to prevent overheating of the coils or tubes shall have a flow-sensing device installed in lieu of the low-water fuel cutoff required in (a) above to automatically cut off the fuel supply when the circulating flow is interrupted.

(d) A means shall be provided for testing the operation of the external low-water fuel cutoff without resorting to draining the entire system. Such means shall not render the device inoperable except as described as follows. If the means temporarily isolates the device from the boiler during this testing, it shall automatically return to its normal position. The connection may be so arranged that the device cannot be shut off from the boiler except by a cock placed at the device and provided with a tee or lever-handle arranged to be parallel to the pipe in which it is located when the cock is open.

HG-615 MODULAR HOT WATER HEATING BOILERS

(a) Each module of a modular hot water heating boiler shall be equipped with:

(1) pressure/altitude gage, see HG-611

(2) thermometer, see HG-612

(3) temperature control, see HG-613(a)

(b) The assembled modular hot water heating boiler shall also be equipped with:

(1) temperature control, see HG-613(b)

(2) low water fuel cutoff, see HG-614

HG-620 FOR ALL BOILERS

HG-621 INSTRUMENTS, FITTINGS, AND CONTROLS MOUNTED INSIDE BOILER JACKETS

Any or all instruments, fittings, and controls required by these rules may be installed inside of boiler jackets provided the water gage on a steam boiler is accessible without the use of tools and provided the water gage and pressure gage on a steam boiler or the thermometer and pressure gage on a water boiler are visible through an opening or openings at all times.

HG-630 ELECTRIC WIRING

HG-631 ELECTRICAL CODE COMPLIANCE

All field wiring for controls, heat generating apparatus, and other appurtenances necessary for the operation of the boiler or boilers should be installed in accordance with the provisions of the National Electric Code and/or should comply with the applicable local electrical codes. All boilers supplied with factory mounted and wired controls, heat generating apparatus, and other appurtenances necessary for the operation of the boilers should be installed in accordance with the provisions of the nationally recognized standards such as listed in footnote 2 of HG-640.

HG-632 TYPE CIRCUITRY TO BE USED

Whether field or factory wired, the control circuitry shall be positively grounded and shall operate at 150 V or less. One of the two following systems may be employed to provide the control circuit.

(a) Two-Wire Nominal 120 V System With Separate Equipment Ground Conductor

(1) This system shall consist of the line, neutral, and equipment ground conductors. The control panel frame and associated control circuitry metallic enclosures shall be electrically continuous and be bonded to the equipment ground conductor.

(2) The equipment ground conductor and the neutral conductor shall be bonded together at their origin in the electrical system as required by the NEC.[1]

(3) The line side of the control circuit shall be provided with a time delay fuse sized as small as practicable.

(b) Two-Wire Nominal 120 V System Obtained By Using An Isolation Transformer

(1) The two-wire control circuit shall be obtained from the secondary side of an isolation transformer. One wire from the secondary of this transformer shall be electrically continuous and shall be bonded to a convenient cold water pipe. All metallic enclosures of control components shall be securely bonded to this ground control circuit wire. The primary side of the isolation transformer will normally be a two-wire source with a potential of 230 V or 208 V or 440 V.

1 See Appendix H.

(2) Both sides of the two-wire primary circuit shall be fused. The hot leg on the load side of the isolation transformer shall be fused as small as practicable and in no case fused above the rating of the isolation transformer.

HG-633 LIMIT CONTROLS

Limit controls shall be wired on the hot or line side of the control circuit.

HG-634 SHUTDOWN SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

A manually operated remote heating plant shutdown switch or circuit breaker should be located just outside the boiler room door and marked for easy identification. Consideration should also be given to the type and location of the switch to safeguard against tampering. If the boiler room door is on the building exterior the switch should be located just inside the door. If there is more than one door to the boiler room, there should be a switch located at each door.

(a) For atmospheric-gas burners, and oil burners where a fan is on a common shaft with the oil pump, the complete burner and controls should be shut off.

(b) For power burners with detached auxiliaries, only the fuel input supply to the firebox need be shut off.

[98]

HG-640 CONTROLS AND HEAT GENERATING APPARATUS

(a) Oil and gas-fired and electrically heated boilers should be equipped with suitable primary (flame safeguard) safety

controls, safety limit switches, and burners or electric elements as required by a nationally recognized standard.[2]

(b) The symbol of the certifying organization[3] which has investigated such equipment as having complied with a nationally recognized standard shall be affixed to the equipment and shall be considered as evidence that the unit was manufactured in accordance with that standard.

[98]

2 Examples of these nationally recognized standards are:

American National Standards Z21.13, Gas Fired Low Pressure Steam and Hot Water Boiler.

American National Standards Z21.17, Domestic Gas Conversion Burners.

Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., UL 296, Standards for Safety, Oil Burners.

Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., UL 726, Standards for Safety, Oil Fired Boiler Assemblies.

Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., UL 795, Standards for Safety, Commercial-Industrial Gas-Heating Equipment.

Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., UL 834, Electric Heating, Water Supply and Power Boilers.

3 A certifying organization is one that provides uniform testing, examination, and listing procedures under established, nationally recognized standards and that is acceptable to the authorities having jurisdiction.

HG-700 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS, ALL BOILERS

HG-701 MOUNTING SAFETY AND SAFETY RELIEF VALVES

HG-701.1 Permissible Mounting.

Safety valves and safety relief valves shall be located in the top or side[1] of the boiler. They shall be connected directly to a tapped or flanged opening in the boiler, to a fitting connected to the boiler by a short nipple, to a Y-base, or to a valveless header connecting steam or water outlets on the same boiler. Coil or header type boilers shall have the safety valve or safety relief valve located on the steam or hot water outlet end. Safety valves and safety relief valves shall be installed with their spindles vertical. The opening or connection between the boiler and any safety valve or safety relief valve shall have at least the area of the valve inlet.

HG-701.2 Requirements for Common Connections for Two or More Valves

(a) When a boiler is fitted with two or more safety valves on one connection, this connection shall have a cross-sectional area not less than the combined areas of inlet connections of all the safety valves with which it connects.

(b) When a Y-base is used, the inlet area shall be not less than the combined outlet areas. When the size of the boiler requires a safety valve or safety relief valve larger than $4^{1}/_{2}$ in. (115 mm) in diameter, two or more valves having the required combined capacity shall be used. When two or more valves are used on a boiler, they may be single, directly attached, or mounted on a Y-base.

HG-701.3 Threaded Connections.

A threaded connection may be used for attaching a valve.

1 The top or side of the boiler shall mean the highest practicable part of the boiler proper but in no case shall the safety valve be located below the normal operating level and in no case shall the safety relief valve be located below the lowest permissible water level.

[SEC IV PT HG A-7] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:24 2003)

HG-701.4 Prohibited Mountings.

Safety and safety relief valves shall not be connected to an internal pipe in the boiler.

HG-701.5 Use of Shutoff Valves Prohibited.

No shutoff of any description shall be placed between the safety or safety relief valve and the boiler, or on discharge pipes between such valves and the atmosphere.

HG-701.6 Safety and Safety Relief Valve Discharge Piping

(a) A discharge pipe shall be used. Its internal cross-sectional area shall be not less than the full area of the valve outlet or of the total of the valve outlets discharging thereinto and shall be as short and straight as possible and so arranged as to avoid undue stress on the valve or valves. A union may be installed in the discharge piping close to the valve outlet. When an elbow is placed on a safety or safety relief valve discharge pipe, it shall be located close to the valve outlet downstream of the union.

(b) The discharge from safety or safety relief valves shall be so arranged that there will be no danger of scalding attendants. The safety or safety relief valve discharge shall be piped away from the boiler to the point of discharge, and there shall be provisions made for properly draining the piping. The size and arrangement of discharge piping shall be independent of other discharge piping and shall be such that any pressure that may exist or develop will not reduce the relieving capacity of the relieving devices below that required to protect the boiler.

HG-701.7 Temperature and Pressure Safety Relief Valves.

Hot water heating or supply boilers limited to a water temperature of 210°F (99°C) may have one or more officially rated temperature and pressure safety relief valves installed. The requirements of HG-701.1 through HG-701.6 shall be met, except as follows:

(a) A Y-type fitting shall not be used.

(b) If additional valves are used they shall be temperature and pressure safety relief valves.

(c) When the temperature and pressure safety relief valve is mounted directly on the boiler with no more than 4 in. (102 mm) maximum interconnecting piping, the valve may be installed in the horizontal position with the outlet pointed down.

HG-703 PIPING

HG-703.1 Provisions for Expansion and Contraction.

Provisions shall be made for the expansion and contraction of steam and hot water mains connected to boilers by providing substantial anchorage at suitable points and by providing swing joints when boilers are installed in batteries, so there will be no undue strain transmitted to the boilers. See Figs. HG-703.1(a), HG-703.1(b), and HG-703.2 for typical schematic arrangements of piping incorporating strain absorbing joints for steam and hot water heating boilers.

HG-703.2 Return Pipe Connections

(a) The return pipe connections of each boiler supplying a gravity return steam heating system shall be so arranged as to form a loop substantially as shown in Fig. HG-703.1 so that the water in each boiler cannot be forced out below the safe water level.

(b) For hand-fired boilers with a normal grate line, the recommended pipe sizes detailed as "A" in Fig. HG-703.1 are NPS $1^1/_2$ (DN 40) for 4 sq ft (0.37 m^2) or less firebox area at the normal grate line, NPS $2^1/_2$ (DN 65) for areas more than 4 sq ft (0.37 m^2) up to 14.9 sq ft (1.4 m^2), and NPS 4 (DN 100) for 15 sq ft (1.4 m^2) or more.

(c) For automatically fired boilers that do not have a normal grate line, the recommended pipe sizes detailed as "A" in Fig. HG-703.1 are NPS $1^1/_2$ (DN 40) for boilers with minimum safety valve relieving capacity 250 lb/hr (113 kg/hr) or less, NPS $2^1/$ (DN 65) for boilers with minimum safety valve relieving capacity from 251 lb/hr (114 kg/hr) to 2000 lb/hr

[SEC IV PT HG A-7] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:24 2003)

(987 kg/hr), inclusive, and NPS 4 (DN 100) for boilers with more than 2000 lb/hr (987 kg/hr) minimum safety valve relieving capacity.

(d) Provision shall be made for cleaning the interior of the return piping at or close to the boiler. Washout openings may be used for return pipe connections and the washout plug placed in a tee or a cross so that the plug is directly opposite and as close as possible to the opening in the boiler.

HG-705 FEEDWATER AND MAKEUP WATER CONNECTIONS

(a) Steam Boilers. Feedwater or water treatment shall be introduced into a boiler through the return piping system. Alternatively, feedwater or water treatment may be introduced through an independent connection. The water flow from the independent connection shall not discharge directly against parts of the boiler exposed to direct radiant heat from the fire. Feedwater or water treatment shall not be introduced through openings or connections provided for inspection or cleaning, safety valve, water column, water gage glass, or pressure gage. The feedwater pipe shall be provided with a check valve near the boiler and a stop valve or cock between the check valve and the boiler or between the check valve and the return pipe system.

(b) Hot Water Boilers. Makeup water may be introduced into a boiler through the piping system or through an independent connection. The water flow from the independent connection shall not discharge directly against parts of the boiler exposed to direct radiant heat from the fire. Makeup water shall not be introduced through openings or connections provided exclusively for inspection or cleaning, safety relief valve, pressure gage, or temperature gage. The makeup water pipe shall be provided with a check valve near the boiler and a stop valve or cock between the check valve and the boiler or between the check valve and the piping system.

HG-707 OIL HEATERS

(a) A heater for oil or other liquid harmful to boiler operation shall not be installed directly in the steam or water space within a boiler.

(b) Where an external type heater for such service is used, means shall be provided to prevent the introduction into the boiler of oil or other liquid harmful to boiler operation.

HG-709 PROVISIONS FOR THERMAL EXPANSION IN HOT WATER SYSTEMS

All hot water heating systems incorporating hot water tanks or fluid relief columns shall be so installed as to prevent freezing under normal operating conditions.

HG-709.1 Heating Systems With Open Expansion Tank.

An indoor overflow from the upper portion of the expansion tank shall be provided in addition to an open vent, the indoor overflow to be carried within the building to a suitable plumbing fixture or the basement.

HG-709.2 Closed Heating Systems.

An expansion tank shall be installed that will be consistent with the

volume and capacity of the system. If the system is designed for a working pressure of 30 psi (207 kPa) or less, the tank shall be suitably designed for a minimum hydrostatic test pressure of 75 psi (517 kPa). Expansion tanks for systems designed to operate above 30 psi (207 kPa) shall be constructed in accordance with Section VIII, Division 1. Provisions shall be made for draining the tank without emptying the system, except for prepressurized tanks.

[SEC IV PT HG A-7] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:25 2003)

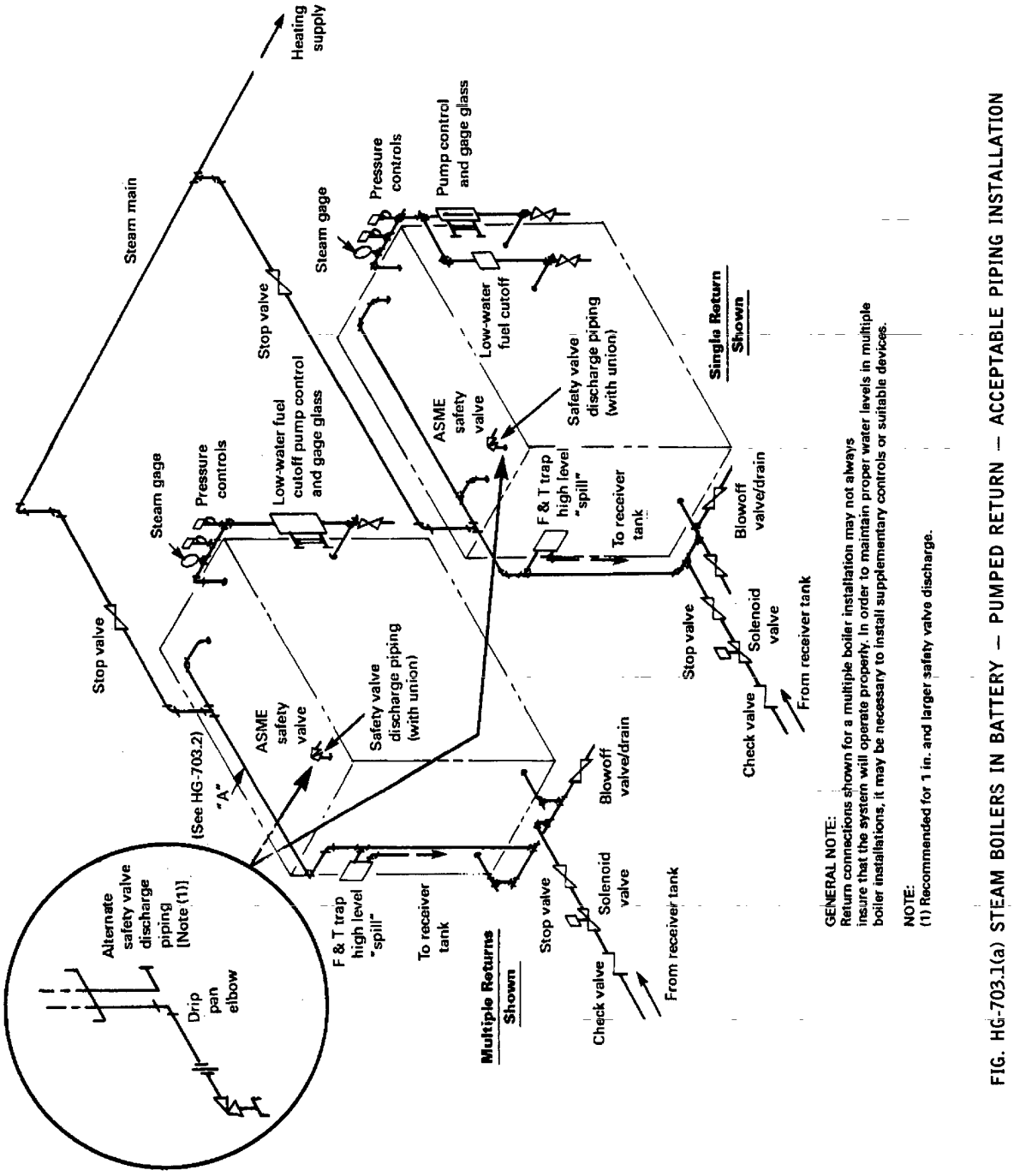


FIG. HG-703.1(a) STEAM BOILERS IN BATTERY — PUMPED RETURN — ACCEPTABLE PIPING INSTALLATION

FIG. HG-703.1(a) STEAM BOILERS IN BATTERY - PUMPED RETURN - ACCEPTABLE PIPING INSTALLATION

[SEC IV PT HG A-7] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:27 2003)

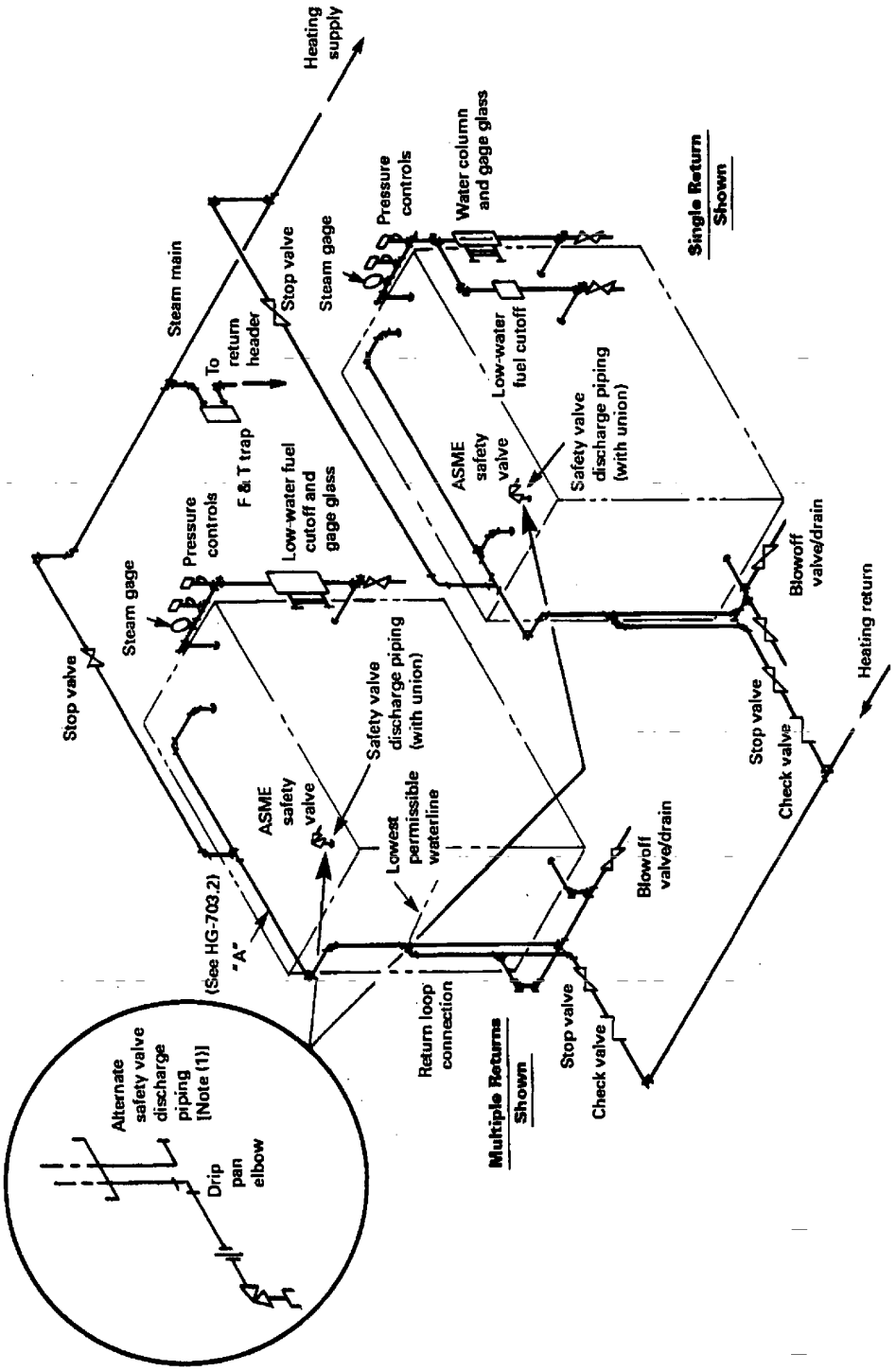
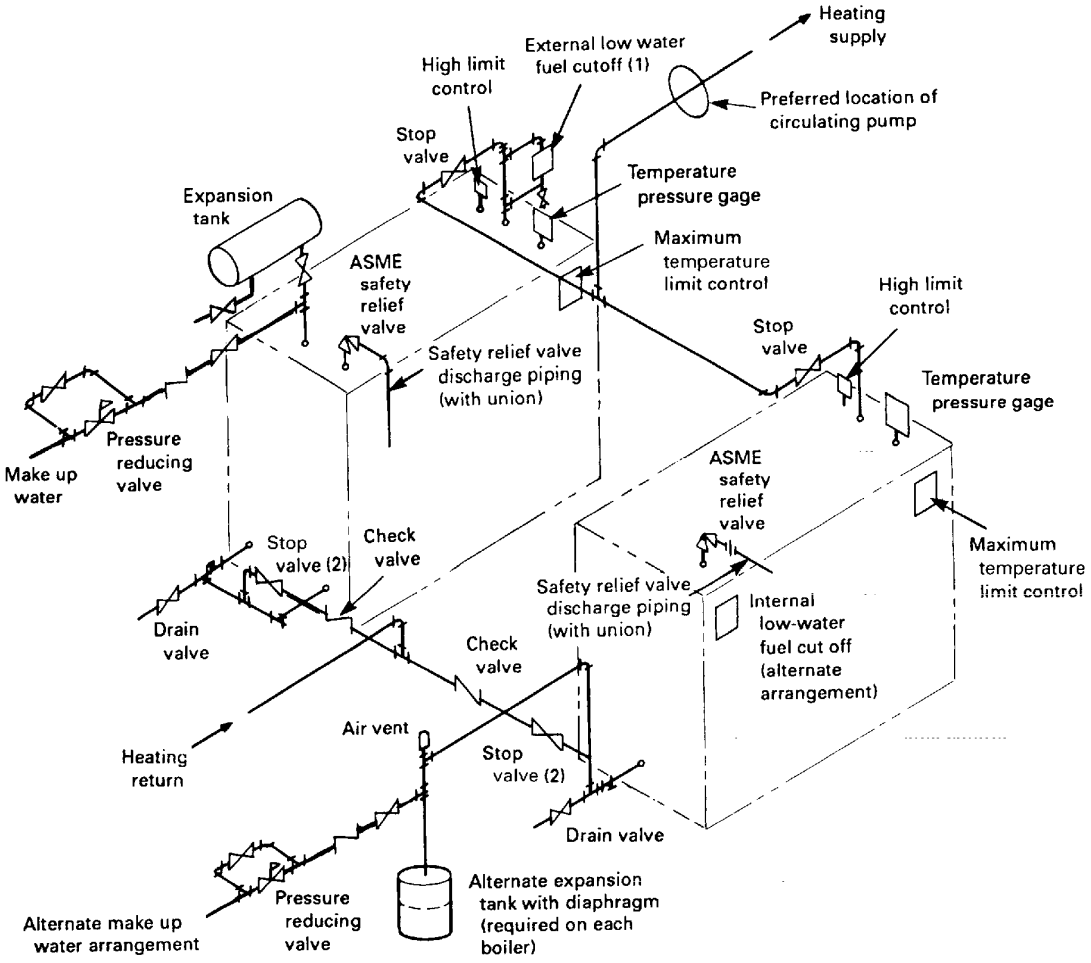


FIG. HG-703.1(b) STEAM BOILERS IN BATTERY — GRAVITY RETURN — ACCEPTABLE PIPING INSTALLATION

FIG. HG-703.1(b) STEAM BOILERS IN BATTERY - GRAVITY RETURN - ACCEPTABLE PIPING INSTALLATION

[SEC IV PT HG A-7] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:28 2003)



GENERAL NOTES:

(1) Recommended control. See HG-614. Acceptable shutoff valves or cocks in the connecting piping may be installed for convenience of control testing and/or service.

(2) The common return header stop valves may be located on either side of the check valves.

FIG. HG-703.2 HOT WATER BOILERS IN BATTERY — ACCEPTABLE PIPING INSTALLATION

FIG. HG-703.2 HOT WATER BOILERS IN BATTERY - ACCEPTABLE PIPING INSTALLATION

[SEC IV PT HG A-7] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:28 2003)

TABLE HG-709.1
EXPANSION TANK CAPACITIES
FOR GRAVITY HOT WATER SYSTEMS
(Based on two-pipe system with average operating water temperature 170°F, using cast iron column radiation with heat emission rate 150 Btu/hr sq ft equivalent direction radiation)

Installed Equivalent Direct Radiation, sq ft [Note (1)]	Tank Capacity, gal
Up to 350	18
Up to 450	21
Up to 650	24
Up to 900	30
Up to 1100	35
Up to 1400	40
Up to 1600	2–30
Up to 1800	2–30
Up to 2000	2–35
Up to 2400	2–40

NOTE:

(1) For systems with more than 2400 sq ft of installed equivalent direct water radiation, the required capacity of the cushion tank shall be increased on the basis of 1 gal tank capacity/33 sq ft of additional equivalent direct radiation.

TABLE HG-709.1 EXPANSION TANK CAPACITIES FOR GRAVITY HOT WATER SYSTEMS

The minimum capacity of the closed type expansion tank may be determined from Tables HG-709.1 and HG-709.2 or

[SEC IV PT HG A-7] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:28 2003)

from the following formula where the necessary information is available:

$$V_t = [(0.00041T - 0.0466)V_s]/[(P_d/P_f) - (P_d/P_o)]$$

where

V_t = minimum volume of tanks, gal

V_s = volume of system, not including tanks, gal

T = average operating temperature, °F

P_a = atmospheric pressure, psia

P_f = fill pressure, psia

P_o = maximum operating pressure, psia

HG-709.3 Hot Water Supply Systems.

If a system is equipped with a check valve or pressure reducing valve in the cold water inlet line, consideration should be given to the installation of an airtight expansion tank or other suitable air cushion. Otherwise, due to the thermal expansion of the water, the safety relief valve may lift periodically. If an expansion tank is provided, it shall be constructed in accordance with Section VIII, Division 1. Except for prepressurized tanks, which should be installed on the cold water side, provisions shall be made for draining the tank without emptying the system. See Fig. HLW-809.1 for a typical acceptable installation.

TABLE HG-709.2
EXPANSION TANK CAPACITIES
FOR FORCED HOT WATER SYSTEMS[1]
(Based on average operating water temperature 195°F, fill pressure 12 psig, and maximum operating pressure 30 psig)

System Volume, gal	Tank Capacities, gal	
	Prepressurized Diaphragm Type	Nonpressurized Type
100	9	15
200	17	30
300	25	45
400	33	60
500	42	75
1000	83	150
2000	165	300

NOTE:

(1) System volume includes volume of water in boiler, radiation, and piping, not including the expansion tank. Expansion tank capacities are based on an acceptance factor of 0.4027 for prepressurized types and 0.222 for nonprepressurized types. A procedure for estimating system volume and determining expansion tank sizes for other design conditions may be found in Chapter 13 of the 1987 Systems and Applications Volume of the ASHRAE Handbook.

[SEC IV PT HG A-7] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:28 2003)

TABLE HG-709.2 EXPANSION TANK CAPACITIES FOR FORCED HOT WATER SYSTEMS[1]

HG-710 STOP VALVES

HG-710.1 For Single Steam Boilers.

When a stop valve is used in the supply pipe connection of a single steam boiler, there shall be one used in the return pipe connection.

HG-710.2 For Single Hot Water Heating Boilers

(a) Stop valves shall be located at an accessible point in the supply and return pipe connections as near the boiler nozzle as is convenient and practicable, of a single hot water heating boiler installation to permit draining the boiler without emptying the system.

(b) When the boiler is located above the system and can be drained without draining the system, stop valves may be eliminated.

HG-710.3 For Multiple Boiler Installations.

A stop valve shall be used in each supply and return pipe connection of two or more boilers connected to a common system. See Figs. HG-703.1 and HG-703.2.

HG-710.4 Type of Stop Valve(s)

(a) All valves or cocks shall conform with the applicable portions of HF-203 and may be ferrous or nonferrous.

(b) The minimum pressure rating of all valves or cocks shall be at least equal to the pressure stamped upon the boiler, and the temperature rating of such valves or cocks, including all internal components, shall be not less than 250°F (121°C).

(c) Valves or cocks shall be flanged, threaded or have ends suitable for welding or brazing.

(d) All valves or cocks with stems or spindles shall have adjustable pressure type packing glands and, in addition, all plug type cocks shall be equipped with a guard or gland. The plug or other operating mechanism shall be distinctly marked in line with the passage to indicate whether it is opened or closed.

(e) All valves or cocks shall have tight closure when under boiler hydrostatic test pressure.

HG-710.5 Identification of Stop Valves by Tags.

When stop valves are used, they shall be properly designated substantially as follows by tags of metal or other durable material fastened to them:

Supply Valve - Number ( )

Do Not Close Without Also

Closing Return Valve -

Number ( )

Return Valve - Number ( )

Do Not Close Without Also

Closing Supply Valve -

Number ( )

HG-715 BOTTOM BLOWOFF AND DRAIN VALVES

[SEC IV PT HG A-7] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:29 2003)

(a) Bottom Blowoff Valve. Each steam boiler shall have a bottom blowoff connection fitted with a valve or cock connected to the lowest water space practicable with a minimum size as shown in Table HG-715. The discharge piping shall be full size to the point of discharge.

(b) Boilers having a capacity of 25 gal (95 l) or less are exempt from the above requirements, except that they must have a 3/4 in. NPS (DN 20) minimum drain valve.

TABLE HG-715
SIZE OF BOTTOM BLOWOFF PIPING, VALVES, AND COCKS

Minimum Required Safety Valve Capacity, lb of steam/hr [Note (1)]	Blowoff Piping, Valves, and Cocks Size, in. (min.)
Up to 500	3/4
501 to 1250	1
1251 to 2500	1 1/4
2501 to 6000	1 1/2
6001 and larger	2

NOTE:
(1) To determine the discharge capacity of safety relief valves in terms of Btu, the relieving capacity in lb of steam/hr is multiplied by 1000.

TABLE HG-715 SIZE OF BOTTOM BLOWOFF PIPING, VALVES, AND COCKS

(c) Drain Valve. Each steam or hot water boiler shall have one or more drain connections, fitted with valves or cocks connecting to the lowest water containing spaces. The minimum size of the drain piping, valves, and cocks shall be 3/4 in. (19 mm). The discharge piping shall be full size to the point of discharge. When the blowoff connection is located at the lowest water containing space, a separate drain connection is not required.

(d) Minimum Pressure Rating. The minimum pressure rating of valves and cocks used for blowoff or drain purposes shall be at least equal to the pressure stamped on the boiler but in no case less than 30 psi (207 kPa). The temperature rating of such valves and cocks shall not be less than 250°F (121°C).

HG-716 MODULAR BOILERS

(a) Individual Modules

(1) The individual modules shall comply with all the requirements of Part HG, except as specified in HG-607, HG-615,

and this paragraph. The individual modules shall be limited to a maximum input of 400,000 Btuh (gas), 3 gal/hr (11 l/hr) (oil), or 115 kW (electricity).

(2) Each module of a steam heating boiler shall be equipped with:

(a) safety valve, see HG-701

(b) blowoff valve, see HG-715(a)

(c) drain valve, see HG-715(c)

(3) Each module of a modular hot water heating boiler shall be equipped with:

(a) safety relief valve, see HG-701

(b) drain valve, see HG-715(c)

(b) Assembled Modular Boilers

(1) The individual modules shall be manifolded together at the job-site without any intervening valves. The header or manifold piping is field piping and is exempt from Article 2, Part HG, HF, HB, or HC.

(2) The assembled modular steam heating boiler shall also be equipped with:

(a) feedwater connection, see HG-705(a)

(b) return pipe connection, see HG-703.2

(3) The assembled modular hot water heating boiler shall also be equipped with:

(a) makeup water connection, see HG-705(b)

(b) provision for thermal expansion, see HG-709

(c) stop valves, see HG-710.2

HG-720 SETTING

Boilers of wrought materials of the wet-bottom type having an external width of over 36 in. (914 mm) shall have not less than 12 in. (305 mm) between the bottom of the boiler and the floorline, with access for inspection. When the width is 36 in. (914 mm) or less, the distance between the bottom of the boiler and the floorline shall be not less than 6 in. (152 mm), except that, when any part of the wet bottom is not farther from an outer edge than 12 in. (305 mm), this distance shall be not less than 4 in. (102 mm).

HG-725 METHODS OF SUPPORT

HG-725.1 Loadings

(a) The design and attachment of lugs, hangers, saddles, and other supports shall take into account the stresses due to hydrostatic head in determining the minimum thicknesses required. Additional stresses imposed by effects other than working pressure or static head which increase the average stress by more than 10% of the allowable working stress shall also be taken into account. These effects include the weight of the component and its contents, and the method of support.

(b) In applying the requirements of (a) above, localized stresses due to concentrated support loads, temperature changes, and restraint against dilation of the boiler due to pressure shall be provided for. Lugs, hangers, brackets, saddles, and pads shall conform satisfactorily to the shape of the shell or surface to which they are attached or are in contact.

HG-725.2 Boilers Over 72 in. (1800 mm) in Diameter.

A horizontal-return tubular boiler over 72 in. (1800 mm) in diameter shall be supported from steel hangers by the outside-suspension type of setting, independent of the furnace wall. The hangers shall be so designed that the load is properly distributed.

[SEC IV PT HG A-7] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:29 2003)

HG-725.3 Boilers Over 54 in. (1400 mm) up to 72 in. (1800 mm) in Diameter.

A horizontal-return tubular boiler over 54 in. (1400 mm) and up to and including 72 in. (1800 mm) in diameter shall be supported by the outside-suspension type of setting, or at four points by not less than eight steel brackets set in pairs, the brackets of each pair to be spaced not over 2 in. (51 mm) apart and the load to be equalized between them. [See Fig. HG-725(a).]

HG-725.4 Boilers up to 54 in. (1400 mm) in Diameter.

A horizontal-return tubular boiler up to and including 54 in. (1400 mm) in diameter shall be supported by the outside-suspension type of setting, or by not less than two steel brackets on each side.

HG-725.5 Supporting Members.

If the boiler is supported by structural steel work, the steel supporting members shall be so located or insulated that the heat from the furnace can not impair their strength.

HG-725.6 Lugs or Hangers.

Lugs, hangers, or brackets made of materials in accordance with the Code requirements may be attached by fusion welding provided they are attached by fillet welds along the entire periphery or contact edges. Figure HG-725(b) illustrates an acceptable design of hanger bracket with the additional requirement that the center pin be located at the vertical center line over the center of the welded contact surface. The bracket plates shall be spaced at least $2^{1}/_{2}$ in. (64 mm) apart, but this dimension shall be increased if necessary to permit access for the welding operation. The stresses computed by dividing the total load on each lug, hanger, or bracket, by the minimum cross-sectional area of the weld shall not exceed 2800 psi (19 MPa). Where it is impractical to attach lugs, hangers, or brackets by welding, studs with not less than 10 threads/in. (approx. 4 threads/cm) may be used. In computing the shearing stresses, the root area at the bottom of the thread shall be used. The shearing and crushing stresses on studs shall not exceed 8% of the strength given in Table HF-300.1 for bolting materials.

HG-725.7 Settings.

Boilers of wrought materials of the wet-bottom type having an external width of over 36 in. (914 mm) shall be supported so as to have a minimum clearance of 12 in. (305 mm), between the bottom of the boiler and the floor, to facilitate inspection. When the width is 36 in. (914 mm) or less, the clearance between the bottom of the boiler and the floorline shall

be not less than 6 in. (152 mm), except when any part of the wet bottom is not farther from the outer edge than 12 in. (305 mm). This clearance shall be not less than 4 in. (102 mm). Boiler insulation, saddles, or other supports shall be arranged so that inspection openings are readily accessible.

[SEC IV PT HG A-7] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:30 2003)

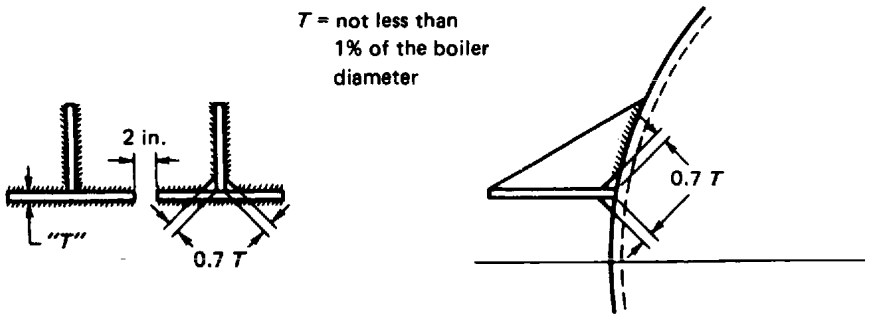


FIG. HG-725(a) SPACING AND WELD DETAILS FOR SUPPORTING LUGS IN PAIRS ON HORIZONTAL-RETURN TUBULAR BOILER

FIG. HG-725(a) SPACING AND WELD DETAILS FOR SUPPORTING LUGS IN PAIRS ON HORIZONTAL-RETURN TUBULAR BOILER

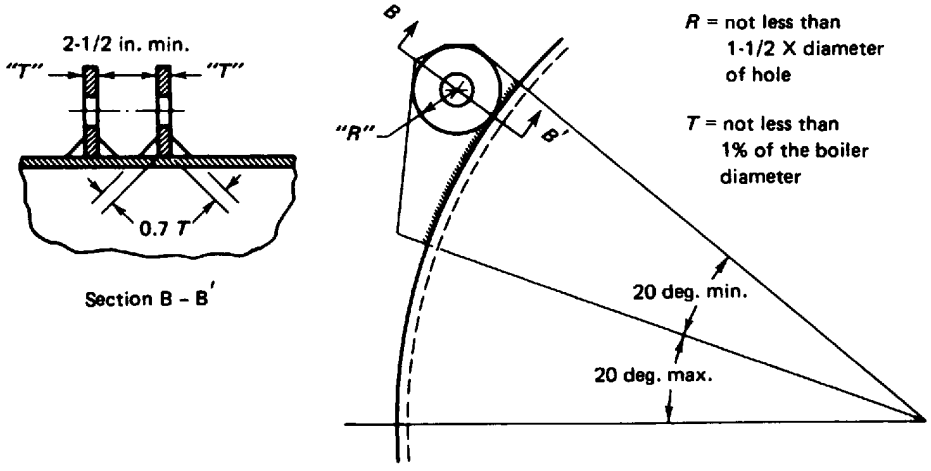


FIG. HG-725(b) WELDED BRACKET CONNECTION FOR HORIZONTAL-RETURN TUBULAR BOILER

FIG. HG-725(b) WELDED BRACKET CONNECTION FOR HORIZONTAL-RETURN TUBULAR BOILER

[SEC IV PT HF A-1] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:30 2003)

HF-100 SCOPE

The rules in Part HF are applicable to heating boilers that are constructed primarily of wrought materials, and shall be used in conjunction with general requirements of Part HG of this Section.

HF-200 GENERAL MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

Materials subject to stress due to pressure shall conform to one of the specifications given in Section II and shall be limited to those listed in Tables HF-300.1 and HF-300.2.

HF-201 PLATE

(a) Plate used in the construction of pressure containing parts shall conform to one of the specifications given in Section II for which allowable stress values are given in Tables HF-300.1 and HF-300.2 except as otherwise provided in HF-203 and HF-205.

(b) Stainless Type 304, 304L, 316, or 316L plates of SA-240 for which allowable stress values are given in Table HF-300.1 may be used in the construction of hot water heating boilers provided the following are met.

(1) The water temperature shall not exceed 210°F (99°C).

(2) The material shall be fully annealed.

(c) For pressure retaining plate material, a material test report is required to verify that the chemical and mechanical properties are within the permissible range listed in Section II.

HF-202 RODS, BARS, AND SHAPES

(a) Rods, bars, and shapes may be used in boiler construction for pressure parts such as flange rings, stiffening rings, braces, frames for reinforced openings, stays and staybolts, and similar parts. Rods, bars, and shapes shall conform to one of the specifications in Section II and shall be limited to those listed in Tables HF-300.1 and HF-300.2 except as otherwise provided in HF-203 and HF-205.

(b) Rods, bars, and shapes conforming to Section II that are of structural quality may be used for parts not directly subjected to pressure, and materials not identified by certification may be used for nonpressure parts such as skirts, baffles, and supports, provided it is demonstrated that the material is of weldable quality.

HF-203 PREFABRICATED OR PREFORMED PRESSURE PARTS

Prefabricated or preformed pressure parts for boilers which are subject to allowable working stresses due to internal or external pressure in the boilers and which are furnished by other than the shop of the manufacturer responsible for the

[SEC IV PT HF A-2] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:30 2003)

external pressure in the boilers and which are furnished by other than the shop of the manufacturer responsible for the completed boilers shall conform to all applicable requirements of the Code as related to a completed boiler, including inspection in the shop of the parts manufacturer and the furnishing of Partial Data Reports except as permitted in HF-203.1, HF-203.2, and HF-203.3.

HF-203.1 Cast, Forged, Rolled, or Die Formed Standard Pressure Parts

(a) Pressure parts such as pipe fittings, valves, flanges, nozzles, welding necks, welding caps, manhole frames and covers, and casings of pumps that are part of a boiler circulating system that are wholly formed by casting, forging, or die forming shall not require inspection, mill test reports or Partial Data Reports; however, they shall be made of materials permitted under Section II or in a Code-accepted standard (such as ANSI) covering the particular type of pressure part. Such parts shall be marked with the name or trademark of the manufacturer and such other markings as are required by the several standards. Such markings shall be considered as the manufacturer's certification that the product complies with the material specifications and standards indicated and is suitable for service at the rating indicated. The intent of the paragraph will have been met if, in lieu of the detailed marking on the part itself, the parts described herein have been marked in any permanent or temporary manner that will serve to identify the part with the manufacturer's written listing of the particular items and such listings are available for examination by the Inspector.

(b) Parts of small size falling within this category for which it is difficult or impossible to obtain identified material or which may be stocked and for which mill test reports or certificates cannot be economically

obtained and are not customarily furnished, and which do not appreciably affect the safety of the vessel, may be used for relatively unimportant parts or parts stressed to not more than 50% of the stress value permitted by the Code provided they are suitable for the purpose intended and are accepted by the Inspector [see HF-203.1(a)]. The manufacturer of the completed vessel shall satisfy himself that the part is suitable for the design conditions specified for the completed vessel.

HF-203.2 Cast, Forged, Rolled, or Die Formed Nonstandard Pressure Parts.

Pressure parts such as shells, heads, removable cover plates, and pipe coils which are attached to other wrought parts and which are wholly formed by casting, forging, rolling, or die forming may be supplied basically as materials. All such parts shall be made of materials permitted under Section II and the manufacturer of the part shall furnish mill test reports or other acceptable evidence to that effect. Such parts shall be marked with the name or trademark of the manufacturer and with such other markings as will serve to identify the particular parts with accompanying material identification. The manufacturer of the completed boiler shall satisfy himself that the part is suitable for the design conditions specified for the completed boiler.

HF-203.3 Welded Standard Pressure Parts for Use Other Than the Shell of a Boiler[1]

(a) Pressure parts such as pipe fittings, nozzles, welding necks, welding caps, valves, and flanges that are fabricated by one of the welding processes recognized by the Code shall not require inspection, mill test reports, or Partial Data Reports provided:

(1) all such parts are made of materials permitted under Section II or in a Code-accepted standard;

(2) if arc or gas welded, the welding complies with the rules of this Section.

(b) Such parts shall be marked with the name or trademark of the manufacturer and with such other markings as will serve to identify the materials of which the parts are made. Such markings shall be considered as the manufacturer's certification that the product complies with HF-203.3(a)(1). A statement by the parts manufacturer that all welding complies with Code requirements shall be accepted as evidence that the product complies with HF-203.3(a)(2).

1 Arc and gas welded pipe for use as the shell of a boiler shall be subject to the same requirements as a shell fabricated from plate, including inspection at the point of manufacture and Partial Data Reports.

HF-204 PIPE AND TUBES

Pipe and tubes of seamless or welded construction shall conform to one of the specifications given in Section II for which allowable stress values are given in Tables HF-300.1and HF-300.2 except as otherwise provided in HF-203 and HF-205

[SEC IV PT HF A-2] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:30 2003)

when used in the construction of pressure containing parts.

HF-204.1 Integrally Finned Tubes.

Integrally finned tubes may be made from tubes that conform in every respect with one of the specifications given in Section II except that the pressure test is not required for nonferrous tubes. These tubes may be used under the following conditions.

(a) The tubes after finning shall have a temper or condition which conforms to one of those provided in the governing specifications.

(b) The maximum allowable stress value for the finned tube shall be that given in Tables HF-300.1 and HF-300.2 for the tube before finning, except as permitted in (c) below.

(c) The maximum allowable stress value for a temper or condition that has a higher stress value than that of the tube before finning may be used provided that qualifying tensile tests demonstrate that such a temper or condition is obtained. The stress values used shall not exceed those shown in Tables HF-300.1 and HF-300.2 for the temper or condition involved. The qualifying tensile tests shall be made on specimens of finned tube from which the fins have been removed by machining.

(d) The maximum allowable internal or external design pressure of the tube shall be based on either the minimum wall thickness of the finned section or of the unfinned section, whichever is smaller.

(e) In addition to the tests required by the governing specifications (except for pressure tests for nonferrous tubes), each tube after finning shall withstand without evidence of leakage an internal pneumatic test of not less than 250 psi (1720 kPa) for 5 sec. The test method used shall permit easy visual detection of any leakage, such as immersion of the tube under water or a pressure differential method.[2]

HF-204.2 Stainless Tubes.

Tubes of SA-249 and SA-213 for which allowable stress values are given in Table HF-300.1 may be used in the construction of hot water heating boilers provided the following conditions are met.

2 The pressure differential method is described in Materials and Research Standards, Vol. 1, No. 7, July 1961, published by ASTM.

(a) The total internal water volume of watertube boilers with Grade 304, 304L, 316, or 316L tubes shall be limited to not over 578 cu in. [$2^1/_2$ gal (9.5 l)]. The diameter of these tubes shall be limited to $1^1/_2$ in. (38 mm) O.D.

(b) The total internal water volume of firetube boilers with Grade 304, 304L, 316, or 316L tubes shall be limited to not over 80 gal (302 l). The diameter of these tubes shall be limited to a maximum of 4 in. (102 mm) O.D.

(c) All tubes subject to internal pressure shall have a minimum thickness of 0.039 in. (0.99 mm). Any tubes subject to external pressure shall have a minimum thickness of 0.039 in. (0.99 mm) for outside diameters up to and including $^5/_8$ in. (16 mm), 0.062 in. (1.80 mm) for outside diameters over $^5/_8$ in. (16 mm) up to and including $1^1/_2$ in. (38 mm), and 0.078 in. (1.98 mm) for outside diameters over $1^1/_2$ in. (38 mm) up to and including 4 in. (102 mm).

(d) The water temperature shall not exceed 210°F (99°C).

(e) The material shall be fully annealed.

(f) Nonpressure part attachments that have essentially no load carrying function, such as extended heating surfaces, shall be joined to pressure parts by any welding process performed in accordance with a Welding Procedure Specification (in compliance with Section IX as far as applicable), except that for automatic welding processes, procedure and performance qualification testing is not required.

(g) Heat input during welding of fins of the tubes shall be kept low to reduce heat effect on the water side surfaces of the tubes.

(h) Type 304, 304L, 316, or 316L tubes, fittings, or headers, joined by welding, shall use the GTAW or GMAW process.

[SEC IV PT HF A-2] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:31 2003)

(i) Welding or brazing shall be qualified in accordance with Section IX.

HF-205 MATERIAL NOT FULLY IDENTIFIED

Material that has lost its identity with a permitted specification may be accepted provided that it satisfies the conditions given in either HF-205.1 or HF-205.2.

HF-205.1 Acceptance by Authentic Test Record and Marking.

Each piece shall be shown to have chemical requirements and mechanical properties within the permissible range of the permitted specification in Section II by an authentic test record and by marking identifying it with that record. When the permitted specification requires other tests or more restrictive tests than those of the specification covered by the authentic test record, the material shall be subjected to sufficient additional tests to satisfy the Inspector that it complies with the permitted specification.

HF-205.2 Acceptance by Testing

(a) Plate. The chemical check analyses and mechanical tests of plates shall be made as required in the permitted specification with the following modifications. The carbon and manganese contents shall be determined in all check analyses. The Inspector shall decide whether these contents are acceptable when the permitted specification does not specify carbon and manganese limits. When the direction of rolling is not definitely known, two tension specimens shall be taken at right angles to each other from a corner of each plate, and two bend specimens shall be taken from the middle of adjacent sides of each plate. One tension specimen and both bend specimens shall meet the permitted specification requirements.

(b) Tubes and Pipe. Each length of tube or pipe shall be subjected to a chemical check analysis and sufficient mechanical tests to satisfy the Inspector that all the material is identified with a given heat or heat treatment lot and that the material complies with the chemical and mechanical requirements of the permitted specification. Material specified as suitable for welding, cold bending, close coiling, and similar operations shall be given sufficient check tests to satisfy the Inspector that it is suitable for the fabrication procedure to be used.

(c) Rods, Bars, and Shapes. Each length of rods shall be subjected to a chemical check analysis and sufficient mechanical tests to satisfy the Inspector that all the material is identified with a given heat or heat treatment lot, and that the material complies with the chemical and mechanical requirements of the permitted specification. Material specified as suitable for welding, cold bending, and similar operations shall be given check tests to satisfy the Inspector that it is suitable for the fabrication procedure to be used.

HF-205.3 Marking and Report on Tests of Nonidentified Material.

When the identity of the material with the permitted specification has been established in accordance with HF-205.1 or HF-205.2, each piece of material (except as alternatively provided in the specification for tubes, pipe, rods, bars, or shapes) shall be marked to the satisfaction of the Inspector by the boiler manufacturer or the testing agency, with a marking giving the permitted specification number and grade or type and a serial S-number identifying the particular lot of material. A suitable report, clearly marked as being a "Report on Tests of Nonidentified Material," shall be furnished, properly filled out and certified by

the boiler manufacturer or testing agency, and this report, when accepted by the Inspector, shall constitute authority to use the material.

HF-206 RECERTIFICATION OF MATERIAL PRODUCED TO A SPECIFICATION NOT PERMITTED BY THIS SECTION

A particular production lot of material may be recertified to a permitted specification by the boiler or part manufacturer under the following conditions.

(a) The specification to which the material was produced, processed, and purchased must be available for comparison to the permitted specification.

[SEC IV PT HF A-2] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:31 2003)

(b) A test report from the material manufacturer must be available.

(c) The material must have marking, acceptable to the Inspector, for identification to the test report.

(d) The test report must show that all chemical and mechanical properties of the lot comply with the requirements of the permitted specification.

(e) When conformance of the lot to the permitted specification has been established, it may be accepted and marked, as required by the permitted specification, by the boiler or part manufacturer.

HF-210 MAINTAINING MATERIAL IDENTIFICATION

(a) Material for pressure parts shall carry identification markings as required by the applicable material specification. If the original identification markings are cut out or the material is divided into two or more parts, the marking shall either be accurately transferred prior to cutting or a coded method of identification shall be used to assure identification of each piece of material during subsequent fabrication.

(b) Materials may be identified by any method suitable to the Inspector, provided the method used does not result in sharp discontinuities and identifies the material until the boiler is completed.

HF-300 MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES

Tables HF-300.1 and HF-300.2 give the maximum allowable stress values indicated for ferrous and nonferrous materials, respectively, conforming to the specifications listed therein.

HF-301 MINIMUM THICKNESSES[1]

HF-301.1 Ferrous Plates

(a) Except as permitted in (c) below and for cylindrical shells in Table HF-301.1, the minimum thickness of any ferrous plate, or pipe used in lieu of plate, under any pressure shall be $^{1}/_{4}$ in. (6 mm).

(b) The minimum thicknesses of ferrous shell and other ferrous plates, heads, and tubesheets for various shell diameters of boilers shall be as shown in Table HF-301.1. All sheets, except those having tubes installed by rolling, or those calculated as cylindrical parts under external pressure (HG-312.1 to HG-312.6), may be classified as shell plates.

(c) Plate thickness less than that permitted by HF-301.1(a) and HF-301.1(b) may be used when all of the following requirements are met.

(1) The operating service shall be limited to closed hot water heating systems at a maximum pressure of 30 psi (207 kPa).

(2) All pressure parts shall be limited to a maximum diameter of 30 in. (762 mm) O.D.

(3) The boiler shall be limited to a maximum thermal input of 400,000 Btu/hr (117 kW).

1 These minimum thicknesses for pressure shall not be less than required by design formulas in Part HG, Article 3, nor less than those thicknesses established by proof testing in Part HG, Article 5.

(4) No plate shall be less than $^{3}/_{32}$ in. (2.4 mm) (actual thickness), but if less than $^{3}/_{16}$ in. (4.8 mm) (actual thickness), the plate shall not be exposed to the primary products of combustion.

[SEC IV PT HF A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:31 2003)

HF-301.2 Nonferrous Plates

(a) The minimum thickness of any nonferrous plate under pressure shall be $^{1}/_{8}$ in. (3.2 mm) for copper, admiralty, and red brass, and $^{3}/_{32}$ in. (2.4 mm) for copper-nickel.

(b) The minimum thicknesses of nonferrous shells and other copper or copper-alloy plates, heads, and tubesheets for various shell diameters of boilers shall be as shown in Table HF-301.2. All sheets, except those having tubes installed by rolling, may be classified as shell plates.

(c) The minimum thickness of any nonferrous tubesheet with tubes installed by rolling shall be $^{5}/_{16}$ in. (8 mm).

HF-302 BASIS FOR ESTABLISHING STRESS VALUES IN TABLES HF-300.1 AND HF-300.2

(a) In the determination of allowable stress values for pressure parts, the Committee is guided by successful experience in service, insofar as evidence of satisfactory performance is available. Such evidence is considered equivalent to test data where operating conditions are known with reasonable certainty. In the evaluation of new materials, it is necessary to be guided to a certain extent by the comparison of test information with similar data on successful applications of similar materials.

(b) At any temperature below the creep range, the allowable stresses are established at no higher than the lowest of the following:

(1) $^{1}/_{5}$ of the specified minimum tensile strength at room temperature;

(2) $^{1}/_{5}$ of the tensile strength at temperature;

(3) $^{2}/_{3}$ of the specified minimum yield strength at room temperature;

(4) $^{2}/_{3}$ of the yield strength at temperature.

(c) For bolting materials, the basis for setting stresses is the same as for all other materials with the exception that (1) and (2) above are:

(1) $^{1}/_{4}$ of the specified minimum tensile strength at room temperature; and

(2) $^{1}/_{4}$ of the tensile strength at temperature.

The following limitation also applies to bolting materials: at temperatures below the creep range, the stresses for materials whose strength has been enhanced by heat treatment or by strain hardening shall not exceed the lesser of 20% of the specified minimum tensile strength at room temperature or 25% of the specified minimum yield strength at room temperature unless these values are lower than the annealed values, in which case the annealed values shall be used.

[SEC IV PT HF A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:32 2003)

TABLE HF-300.1
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES FOR FERROUS MATERIALS, ksi
(Multiply by 1000 to Obtain psi)

Spec. No.	Grade	Nominal Composition	P-No.	Group No.	Spec. Min. Tensile Strength, ksi	Note(s)	Max. Allow. Stress Value, ksi
Plate Steels							
Carbon Steels							
SA-36	...	C–Mn–Si	1	1	58.0	(7)(19)	11.6
SA-285	A	C	1	1	45.0	...	9.0
SA-285	B	C	1	1	50.0	...	10.0
SA-285	C	C	1	1	55.0	...	11.0
SA-455	...	C–Mn	1	2	75.0	(8)	15.0
SA-455	...	C–Mn	1	2	73.0	(9)	14.6
SA-455	...	C–Mn	1	2	70.0	(10)	14.0
SA-515	60	C–Si	1	1	60.0	...	12.0
SA-515	65	C–Si	1	1	65.0	...	13.0
SA-515	70	C–Si	1	2	70.0	...	14.0
SA-516	55	C–Si	1	1	55.0	...	11.0
SA-516	60	C–Mn–Si	1	1	60.0	...	12.0
SA-516	65	C–Mn–Si	1	1	65.0	...	13.0
SA-516	70	C–Mn–Si	1	2	70.0	...	14.0
Sheet Steels							
Carbon Steels							
SA-414	A	C	1	1	45.0	...	9.0
SA-414	B	C	1	1	50.0	...	10.0
SA-414	C	C	1	1	55.0	...	11.0
SA-414	D	C–Mn	1	1	60.0	...	12.0
SA-414	E	C–Mn	1	1	65.0	...	13.0
SA-414	F	C–Mn	1	2	70.0	...	14.0
SA-414	G	C–Mn	1	2	75.0	...	15.0
SA-620	...	C	1	1	40.0	...	8.0
Pipe and Tubes							
Seamless Carbon Steel							
SA-53	A	C	1	1	48.0	...	9.6
SA-53	B	C–Mn	1	1	60.0	...	12.0
SA-106	A	C–Si	1	1	48.0	...	9.6
SA-106	B	C–Si	1	1	60.0	...	12.0
SA-106	C	C–Si	1	2	70.0	...	14.0
SA-192	...	C–Si	1	1	(47.0)	(1)	9.4
SA-210	A-1	C–Si	1	1	60.0	...	12.0

[98]

TABLE HF-300.1 MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES FOR FERROUS MATERIALS, ksi
(Multiply by 1000 to Obtain psi)

[SEC IV PT HF A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:32 2003)

98

TABLE HF-300.1 (CONT'D)
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES FOR FERROUS MATERIALS, ksi
(Multiply by 1000 to Obtain psi)

Spec. No.	Grade	Nominal Composition	P-No.	Group No.	Spec. Min. Tensile Strength, ksi	Note(s)	Max. Allow. Stress Value, ksi
Pipe and Tubes (Cont'd)							
Electric Resistance Welded Carbon Steel							
SA-53	A	C	1	1	48.0	(2)	8.2
SA-53	B	C–Mn	1	1	60.0	(2)	10.2
SA-135	A	C	1	1	48.0	(2)	8.2
SA-135	B	C–Mn	1	1	60.0	(2)	10.2
SA-178	A	C	1	1	(47.0)	(1)(2)	8.0
SA-178	C	C	1	1	60.0	(2)	10.2
SA-226	...	C–Si	1	1	(47.0)	(1)(2)	8.0
Butt Welded							
SA-53	Steel	C	1	1	48.0	(4)	5.8
Forgings							
Carbon Steels							
SA-105	...	C–Si	1	2	70.0	...	14.0
SA-181	Class 60	C–Si	1	1	60.0	...	12.0
SA-181	Class 70	C–Si	1	2	70.0	...	14.0
SA-266	1	C–Si	1	1	60.0	...	12.0
SA-266	2	C–Si	1	2	70.0	...	14.0
SA-266	3	C–Si	1	2	75.0	...	15.0
Castings							
Carbon Steels							
SA-216	WCA	C–Si	1	1	60.0	(5)	9.6
SA-216	WCB	C–Si	1	2	70.0	(5)	11.2
Bolting							
Carbon Steels							
SA-307	B	C	...	...	60.0	(6)	15.0
SA-193	B5	5Cr–½Mo	...	...	100.0	(6)	25.0
SA-193	B7	1Cr–0.2Mo	...	...	100.0	(6)	25.0
SA-311	1018, Class A	...	...	...	...	(20) (20a)	14.0
		...	...	...	...	(20b)	13.0
SA-311	1035, Class A	...	...	...	...	(20) (20a)	17.0
		...	...	...	...	(20b)	16.0
SA-311	1045, Class A	...	...	...	...	(20) (20a)	19.0
		...	...	...	...	(20b)	18.0
SA-311	1045, Class B	...	...	...	...	(20) (20a)	23.0
SA-311	1050, Class A	...	...	...	...	(20) (20a)	20.0
		...	...	...	...	(20b)	19.0
SA-320	L7	1Cr–0.2Mo	...	...	125.0	(6)	25.0
SA-320	L43	1¾Ni–¾Cr–¼Mo	...	...	125.0	(6)	25.0
SA-325	1	C	...	...	...	(6)	7.0
SA-354	BC	C	...	...	...	(6)	25.0
SA-354	BD	C	...	...	...	(6)	25.0

[SEC IV PT HF A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:33 2003)

[98]

TABLE HF-300.1 (CONT'D) MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES FOR FERROUS MATERIALS, ksi (Multiply by 1000 to Obtain psi)

TABLE HF-300.1 (CONT'D)
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES FOR FERROUS MATERIALS, ksi
(Multiply by 1000 to Obtain psi)

Spec. No.	Grade	Nominal Composition	P-No.	Group No.	Spec. Min. Tensile Strength, ksi	Note(s)	Max. Allow. Stress Value, ksi
Bars and Stays							
Carbon Steels							
SA-36	...	C–Mn–Si	1	1	58.0	(7)	11.6
SA-675	45	C	1	1	45.0	...	9.0
SA-675	50	C	1	1	50.0	...	10.0
SA-675	55	C	1	1	55.0	...	11.0
SA-675	60	C	1	1	60.0	...	12.0
SA-675	65	C	1	1	65.0	...	13.0
SA-675	70	C	1	2	70.0	...	14.0
Plate							
Alloy Steel							
SA-240	304	18Cr–8Ni	8	1	75.0	(15)(16)	15.0
SA-240	304L	18Cr–8Ni	8	1	70.0	(15)(16)	14.0
SA-240	316	16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	75.0	(15)(16)	15.0
SA-240	316L	16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	70.0	(15)(16)	14.0
SA-240	439	18Cr–Ti	7	2	65.0	(11)(12)(13)	13.0
SA-240	S44400	18Cr–2Mo	7	2	60.0	(11)(18)	12.0
Tube							
Alloy Steel							
SA-213	TP304	Smls. 18Cr–8Ni	8	1	75.0	(14)(15)(16)	15.0
SA-213	TP304L	Smls. 18Cr–8Ni	8	1	70.0	(14)(15)(16)	14.0
SA-213	TP316	Smls. 16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	75.0	(14)(15)(16)	15.0
SA-213	TP316L	Smls. 16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	70.0	(14)(15)(16)	14.0
SA-249	TP304	Wld. 18Cr–8Ni	8	1	75.0	(2)(14)(15)(16)	12.8
SA-249	TP304L	Wld. 18Cr–8Ni	8	1	70.0	(2)(14)(15)(16)	11.9
SA-249	TP316	Wld. 16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	75.0	(2)(14)(15)(16)	12.8
SA-249	TP316L	Wld. 16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	70.0	(2)(14)(15)(16)	11.9
SA-268	S44400	18Cr–2Mo	7	2	60.0	(11)(18)	12.0
SA-268	TP439	18Cr–Ti	7	2	60.0	(11)(12)(13)	12.0
SA-268	S44735	Smls. 29Cr–4Mo	10J	1	75.0	(22)	15.0
SA-268	S44735	Wld. 29Cr–4Mo	10J	1	75.0	(2)(22)	12.7

[98]

TABLE HF-300.1 (CONT'D) MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES FOR FERROUS MATERIALS, ksi (Multiply by 1000 to Obtain psi)

[SEC IV PT HF A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:35 2003)

TABLE HF-300.1 (CONT'D)
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES FOR FERROUS MATERIALS, ksi
(Multiply by 1000 to Obtain psi)

Spec. No.	Grade	Nominal Composition	P-No.	Group No.	Spec. Min. Tensile Strength, ksi	Note(s)	Max. Allow. Stress Value, ksi
Pipe							
Alloy Steel							
SA-312	TP304	Smls. 18Cr–8Ni	8	1	75.0	(15)(16)	15.0
SA-312	TP304L	Smls. 18Cr–8Ni	8	1	70.0	(15)(16)	14.0
SA-312	TP316	Smls. 16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	75.0	(15)(16)	15.0
SA-312	TP316L	Smls. 16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	70.0	(15)(16)	14.0
SA-312	TP304	Wld. 18Cr–8Ni	8	1	75.0	(2)(15)(16)	12.8
SA-312	TP304L	Wld. 18Cr–8Ni	8	1	70.0	(2)(15)(16)	11.9
SA-312	TP316	Wld. 16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	75.0	(2)(15)(16)	12.8
SA-312	TP316L	Wld. 16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	70.0	(2)(15)(16)	11.9
Bar							
Alloy Steel							
SA-479	S44400	18Cr–2Mo	7	2	60.0	(11)(18)	12.0
SA-479	439	18Cr–Ti	7	2	70.0	(11)(12)(13)	14.0
Forgings							
Alloy Steel							
SA-182	F304	18Cr–8Ni	8	1	75.0	(15)(16)(21)	15.0
SA-182	F304L	18Cr–8Ni	8	1	70.0	(15)(16)(21)	14.0
SA-182	F316	16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	75.0	(15)(16)(21)	15.0
SA-182	F316L	16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	70.0	(15)(16)(21)	14.0
Castings							
Alloy Steel							
SA-351	CF8C	18Cr–10Ni–Cb	8	1	70.0	(5)(16)(17)	11.2
SA-351	CF3M	16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	70.0	(5)(16)(17)	11.2

NOTES: See next page.

[98]

TABLE HF-300.1 (CONT'D) MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES FOR FERROUS MATERIALS, ksi (Multiply by 1000 to Obtain psi)

[SEC IV PT HF A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:36 2003)

TABLE HF-300.1 (CONT'D)

NOTES:

(1) Tensile value in parentheses is expected minimum.
(2) The stress value includes a joint factor of 0.85.
(3) The stress value includes a joint factor of 0.80.
(4) The stress value includes a joint factor of 0.60.
(5) The stress value includes a casting quality factor of 0.80. Increased casting quality factors as a result of material examination beyond the requirements of the material specifications shall not be permitted.
(6) The stress value is established from a consideration of strength only and will be satisfactory for average service. For bolted joints, where freedom from leakage over a long period of time without retightening is required, lower stress values may be necessary as determined from the relative flexibility of the flange and bolts, and corresponding relaxation properties.
(7) These allowable stress values apply also to structural shapes.
(8) For thicknesses up to $\frac{3}{8}$ in., inclusive.
(9) For thicknesses over $\frac{3}{8}$ in. to 0.580 in., inclusive.
(10) For thicknesses over 0.580 to 0.750 in., inclusive.
(11) The maximum thickness of material covered by this Table is $\frac{3}{8}$ in.
(12) The service temperature shall not exceed 200°F.
(13) Filler metal shall be Type 430 with a nominal titanium content of approximately 1.25%. The 300 series of chromium–nickel–iron filler metals shall not be used in welding vessels conforming to the requirements of Section IV.
(14) Tubing material shall be fully annealed.
(15) Limitations of HF-204.2 also apply.
(16) The water temperature shall not exceed 210°F.
(17) The minimum thickness for header material is 0.10 in.
(18) Filler metal shall be Type 430 with a nominal molybdenum content of approximately 2%. The 300 series of chromium–nickel–iron filler metals shall not be used in welding vessels conforming to the requirements of Section IV.
(19) See Appendix 4 for Canadian Standards Association structural steels specification for plates and bars not exceeding $\frac{3}{4}$ in. for use at the same maximum allowable stress value as SA-36.
(20) For tie-rods and draw bolts on cast-iron sectional boilers subject to system pressure. Welding is not permitted.
  (a) To $\frac{7}{8}$ in. diam. incl.
  (b) Over $\frac{7}{8}$ in. to $1\frac{1}{4}$ in. incl.
  (c) To 3 in. incl.
(21) These allowable stresses apply only to material 5 in. and under in thickness.
(22) Heat treatment after forming or fabrication is neither required nor prohibited.

[98]
TABLE HF-300.1 (CONT'D)

[SEC IV PT HF A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:37 2003)

TABLE HF-300.2
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES FOR NONFERROUS MATERIALS, ksi
(Multiply by 1000 to Obtain psi)

Spec. No.	Copper or Copper Alloy No.	Form	Condition	P-No.	Spec. Min. Tensile Stress, ksi	Spec. Min. Yield Stress, ksi	Note(s)	Max. Allow. Stress Value, ksi
Copper								
SB-42	Copper	Pipe	Annealed/061	31	30.0	9.0	(2)	6.0
SB-42	Copper	Pipe	Hard Drawn/H80 — $\frac{1}{8}$ in. to 2 in. NPS, incl.	31	45.0	40.0	(1)(2)	9.0
SB-42	Copper	Pipe	Light Drawn/H55 — $2\frac{1}{2}$ in. to 12 in. NPS, incl.	31	36.0	30.0	(1)(2)	7.2
SB-75	Copper	Smls. Tubes	Annealed/050/060	31	30.0	9.0	(2)	6.0
SB-75	Copper	Smls. Tubes	Light Drawn/H55	31	36.0	30.0	(1)(2)	7.2
SB-75	Copper	Smls. Tubes	Hard Drawn/H80	31	45.0	40.0	(1)(2)	9.0
SB-111	Copper	Smls. Condenser Tubes	Light Drawn/H55	31	36.0	30.0	(2)	7.2
SB-111	Copper	Smls. Condenser Tubes	Hard Drawn/H80	31	45.0	40.0	(2)	9.0
SB-152	Copper	Plate, Sheet, Strip, & Bar	Annealed	31	30.0	10.0	(2)	6.0
SB-283	C37700	Forging Brass	As Forged/M10/M11	...	...	...	(8)(9)	5.8
SB-395	Copper	Smls. Tubes	Light Drawn/H55	31	36.0	30.0	(1)(2)	7.2
Copper–Silicon								
SB-96	C66500	Plate & Sheet	Annealed/061	33	50.0	18.0	(5)	10.0
SB-98	C65500	Rods	Soft Anneal/060	33	52.0	15.0	(5)	10.1
SB-98	C65500	Rods	Quarter Hard/H01	33	55.0	24.0	(5)	10.0
SB-98	C65100	Rods	Soft Anneal/060	33	40.0	12.0	(5)	8.0
SB-98	C65100	Rods	Half Hard/H02	33	55.0	20.0	(5)	11.0
SB-315	C65500	Pipe & Tube	Annealed/030/061	33	50.0	15.0	(5)	10.0
Red Brass								
SB-43	C23000	Smls. Pipe	Annealed/061	32	40.0	12.0	...	8.0
SB-111	C23000	Smls. Condenser Tubes	Annealed/061	32	40.0	12.0	...	8.0
SB-395	C23000	Smls. Condenser Tubes	Annealed/061	32	40.0	12.0	...	8.0

[SEC IV PT HF A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:38 2003)

TABLE HF-300.2 (CONT'D)
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES FOR NONFERROUS MATERIALS, ksi
(Multiply by 1000 to Obtain psi)

Spec. No.	Copper or Copper Alloy No.	Form	Condition	P-No.	Spec. Min. Tensile Stress, ksi	Spec. Min. Yield Stress, ksi	Note(s)	Max. Allow. Stress Value, ksi
Admiralty								
SB-395	C44300	Smls. Condenser Tubes	Annealed/061	32	45.0	15.0	...	9.0
SB-395	C44400	Smls. Condenser Tubes	Annealed/061	32	45.0	15.0	...	9.0
SB-395	C44500	Smls. Condenser Tubes	Annealed/061	32	45.0	15.0	...	9.0
SB-171	C44300	Tube Plates, ≤ 4 in.		32	45.0	15.0	...	9.0
SB-171	C44400	Tube Plates, ≤ 4 in.		32	45.0	15.0	...	9.0
SB-171	C44500	Tube Plates, ≤ 4 in.		32	45.0	15.0	...	9.0
Naval Brass								
SB-171	C46400	Tube Plates, ≤ 3 in.	Annealed	32	50.0	20.0	...	10.0
Copper–Nickel								
SB-111	C70600	Smls. Condenser Tubes	Annealed/061	34	40.0	15.0	...	8.0
SB-111	C71000	Smls. Condenser Tubes	Annealed/061	34	45.0	16.0	...	9.0
SB-111	C71500	Smls. Condenser Tubes	Annealed/061	34	52.0	18.0	...	10.4
SB-171	C70600	Plates, ≤ 5 in.		34	40.0	15.0	...	8.0
SB-171	C71500	Plates, ≤ 2½ in.		34	50.0	20.0	...	10.0
SB-395	C70600	Smls. Condenser Tubes	Annealed/061	34	40.0	15.0	...	8.0
SB-395	C71000	Smls. Condenser Tubes	Annealed/061	34	45.0	16.0	...	9.0
SB-395	C71500	Smls. Condenser Tubes	Annealed/061	34	52.0	18.0	...	10.4
SB-466	C70600	Pipe & Tube	Annealed	34	38.0	13.0	...	7.6
SB-466	C71000	Pipe & Tube	Annealed	34	45.0	16.0	...	9.0
SB-466	C71500	Pipe & Tube	Annealed	34	50.0	18.0	...	10.0
Nickel–Copper								
SB-164	N04400	Bar	Hot or Cold Worked, Annealed	42	70.0	25.0	(7)	14.0
SB-164	N04400	Rounds	Hot Worked (As Worked or Stress Relieved)	42	80.0	40.0	(7)	16.0

[SEC IV PT HF A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:38 2003)

TABLE HF-300.2 (CONT'D)
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES FOR NONFERROUS MATERIALS, ksi
(Multiply by 1000 to Obtain psi)

Spec. No.	Copper or Copper Alloy No.	Form	Condition	P-No.	Spec. Min. Tensile Stress, ksi	Spec. Min. Yield Stress, ksi	Note(s)	Max. Allow. Stress Value, ksi
Nickel–Copper (Cont'd)								
SB-165	N04400	Smls. Pipe and Tube, 5 in. O.D. max.	Annealed	42	70.0	28.0	(7)	14.0
SB-165	N04400	Smls. Pipe and Tube, Over 5 in. O.D.	Annealed	42	70.0	25.0	(7)	14.0
SB-165	N04400	Smls. Pipe and Tube, All Sizes	Stress Relieved	42	85.0	55.0	(7)	17.0
Integrally Finned Tubes								
SB-359	...	...	...	...	...	...	(6)	...
Castings, Bronze and Brass								
SB-61	C92200	Steam Metal Bronze	...	...	34.0	16.0	(3)(4)	5.4
SB-62	C83600	85-5-5-5 Composition Brass	...	...	30.0	14.0	(3)(4)	4.8
SB-584	C84400	81-3-7-9 Composition Brass	...	...	29.0	13.0	(3)(4)	4.6

NOTES:
(1) When nonferrous materials conforming to specifications given in Section II are used in welded or brazed construction, the maximum allowable working stresses shall not exceed the values given herein for the material in the annealed condition.
(2) When material is to be welded, the phosphorous deoxided types should be specified.
(3) The stress value includes a casting quality factor of 0.80. Increased casting quality factors as a result of material examination beyond the requirement of the material specification shall not be permitted. This is not intended to apply to valves and fittings made to recognized standards.
(4) In the absence of evidence that the casting is of high quality throughout, values not in excess of 80% of those given in the Table shall be used. This is not intended to apply to valves and fittings made to recognized standards.
(5) Copper–silicon alloys are not always suitable when exposed to certain median and high temperatures, particularly steam above 212°F. Therefore, this material is limited to the construction of hot water boilers to be operated at a temperature not to exceed 200°F.
(6) Use in accordance with HF-204 and HF-204.1.
(7) To be used for HLW connections only.
(8) For use in HG-307.2(b) Eq. (2), the maximum allowable stress at room temperature (100°F, max.) shall be 10.0 (through $1\frac{1}{2}$ in. thickness) and 9.2 (over $1\frac{1}{2}$ in. thickness).
(9) No welding or brazing permitted.

TABLE HF-300.2 (CONT'D) MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES FOR NONFERROUS MATERIALS, ksi

[SEC IV PT HF A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:39 2003)

TABLE HF-301.1
MINIMUM ALLOWABLE
THICKNESS OF FERROUS SHELL PLATES

Diameter or Width of Shell, Tubesheet, or Head, in.	Minimum Ferrous Material Thickness Allowable Under Rules, in.	
	Tubesheet or Head With Rolled Tubes	Shell Plate
42 or under	5/16	1/4 [Note (1)]
Over 42 to 60	3/8	5/16
Over 60 to 78	7/16	3/8
Over 78	1/2	7/16

NOTE:
(1) Shell plate 3/16 in. thickness is permissible for cylindrical shells 24 in. in diameter or less, and for a maximum allowable working pressure not over 30 psi.

TABLE HF-301.1 MINIMUM ALLOWABLE THICKNESS OF FERROUS SHELL PLATES

[SEC IV PT HF A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:40 2003)

TABLE HF-301.2
MINIMUM ALLOWABLE THICKNESS OF NONFERROUS SHELL PLATES

Diameter or Width of Shell, Tubesheet, or Head, in. [Note (1)]	Minimum Nonferrous Material Thickness Allowable Under Rules, in.			
	Tubesheet or Head		Shell Plate	
	Copper, Admiralty, and Red Brass	Copper–Nickel Alloy	Copper, Admiralty, and Red Brass	Copper–Nickel Alloy
24 or under	3/16 [Note (2)]	5/32 [Note (2)]	1/8	3/32
Over 24 to 36	1/4 [Note (2)]	3/16 [Note (2)]	3/16	1/8
Over 36 to 42	5/16	1/4 [Note (2)]	1/4	3/16
Over 42 to 60	3/8	3/8	5/16	5/16
Over 60 to 78	7/16	7/16	3/8	3/8
Over 78	1/2	1/2	7/16	7/16

NOTES:
(1) For the purpose of applying Tables HF-301.1 and HF-301.2 to a noncylindrical boiler, the equivalent shell diameter shall be taken as the width of the unsupported portion of any plate, measured before stays are installed.
(2) See HF-301.2(c).

TABLE HF-301.2 MINIMUM ALLOWABLE THICKNESS OF NONFERROUS SHELL PLATES

HW-400 SCOPE

The requirements of this Subpart HW are applicable to boilers and parts thereof that are fabricated by welding.

HW-401 RESPONSIBILITY OF MANUFACTURER OR CONTRACTOR

Each manufacturer or contractor is responsible for the welding done by his organization and shall establish the procedures and conduct the tests required in Section IX to qualify the welding procedures he uses in the construction of the weldments built under Section IV and the performance tests of welders and welding operators who apply these procedures.

HW-500 PERMISSIBLE MATERIALS

Materials used in welded construction of pressure parts shall conform to one of the specifications given in Section II and shall be limited to those for which allowable stress values are given in Tables HF-300.1 and HF-300.2 and for which weld group P-Numbers are assigned in Section IX.

[SEC IV PT HF-HW A-5] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:40 2003)

(a) Carbon or alloy steel having a carbon content of more than 0.35% shall not be used in welded construction or be shaped by oxygen cutting or other thermal cutting processes.

(b) Stud material for arc stud welding and resistance stud welding of carbon steel shall be low carbon steel of an acceptable material in this Section and with a carbon maximum of 0.27% and with a minimum tensile strength of 60,000 psi (410 MPa). See further limits in HW-730.4 and HW-820.3.

(c) Materials joined by the inertia and continuous drive friction welding processes shall be limited to materials assigned P-Numbers in Section IX and shall not include rimmed or semikilled steel.

HW-501 MATERIALS OF DIFFERENT SPECIFICATIONS

Two materials of different specifications may be joined by welding provided the requirements of QW-251.2 of Section IX are met.

HW-502 MATERIALS FOR SMALL PARTS

Small parts used in welded construction under the provisions of HF-203.1 shall be of good weldable quality.

HW-600 WELDING PROCESSES

The welding processes that may be used under this Part are restricted to the following:

(a) arc or gas welding processes are restricted to shielded metal arc, submerged arc, gas metal arc, gas tungsten arc, plasma arc, atomic hydrogen metal arc, and oxyfuel gas welding;

(b) pressure welding processes are restricted to flash, induction, resistance, pressure thermit, pressure gas, and inertia and continuous drive friction welding;

(c) definitions are given in Section IX which include variations of these processes.

HW-610 WELDING QUALIFICATIONS

Unless specified otherwise for a particular process, the procedures, the welders, and the welding operators used in welding pressure parts and in joining nonpressure parts (attachments) to pressure parts shall be qualified in accordance with Section IX.

HW-611 NO PRODUCTION WORK WITHOUT QUALIFICATIONS

No production work shall be undertaken until the procedures, the welders, and the welding operators have been qualified, except that performance qualification by radiography, in conformance with Section IX, QW-304 for welders or QW-305 for welding operators, may be performed within the first 3 ft (0.9 m) of the first production weld.

HW-612 INTERCHANGE OF QUALIFYING TESTS AMONG MANUFACTURERS PROHIBITED

The performance qualification tests for welders and welding operators conducted by one manufacturer or contractor shall not qualify a welder or welding operator to do work for any other manufacturer or contractor.

HW-613 MAINTENANCE OF RECORDS OF QUALIFICATIONS AND IDENTIFYING

[SEC IV PT HF-HW A-6] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:40 2003)

MARKS

The Manufacturer or contractor shall maintain a record of the welding procedures and welders and welding operators employed by him showing the date and results of test and the identification mark assigned to each welder. These records shall be certified to by the Manufacturer or contractor and be accessible to the Inspector. The welder or welding operator shall stamp his identification mark on or adjacent to all welded joints made by him at intervals of not greater than 3 ft (0.9 m), or the Manufacturer shall keep a record of the welded joints on a vessel and the welders and welding operators used in making the joints.

HW-700 DESIGN OF WELDED JOINTS

HW-701 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

All welds, fillet or full penetration, shall be made to a qualified welding procedure by qualified welders for each welding process employed (manual, semiautomatic, automatic), in accordance with the applicable provisions of Section IX to assure satisfactory penetration and fusion into the base metal to the root of the weld. All members, prior to being welded, shall be properly fitted, aligned, and retained in position in accordance with the procedure specification for the welding procedure to be used.

HW-701.1 Butt Joints.

Longitudinal, circumferential, and other joints uniting plates of a drum, shell, or other pressure parts, except as provided in HW-701.1, HW-701.2, HW-701.3, HW-710, HW-711, and HW-712, shall be butt joints. A butt joint shall be double-welded butt or may have filler metal added from one side only, provided the weld penetration is complete and there is reinforcement on both sides of the joint. There shall be no valley either on the edge or in the center of the joint and the weld shall be so built up that the weld metal shall present a gradual increase in thickness from the surface of the plate to the center of the weld. At no point shall the plate on one side of the joint be offset with the plate on the other side of joint in excess of the alignment tolerance in HW-812 except as provided in HW-715(a)(2).

(a) A tapered transition section having a length not less than three times the offset between the adjoining surfaces as shown in Fig. HW-701.1, shall be provided at joints between materials that differ in thickness by more than one-fourth of the thickness of the thinner material or by more than $^1/_8$ in. (3.2 mm). The transition section may be formed by any process that will provide a uniform taper. The weld may be partly or entirely in the tapered section or adjacent to it as indicated in Fig. HW-701.1. The transition requirement also applies when there is a reduction in thickness within a cylindrical shell course and to tapers within formed heads. In longitudinal shell joints, the middle lines of the adjoining thicknesses shall be in alignment within the fabricating tolerances specified in HW-812.

[SEC IV PT HF-HW A-7] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:40 2003)

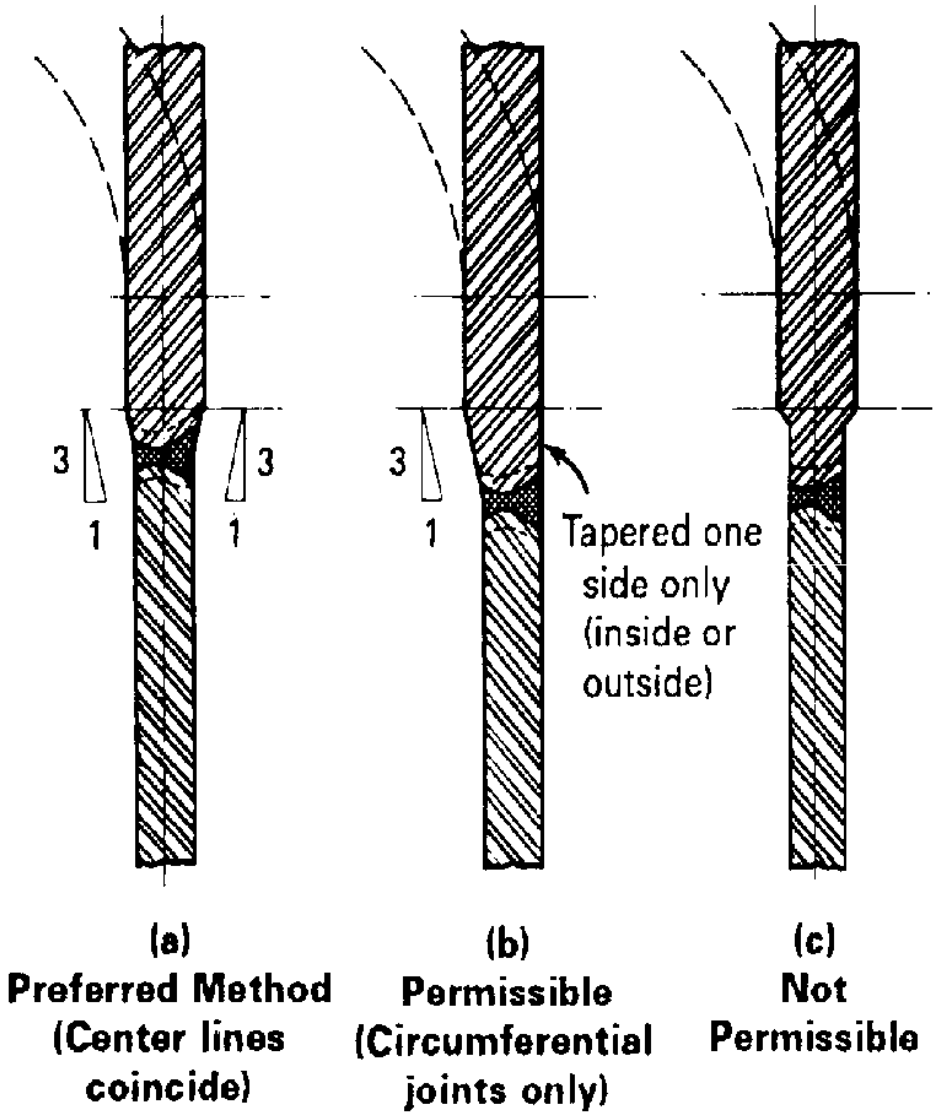


FIG. HW-701.1 BUTT WELDING OF PLATES OF UNEQUAL THICKNESS

FIG. HW-701.1 BUTT WELDING OF PLATES OF UNEQUAL THICKNESS

(b) Where fusion welded steel plate boilers are made up of two or more courses, the welded longitudinal joints of adjacent courses shall be not less than 6 in. (152 mm) apart.

HW-701.2

[SEC IV PT HF-HW A-7] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:40 2003)

(a) Boilers designed for not more than 30 psi (207 kPa) and having inside diameters not exceeding 24 in. (610 mm) I.D. may have longitudinal or circumferential joints uniting plates of a shell made with lap

joints, provided the joint is not in direct contact with the products of combustion.

(b) For boilers over 30 psi (207 kPa) or 24 in. (610 mm) I.D., lap joints may be used only where stayed plates are joined, where a cylindrical shell and a stayed wrapper are joined, or as permitted in HW-711.

(c) Except as permitted in HW-701.4 and HW-711, lap joints shall be full fillet welded inside and outside and the throats of the fillet welds shall be not less than 0.7 times the thickness of the thinner plate. The surface overlap shall be not less than 4 times the thickness of the thinner plate.

HW-701.3 Corner or Tee Joints

(a) Boilers designed for not more than 30 psi (207 kPa) may have the corner or tee joints made with single full fillet welds. The throat of the fillet weld shall be not less than 0.7 times the thickness of the thinner plate joined [see Fig. HW-701.3, sketches (a), (b), and (c)].

(b) Hot water boilers designed to these rules for pressures in excess of 30 psi (207 kPa) shall have corner or tee joints made only with full penetration welds [see Fig. HW-701.3, sketches (d) and (e)] or double full fillet welds [see Fig. HW-701.3, sketch (f)].

HW-701.4 Single Fillet Joints for Lap Attachment of U-Bend Tubes.

Tubes bent to a nominal 180 deg. to form a U-bend may be attached to headers by fillet welds provided:

(a) the header is not larger than NPS 3 (DN 75);

(b) the maximum thickness of the parts being joined is $^{3}/_{8}$ in. (10 mm);

(c) the tubes are inserted, coaxially with a forced fit for a minimum distance of 1.5 times the minimum thickness of the parts being joined, into the end of the header and are attached by fillet welds;

(d) the fillet welds are deposited from the outside only with one leg not smaller than the thickness of the header and the other leg not smaller than 1.3 times the thickness of the thinnest part being joined and;

(e) the fillet weld shall not be in contact with primary furnace gasses.

HW-702 JOINT EFFICIENCIES

The following joint efficiencies *E* are to be used in the formulas of this Section (i.e., HG-301 and HG-305) for joints completed by an arc or gas welding process.

(a) E = 85% for full penetration butt joints as attained by double welding or by other means which will obtain the same quality of deposited weld metal on the inside and outside weld surfaces, to provide complete joint penetration and assurance that the weld grooves are completely filled (HW-701.1). Welds that use metal backing strips that remain in place are excluded.

(b) E = 80% for full penetration single-welded butt joints with backing strips other than those included in (a) above.

(c) E = 60% for single-welded butt joints without use of backing strips.

(d) E = 65% for double full fillet lap joints meeting the requirements of HW-701.2(b).

(e) E = 49% for double full fillet lap joints meeting the requirements of HW-701.2(a).

HW-702.1 Joint Efficiencies for External Pressure Design.

Joint efficiency *E* factors are not required to be used when the boiler part is designed for external pressure only.

HW-703 MINIMUM THICKNESS OF WELDED PARTS

The minimum thicknesses specified in HF-301 and Tables HF-301.1 and HF-301.2 apply if greater than the thicknesses calculated utilizing the above listed joint efficiency factors with formulas of this Section.

HW-710 WELDED STAYS

HW-710.1 Insertion of Stays.

Except as provided in HW-710.4 and HW-710.5, the stays are to be inserted through holes having a maximum gap around the periphery of the stay of $^{1}/_{16}$ in. (1.6 mm). The size of the weld in shear, measured parallel to that portion of the stay in or extended through the plate, shall be not less than $^{5}/_{16}$ times the required diameter of the stay and in no case less than $^{1}/_{4}$ in. (6 mm). For a stay with other than circular cross section, the minimum size of the weld shall be that calculated for a circular stay of the same cross-sectional area. To provide for the above specified welding, the plate may be countersunk by machining or pressing, or the stay may protrude through the plates, or a combination of those methods may be used. The end of the stay shall not be covered by weld metal and shall not be below the surface of the plate.

HW-710.2 Projection of Stays Exposed to Products of Combustion.

The ends of stays inserted through plates shall not project more than $^{3}/_{8}$ in. (10 mm) beyond surfaces exposed to the products of combustion.

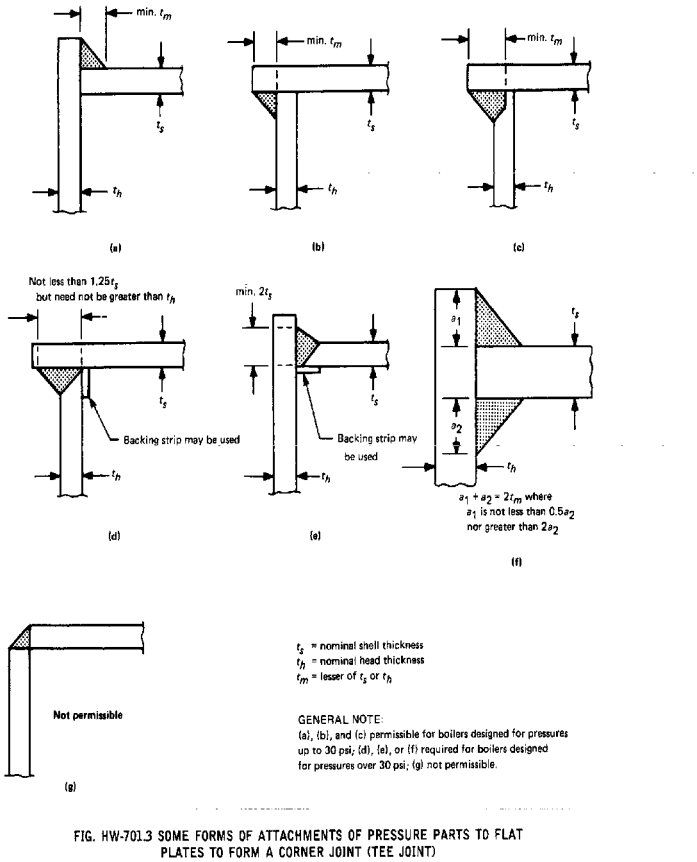


FIG. HW-701.3 SOME FORMS OF ATTACHMENTS OF PRESSURE PARTS TO FLAT PLATES TO FORM A CORNER JOINT (TEE JOINT)

[SEC IV PT HF-HW A-7] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:42 2003)

FIG. HW-701.3 SOME FORMS OF ATTACHMENTS OF PRESSURE PARTS TO FLAT PLATES TO FORM A CORNER JOINT (TEE JOINT)

HW-710.3 Fit-Up and Welding of Stays.

The fit-up and welding shall be such that excessive weld deposits do not project beyond the surface of the plate at the root of the weld.

HW-710.4 Welding of Diagonal Stays.

Diagonal stays shall be attached to the inner surface of the shell, but not to a head or tubesheet, by fillet welds only provided the following [see Figs. HW-710.4(a) and HW-710.4(b)]:

(a) Fillet welds shall be not less than $^{3}/_{8}$ in. (10 mm) size and shall continue the full length of each side of the portion of the stay in contact with the shell. The product of the aggregate length of these fillet welds times their throat shall be not less than 1.25 times the required cross-sectional area of the stay. A fillet weld across the end of the stay is optional but shall not be credited in calculating the required area of fillet welds.

(b) The longitudinal center line of the stay (projected if necessary) shall intersect the surface of the plate to which the stay is attached within the outer boundaries of the attaching welds (also projected if necessary).

(c) Diagonal stays shall, for boilers designed for not more than 30 psi (207 kPa) pressure, comply with the requirements of HW-710.1, HW-710.2, and HW-710.3 and shall, for boilers designed for pressures in excess of 30 psi (207 kPa), comply with the requirements of HW-710.5.

HW-710.5 For Pressures in Excess of 30 psi (207 kPa).

The stays shall be inserted into holes countersunk in the sheet except as provided in HW-710.4, and shall be attached by full penetration welds.

HW-711 HEADS OR TUBESHEETS ATTACHED BY WELDING

HW-711.1 Flanged Heads or Tubesheets.

Boilers may be constructed by attaching an outwardly or inwardly flanged head or tubesheet to the shell by fillet welding provided:

(a) the head or tubesheet is supported by tubes, or braces, or both;

(b) the joint attaching an outwardly flanged head or tubesheet is wholly within the shell and forms no part thereof;

(c) inwardly flanged heads or tubesheets are full fillet welded inside and outside;

(d) the throats of the full fillet welds are not less than 0.7 times the thickness of the head or tubesheet;

(e) on inwardly flanged heads or tubesheets, the minimum length of the straight flange shall conform with the requirements of HW-701.2;

(f) the shell at the weld is not in contact with primary furnace gases;

(g) these constructions shall not be used on the rear head of a horizontal-return tubular boiler, and inwardly flanged heads or tubesheets shall not be used on a boiler with an extended shell.

HW-711.2 Unflanged Heads or Tubesheets.

Boilers may be constructed by attaching unflanged heads or tubesheets to the shell by welding, provided:

(a) the head or tubesheet is supported by tubes or braces, or both, as required by HG-340, or its thickness is calculated using the appropriate formula from HG-307;

(b) the welding for boilers designed for not more than 30 psi (207 kPa) meets the minimum requirements for HW-701.3

(a);

(c) the weld for boilers designed for pressure in excess of 30 psi (207 kPa) is a full penetration weld applied from either or both sides as shown in Fig. HW-701.3, sketch (d) or (e), or a double full fillet weld as shown in Fig. HW-701.3, sketch (f);

(d) the shell or wrapper sheet, where exposed to primary furnace gases and not water cooled, shall not extend beyond the outside face of the head or tubesheet for a distance greater than the thickness of the head or tubesheet;

(e) this construction shall not be used on the rear head of a horizontal-return tubular boiler.

HW-712 FURNACE ATTACHMENTS

HW-712.1 For Pressures Not More Than 30 psi (207 kPa).

A furnace or crown sheet in a boiler designed to these rules for pressures not more than 30 psi (207 kPa) may be attached to a head or tubesheet with a full fillet weld, provided:

(a) the furnace shall not extend beyond the outside face of the head or tubesheet for a distance greater than the thickness of the head or tubesheet, unless protected by refractory material; the furnace shall be trimmed to remove any excess material before welding;

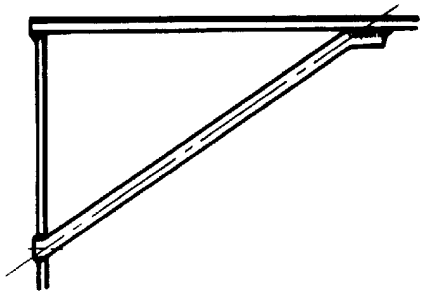
(b) the throat of the full fillet weld is not less than 0.7 times the thickness of the head or tubesheet;

(c) the joint attaching a cylindrical furnace to a head or tubesheet is wholly outside the cylindrical portion of the furnace.

HW-712.2 For Pressures in Excess of 30 psi (207 kPa).

A furnace or crown sheet in a hot water boiler designed to these rules for pressures in excess

of 30 psi (207 kPa) shall be attached to a head or tubesheet, as shown in Fig. HW-701.3, by a full penetration weld, with the furnace or crown sheet extending at least through the full thickness of the head or tubesheet, but when exposed to primary gases, furnace or crown sheet projections shall not extend beyond the face of the plate by more than $^{3}/_{8}$ in. (10 mm), unless protected by refractory material.



GENERAL NOTE: A round bar or a round bar with a forged palm

FIG. HW-710.4(a) SOME ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF DIAGONAL STAYS FOR INSTALLATION BY WELDING

FIG. HW-710.4(a) SOME ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF DIAGONAL STAYS FOR INSTALLATION BY WELDING

[SEC IV PT HF-HW A-7] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:43 2003)

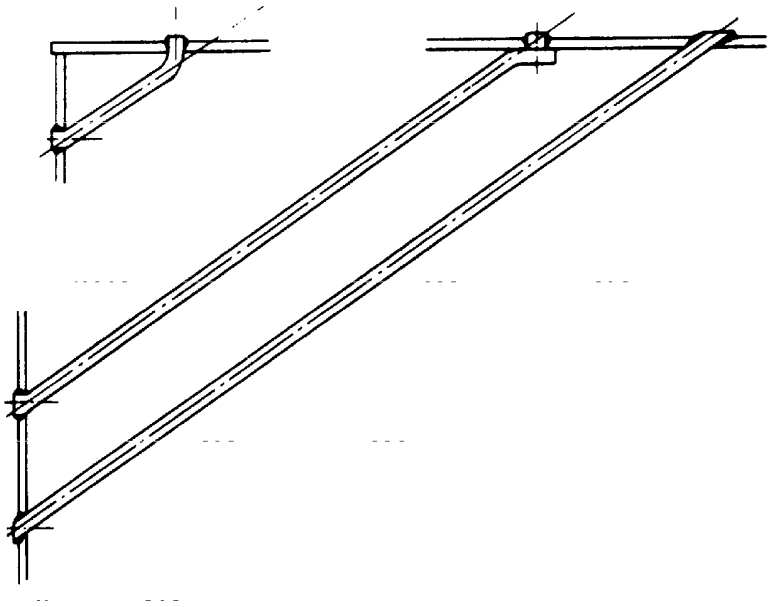


FIG. HW-710.4(b) UNACCEPTABLE TYPES OF DIAGONAL STAYS FOR INSTALLATION BY WELDING

FIG. HW-710.4(b) UNACCEPTABLE TYPES OF DIAGONAL STAYS FOR INSTALLATION BY WELDING

TABLE HW-713
FIRETUBE EXTENSION THROUGH TUBESHEETS FOR WELDED CONSTRUCTION

	Tubes Exposed to Primary Furnace Gases [Note (1)]	Tubes Not Exposed to Primary Furnace Gases [Note (1)]
Tubesheet beveled or recessed	min. = the tube shall extend at least through the tubesheet max. = t_{tube}	min. = the tube shall extend at least through the tubesheet max. = greater of t_{tube} or $\frac{3}{8}$ in.
Tubesheet not beveled or recessed	min. = greater of t_{tube} or $\frac{1}{8}$ in. max. = greater of t_{tube} or $\frac{1}{4}$ in.	min. = greater of t_{tube} or $\frac{1}{8}$ in. max. = greater of t_{tube} or $\frac{3}{8}$ in.

NOTE:
(1) See HG-360.2.

TABLE HW-713 FIRETUBE EXTENSION THROUGH TUBESHEETS FOR WELDED CONSTRUCTION

HW-713 TUBES ATTACHED BY WELDING

(a) The edge of the plate at the tubesheet hole may be beveled or recessed. The depth of any bevel or recess shall not be less than the tube thickness or $^{1}/$ in. (3.2 mm), whichever is greater, nor more than one-third of the tubesheet thickness.

[SEC IV PT HF-HW A-7] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:44 2003)

Where the plate is beveled or recessed, the projection of the tubes beyond the tube sheet shall not exceed a distance equal to the tube thickness, but shall extend at least through the tubesheet.

(b) The maximum and minimum distance the firetube shall extend through the tubesheet shall be in accordance with Table HW-713.

(c) The minimum size of the weld for firetubes used as stays shall be that calculated in accordance with HW-710.1 for a solid circular stay having the same cross-sectional area as the firetube.

(d) The above projections do not apply to watertubes; the maximum projection for watertubes is $^1/_2$ in. (13 mm). For attachment of watertubes by welding, see HW-731.

HW-715 HEAD-TO-SHELL ATTACHMENTS

Ellipsoidal, torispherical, hemispherical, and other types of formed heads, concave or convex to the pressure shall have the following requirements as to skirt length.

(a)(1) An ellipsoidal or torispherical head which is attached to a shell by a butt joint need not be provided with a skirt when the nominal head thickness does not exceed $1^1/_4$ times the nominal shell thickness. When the nominal head thickness exceeds $1^1/_4$ times the nominal shell thickness, a skirt shall be provided having a length not less than three times the nominal head thickness or $1^1/_2$ in. (38 mm), whichever is smaller. When a skirt is used it shall meet the requirements for shell thickness in HG-301.

(2) Flanged heads concave to pressure may be attached to shells using a butt weld with one plate offset as shown in Fig. HW-715.1 provided the welded joint is not in contact with primary furnace gases. The offset shall be smooth and symmetrical and shall not be machined or otherwise reduced in thickness. There shall be a uniform force fit with the mating section at the root of the weld.

(b) Ellipsoidal or torispherical heads, concave or convex to the pressure, shall have a skirt length not less than that shown in Fig. HW-715.1 provided the welded joint is not in contact with primary furnace gases. Heads that are fitted inside or over a shell shall have a driving fit before welding.

(c) Formed heads of full hemispherical shape, concave to pressure, need not have an integral skirt, but where a skirt is provided for butt welded attachment, the thickness of the skirt shall be at least that required for a seamless cylindrical shell of the same diameter.

(d) Flanged ellipsoidal or torispherical heads convex to pressure may be attached to the shell with a full fillet weld with throat no less than 0.7 times the head thickness. The shell at the weld shall not be in contact with primary furnace gases.

HW-720 OPENINGS IN WELDS

Any type of opening that meets the requirements for reinforcement given in HG-321 may be located in a butt welded joint.

HW-730 WELDED CONNECTIONS

HW-730.1 Strength of Attachment Welds

(a) Nozzles, other connections, and their reinforcement may be attached to a boiler by arc or gas welding. Sufficient welding shall be provided on either side of the line through the center of the opening parallel to the longitudinal axis of the shell to develop the strength of the shell as prescribed in HG-327 through shear or tension in the weld, whichever is applicable. The strength of groove welds shall be based on the area subjected to shear or to tension. The strength of fillet welds shall be based on the area subjected to shear, computed on the minimum leg dimension. The inside periphery of fillet weld shall be used in computing its length.

(b) Weld strength calculations for pressure loadings are not required for the following:

(1) nozzle connections made per Fig. HW-731, sketches (a), (b), (c), (g), (h), (o-1), (s-1), (u-1), (v-1), and (w-1);

(2) nozzle connections for openings that are exempt from reinforcement requirements by HG-320.3(c) or HG-320.3(d);

[SEC IV PT HF-HW A-7] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:44 2003)

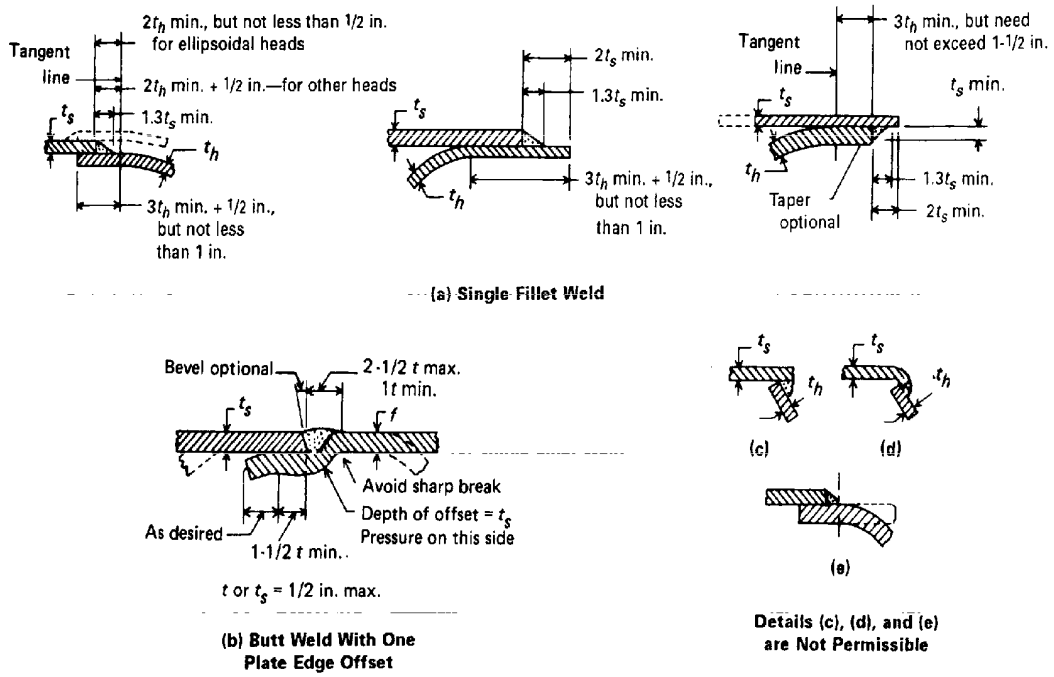


FIG. HW-715.1 HEADS ATTACHED TO SHELLS

FIG. HW-715.1 HEADS ATTACHED TO SHELLS

(3) openings designed in accordance with the rules for ligaments in para. HG-350.

HW-730.2 Stress Values for Weld Metal.

The allowable stress values for groove and fillet welds and for shear in nozzle necks in percentages of stress values for the vessel material are as follows:

Nozzle-wall shear	70%
Groove-weld tension	74%
Groove-weld shear	60%
Fillet-weld shear	49%

NOTE: These values are obtained by combining the following factors: $87^1/_2$% for combined end and side loading, 80% for shear strength, and the applicable joint efficiency factors.

HW-730.3 Telltale Holes in Reinforcement Plates and Saddles.

Separate reinforcement plates and saddles used to reinforce the material around openings and that are attached to the outside of a boiler shall be provided with at least one telltale hole [maximum size: $^1/_4$ in. (6 mm) pipe tap] that may be tapped for a preliminary compressed-air and soapsuds test for tightness of welds that seal off the inside of the boiler. These telltale holes may be left open when the boiler is in service. If the holes are plugged, the plugging material used shall not be capable of sustaining pressure between the plate and the boiler wall.

[SEC IV PT HF-HW A-7] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:45 2003)

HW-730.4 Stud Welds.

Arc stud welding and resistance stud welding, as defined in E-101, where the boiler pressure exerts a tensile load on the studs, may be used only for the attachments of bolted unstayed flat heads, cover plates and blind flanges, handholes and manholes, with the further limitations as follows.

(a) Studs attached by stud welding shall not be in direct contact with products of combustion or flue gases.

(b) Where the pressure exerts a tensile load on the studs, a full face gasket must be used on flat heads, cover plates and blind flanges attached by stud welding.

(c) The minimum size stud used shall be not less than $^1/_4$ in. (6 mm) nominal diameter, and the maximum size shall not exceed $^7/_8$ in. (22 mm) nominal diameter.

(d) The type of stud shall be limited to round externally threaded studs.

(e) Base metal shall be of ferrous material specification as permitted by this Section, and the base metal must be thick enough to prevent burn through. See HW-500(b) for stud material.

(f) The maximum spacing of studs shall not exceed 12 times the nominal diameter of the stud.

(g) The maximum allowable stress for the stud shall be 7800 psi (54 MPa) based on the smallest cross-sectional area (i.e., the root of the thread).

HW-731 MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS FOR ATTACHMENT WELDS

HW-731.1 General.

The location and minimum size of attachment welds for nozzles and other connections shall conform to the requirements in this paragraph.

(a) Notation. The symbols used in this paragraph and in Fig. HW-731 are defined as follows:

t	= nominal thickness of boiler shell or head, in.
t_n	= nominal thickness of nozzle wall, in.
t_w	= dimension of partial penetration attachment welds (fillet, single-bevel, or single-J), measured as shown in Fig. HW-731, in.
t_c	= not less than the smaller of $^1/_4$ in. (6 mm) or 0.7 $t_{\text{min.}}$ (inside corner welds may be further limited by a lesser length of projection of nozzle wall beyond the inside face of the boiler wall)
t_{min}	= the smaller of $^3/_4$ in. (19 mm) or the thickness of the thinner of the parts joined by a fillet, single-bevel, or single-J weld, in.
t_1, t_2	= not less than the smaller of $^1/_4$ in. (6 mm) or 0.7 t_{min} and $t_1 + t_2$ not less than $1^1/_4\, t_{min}$

HW-731.2 Necks Abutting the Boiler Shell

(a) Nozzles abutting the boiler shell shall be attached by a full penetration groove weld. Backing strips shall be used with welds deposited from only one side when the shell thickness is over $^3/_8$ in. (10 mm) or when complete joint penetration cannot be verified by visual inspection [for example, see Fig. HW-731, sketch (y)].

(b) Nozzles or tubes recessed into thick boiler shells or headers may be welded from only one side by cutting a welding

[SEC IV PT HF-HW A-7] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:45 2003)

groove in the boiler shell to a depth of not less than t_n on the longitudinal axis of the opening. It is recommended that a recess at least $^1/_{16}$ in. (1.6 mm) deep be provided at the bottom of the groove in which to center the nozzle. The dimension t_w of the attachment weld shall be not less than t_n or less than $^1/_4$ in. (6 mm) [for example, see Fig. HW-731, sketches (y) and (z)].

HW-731.3 Inserted Nozzles Without Added Reinforcement Elements

(a) Nozzles inserted into or through a hole cut in the boiler shell and without additional reinforcement elements shall be attached by a full penetration groove weld or by two partial penetration welds, one on each face of the boiler shell. Permissible types of welds are shown in Fig. HW-731, sketches (c) through (h).

(b) Backing strips shall be used with full penetration welds deposited from one side only when the shell thickness is over $^3/_8$ in. (10 mm) or when complete joint penetration cannot be verified by visual inspection. The two partial penetration welds may be any desired combination of fillet, single-bevel, and single-J welds. The dimension t_w of each weld shall be not less than the smaller of $^1/_4$ in. (6 mm) or 0.7 t_{min} and their sum shall be not less than $1^1/_4\, t_{min}$ (see Fig. HW-731).

HW-731.4 Inserted Nozzles With Added Reinforcement.

Inserted type nozzles having added reinforcement in the form of one or more separate reinforcement plates shall be attached by welds at the nozzle neck periphery and at the outer edge of each reinforcement plate. The weld at the outer edge of each reinforcement plate shall be a fillet weld with a minimum throat dimension of $^1/_2 t_{min}$. The welds attaching the nozzle to the boiler shell and to the reinforcement shall consist of one of the following combinations:

(a) a single-bevel or single-J weld in the shell plate, and a single-bevel or single-J weld in each reinforcement plate. The dimension t_w of each weld shall be not less than 0.7 t_{min} [see Fig. HW-731, sketch (n)].

(b) a full penetration groove weld in the shell plate, and a fillet, single-bevel, or single-J weld with a weld dimension t_w not less than 0.7 t_{min} in each reinforcement plate [see Fig. HW-731, sketch (m)];

(c) a full penetration groove weld in each reinforcement plate, and a fillet, single-bevel, or single-J weld with a weld dimension t_w not less than 0.7 t_{min} in the shell plate [see Fig. HW-731, sketch (l)].

HW-731.5 Nozzles With Integral Reinforcement.

Nozzles and other connections having integral reinforcement in the form of extended necks or saddle type pads shall be attached by a full penetration weld or by means of a fillet weld along the outer edge and a fillet, single-bevel, or single-J weld along the inner edge. The throat dimension of the outer weld shall be not less than $^1/_2 t_{min}$. The dimension t_w of the inner weld shall be not less than 0.7 t_{min} [see Fig. HW-731, sketch (k)].

HW-731.6 Fittings.

The attachment of fittings shall meet the following requirements.

(a) Except as provided for in HW-731.7, fittings shall be attached by a full penetration groove weld or

by two fillet or partial penetration welds, one on each face of the boiler wall. The minimum weld dimensions shall be as shown in Fig. HW-731, sketches (u) through (x). Pages 116-116

[SEC IV PT HF-HW A-7] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:46 2003)

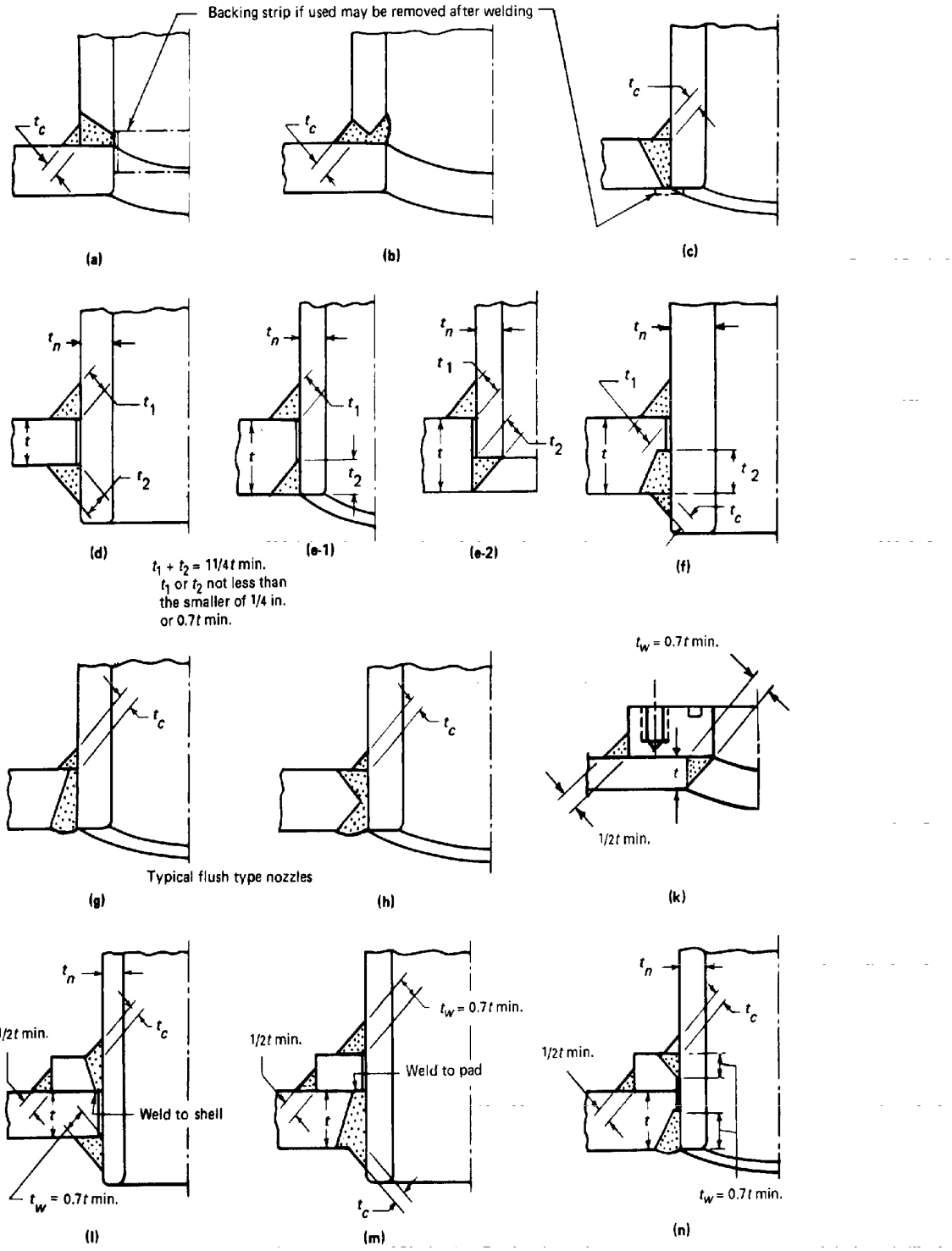


FIG. HW-731 SOME ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF WELDS FOR FITTINGS, NOZZLES, AND OTHER CONNECTIONS TO SHELLS, DRUMS, AND HEADERS

[SEC IV PT HF-HW A-7] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:46 2003)

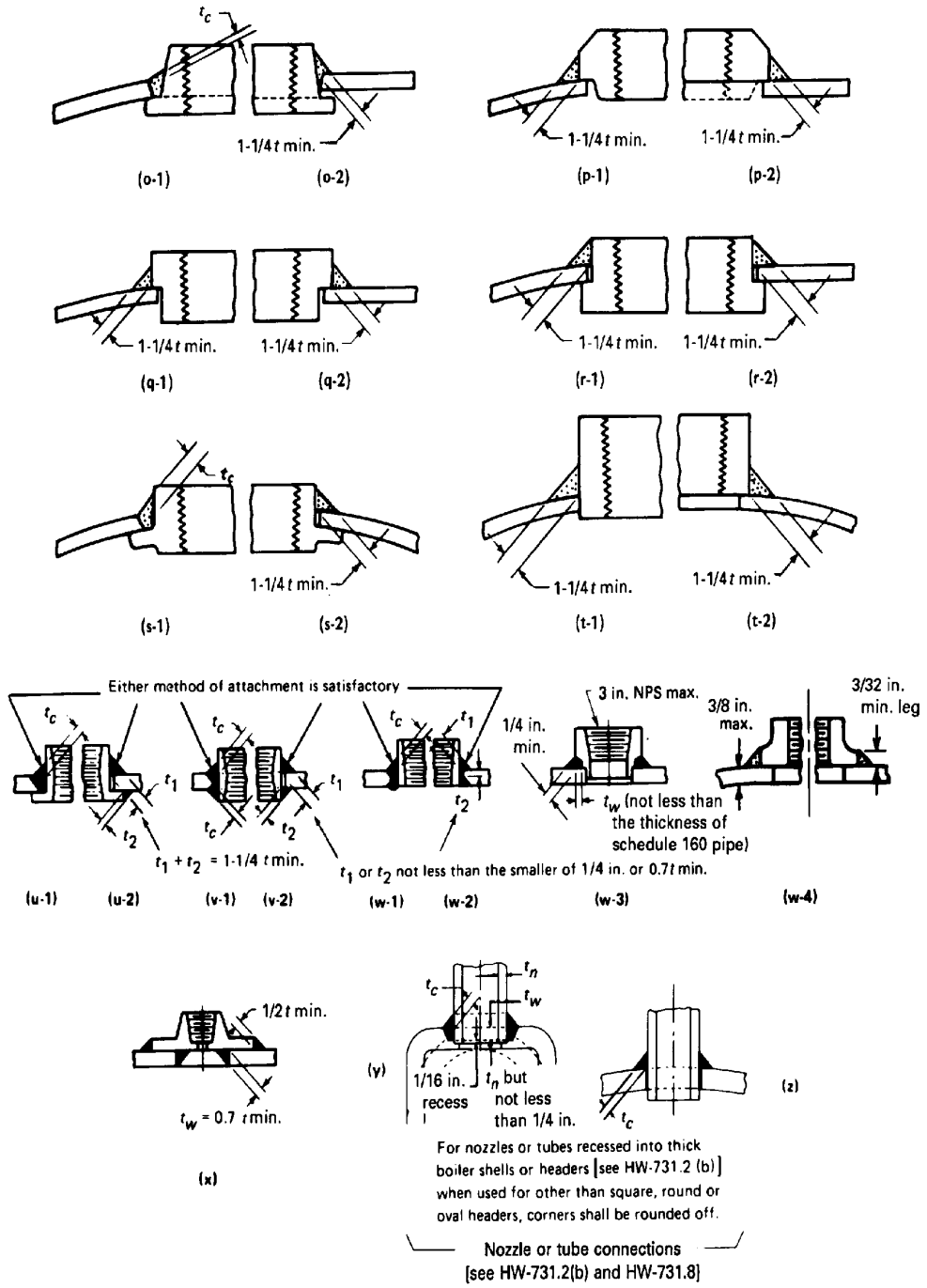


FIG. HW-731 SOME ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF WELDS FOR FITTINGS, NOZZLES, AND OTHER CONNECTIONS TO SHELLS, DRUMS, AND HEADERS (CONT'D)

[SEC IV PT HF-HW A-7] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:47 2003)

FIG. HW-731 SOME ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF WELDS FOR FITTINGS, NOZZLES, AND OTHER CONNECTIONS TO SHELLS, DRUMS, AND HEADERS (CONT'D)

(b) Flange-type fittings not exceeding NPS 3 (DN 75) as shown in Fig. HW-731, sketch (w-4), may be attached without additional reinforcement other than that in the fitting and its attachments, provided all of the following conditions are met.

(1) The boiler wall thickness shall not exceed $^3/_8$ in. (10 mm).

(2) The minimum fillet leg shall be $^3/_{32}$ in. (2.4 mm).

(3) The opening in the boiler wall shall not exceed the outside diameter of the nominal pipe plus $^3/_4$ in. (19 mm).

HW-731.7 Fittings and Nozzles Not Exceeding NPS 3 (DN 75)

(a) Fittings, nozzles, or equivalent bolting pads may be attached to vessels having a wall thickness not greater than $^3/_8$ in. (10 mm) by a fillet weld deposited from the outside only, having the minimum dimensions shown in Fig. HW-731, sketches (o) through (t).

(b) Fittings shown in Fig. HW-731, sketches (u-2), (v-2), (w-2), and (x), may be attached by welds that are exempt from size requirements other than those specified in HW-730.1.

(c) Fittings may be attached by a groove and fillet weld from the outside only as shown in Fig. HW-731, sketch (w-3). The groove weld t_w shall not be less than the thickness of Schedule 160 pipe (ANSI B36.10-1979).

(d) Fittings and nozzles not exceeding NPS $1^1/_2$ (DN 40) as shown in Fig. HW-731, sketches (t-1) and (t-2) may be attached to vessels by a fillet weld deposited from the outside only provided the following conditions are met:

(1) The boiler wall thickness shall not exceed $^3/_8$ in. (10 mm).

(2) The fillet weld shall be a minimum of $0.7t$ instead of $1^1/_4 t_{min}$ shown in Fig. HW-731, sketches (t-1) and (t-2), but in no case less than $^3/_{32}$ in. (2.4 mm) leg.

HW-731.8 Watertube Attachments.

Watertubes not exceeding $3^1/_2$ in. (89 mm) O.D. may be attached to tubesheets with fillet welds deposited from the outside only, having a minimum weld dimension as shown in Fig. HW-731, sketch (z) [see HG-360.2(c)].

HW-740 RESISTANCE WELDING IN CARBON STEEL FOR OTHER THAN BUTT WELDED JOINTS

Resistance spot and seam welding may be used in the construction of embossed or dimpled assemblies under the following limitations and additional requirements.

(a) Materials used in the resistance welded parts are SA-285 and SA-414 with the further limitation that the carbon content is 0.15 maximum on heat analysis.

(b) Embossed or dimpled assemblies consist of either two embossed plates welded together, or two dimpled plates welded together, or an embossed or dimpled plate welded to a flat plate as in Fig. HW-745 sketch (a). A third, intermediate plate, frame, or series of spacers, as illustrated in Fig. HW-740, sketch (a) or (c), may be used to form a three-ply assembly.

(c) The allowable working pressure for resistance welded embossed or dimpled assemblies shall be the lowest pressure established by the following:

(1) a proof test in accordance with the requirements of HG-500;

(2) the computed value of the plain plate, if used in resistance spot welded construction. The plain plate, if used, shall meet the requirements for braced and stayed surfaces in HG-340.

(3) the computed value of the plain plate if used in resistance seam welded construction. The plain plate, if used, shall meet the requirements of HG-307.3(a), formulas (3) and (4), with $z = 2.5$ max., $c = 0.2$.

(d)

(d) In lieu of the Procedure and Performance Qualification requirements of Section IX, the following requirements shall be met for resistance spot welded and resistance seam welded pressure vessels.

(1) Proof Test. A pressure proof test to destruction shall be conducted on a finished vessel or representative panel. The test shall be conducted as specified in HG-502.3. If a representative panel is used, it shall be rectangular in shape and at least 5 pitches in each direction, but not less than 24 in. (610 mm) in either direction.

(2) Workmanship Samples

(a) Three single spot welded specimens, and/or one seam welded specimen, as shown in Fig. HW-745 for two-ply joints, and in Fig. HW-740 for three-ply joints, shall be made immediately before and after the welding of the proof test vessel. These test specimens shall be representative of the manufacturing practice employed in the fabrication of the proof test vessel. When a difference in the amount of magnetic material in the throat of the machine or the part geometry precludes the welding of satisfactory test specimens at

the same machine settings as those used for the proof test vessel, sufficient material shall be placed in the throat of the welding machine to compensate for the difference in size of the proof test panel and the small test specimens.

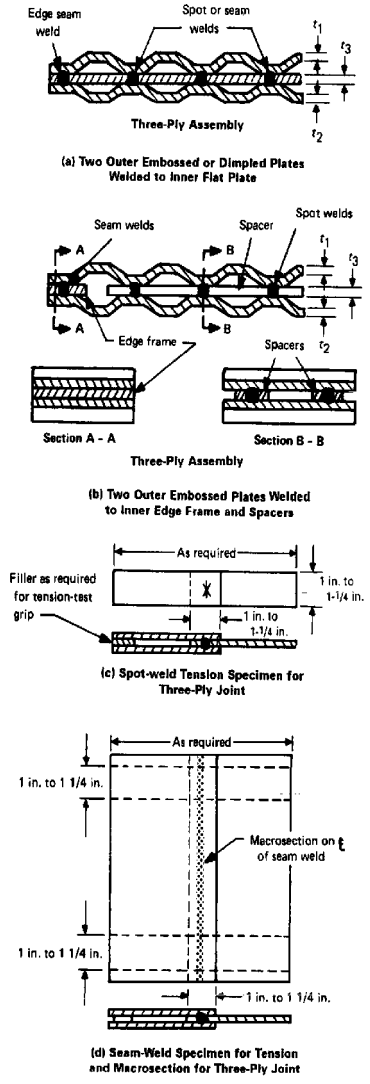


FIG. HW-740 THREE-PLY JOINT ASSEMBLIES

[SEC IV PT HF-HW A-7] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:48 2003)

FIG. HW-740 THREE-PLY JOINT ASSEMBLIES

(b) The spot welded specimens shall be subjected to tensile loading for ultimate strength and visually inspected for nugget size, electrode indentation, and evidence of defects. The seam weld specimens shall be similarly tested for ultimate strength and prepared for macrographic examination to reveal nugget size, spacing, penetration, soundness, and surface conditions.

(c) In addition, a typical spot weld sample and seam welded sample shall be cut from the proof test vessel after failure. A portion of each sample shall be sectioned for macroetch examination.

(d) All pertinent information obtained from the foregoing tests shall be recorded. These samples and data constitute workmanship samples which shall be available for comparison with quality control specimens that may be made during production.

(e) With every change in production run of material or gage, the machine setting control will be verified by test samples.

(3) Machine Settings and Controls. The resistance welding machine settings and process control parameters used in the making of the proof test vessel and the workmanship samples shall be recorded. Except for minor variations and adjustments as may be permitted at the discretion of the Authorized Inspector, the applicable settings shall be used in the fabrication of all vessels in a given production run.

(4) Pressure Tests and Inspection. All production vessels shall be pressure tested to a pressure not less than 1.5 times the allowable working pressure. These tests and inspection during fabrication shall be in accordance with HG-510.

(5) Records. Records shall be kept of all data obtained from tests of the proof test vessel, the workmanship samples, the welding machine settings, the welding procedure, and process control parameters. Records shall be kept of all preheat, postheat, and heat- treatment procedures and of inspection procedures.

(6) If spot and seam welding machines other than those used for the initial proof test vessel and workmanship samples are to be used in production, each additional machine and welding procedure shall be qualified in full accordance with (d). The performance of the additional proof test vessels shall substantiate the allowable working pressure previously established for the specific boiler design.

(7) Lap joints only, between two thicknesses of metal sheet, may be resistance spot or seam welded.

The use of projection welding (including resistance stud welding) is excluded.

(8) The range of thickness of sheet materials which may be resistance spot or seam welded under this case shall be:

(a) two-ply joints [see Fig. HW-745, sketch (a)]:

(1) the minimum thickness t_1 or t_2 shall be 0.045 in. (1.14 mm);

(2) the maximum thickness t_1 or t_2 shall be $^1/_4$ in. (6 mm) nominal.

(b) three-ply joints [see Fig. HW-740, sketches (a) and (b)]:

(1) the two outer layers t_1 and t_2 shall be equal in thickness;

(2) the inner layer t_3 shall be at least as thick as t_1 or t_2;

(3) the minimum thickness of t_1, t_2, and t_3 shall be 0.045 in. (1.14 mm);

(4) the maximum thickness of t_1 and t_2 shall be 0.126 in. (3.20 mm);

(5) the maximum thickness of t_3 shall be 0.188 in. (4.8 mm);

(6) the total thickness of the three layers $t_1 + t_2 + t_3$ shall be 0.135 in. (3.43 mm) min., 0.378 in. (10 mm) max.

HW-745 RESISTANCE WELDING OF HYDRAULICALLY FORMED PANELS

Resistance spot and seam welding may be used in the construction of embossed or dimpled assemblies under the following limitations and additional requirements.

[SEC IV PT HF-HW A-7] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:48 2003)

(a) Materials used in the resistance welded parts of such vessels are: carbon steel SA-285, SA-620, and SA-414, or any proven combination, with the further limitation that the carbon content is 0.15% maximum.

(b) Construction consists of employing resistance spot welding or resistance seam welding to join two sheets together [see Fig. HW-740, sketch (a)]. Subsequent to the joining and sealing operation, the assembly is subjected to a hydraulic or pneumatic pressure to achieve a dimpled formation.

Construction may consist of two sheets of equal thickness that results in the formation of a dimpled surface on both sides of an assembly or two sheets of different thicknesses that results in the formation of a dimpled surface on only one side of a pressure assembly. Any number of such assemblies may be joined together, by fusion welding, to make a boiler or boiler parts.

(c) The allowable working pressure for the construction shall be the lowest pressure established by the following:

(1) a proof test in accordance with the bursting test procedures in HG-502 and HG-503 need not be followed, provided that when performing the proof test, the application of pressure is continuous until burst or until the proof test is stopped. In using the formulas for calculating the maximum allowable working pressure, a value of 0.80 shall be used for E, the weld joint efficiency factor. All provisions of HG-501 and HG-504 shall apply.

(2) the computed value of the plain plate, if used in resistance spot welded construction. The plain plate, if used, shall meet the requirements for braced and stayed surfaces in HG-340.

(3) the computed value of the plain plate, if used in resistance seam welded construction. The plain plate, if used, shall meet the requirements of HG-307.3 formulas (3) and (4), with $z = 2.5$ max., $c = 0.2$, and $E = 1.0$.

(d) The following design limitations apply.

(1) A change in any of the variables will require requalification of the design proof test of (c):

(a) an increase in the spot or row pitch exceeding $^{1}/_{16}$ in. (1.6 mm);

(b) a change in the specification, type, or grade of material or material thickness for either sheet or both sheets;

(c) a change in the electrode size or material.

(2) A duplicate test panel of that used to establish the maximum allowable working pressure shall be inflated to a pressure at least 5% greater than the maximum forming pressure to be used in production. The rate of pressurization shall be the same as that used in the burst test. The panel shall be sectioned to show at least six spot welds [see Fig. HW-745, sketches (d-1) and (d-2)]. The weld cross sections shall be subjected to macroetch examinations and shall show no cracks. The maximum pillow heights measured, as shown in Fig. HW-745, sketch (e), of panels made in production shall not exceed 95% of the maximum pillow height of this duplicate test panel. The maximum forming pressure shall not exceed 80% of the burst pressure.

(e) In lieu of the Procedure Qualification requirements of Section IX, the following requirements shall be met for resistance spot welded and resistance seam welded panels.

(1) Proof Test. A pressure proof test to destruction as set forth in (c)(1) above shall be conducted on a finished boiler or representative panel. This test may be a separate test or part of the test in (c)(1) above.

[SEC IV PT HF-HW A-7] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:50 2003)

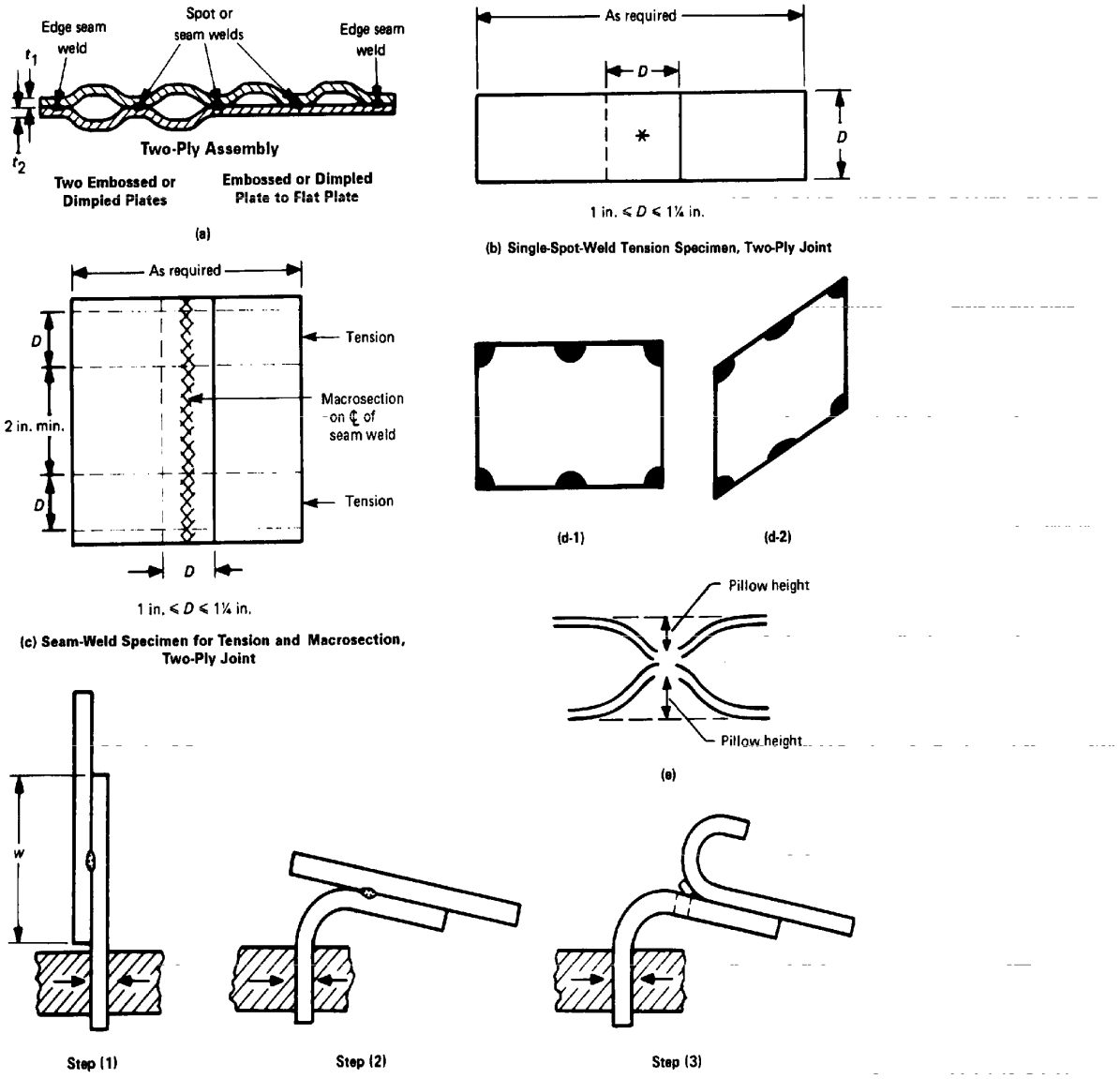


FIG. HW-745 TWO-PLY JOINT ASSEMBLIES

FIG. HW-745 TWO-PLY JOINT ASSEMBLES

If a representative panel is used, it shall be rectangular in shape and at least 5 pitches in each direction, but not less than 24 in. (610 mm) in either direction.

[SEC IV PT HF-HW A-7] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:50 2003)

(a) A typical spot weld sample and seam welded sample shall be cut from the proof test panel after failure. A portion of each sample shall be sectioned for macroetch examination.

(2) Workmanship Samples

(a) Three single spot welded specimens, and/or one seam welded specimen as shown in Fig. HW-745, sketches (b) and (c), shall be made immediately before and after the welding of the proof test panel. These test specimens shall be representative of the manufacturing practice employed in the fabrication of the proof test panel. When a difference in the amount of magnetic material in the throat of the welding machine or the part geometry precludes the welding of satisfactory test specimens at the same machine settings as those used for the proof test panel, sufficient material shall be placed in the throat of the welding machine to compensate for the difference in size of the proof test panel and the small test specimens.

(b) The spot welded specimens shall be subjected to tensile loading for ultimate strength and visually inspected for nugget size, electrode indentation, and evidence of defects. The seam weld specimens shall be similarly tested for ultimate strength and prepared for macrographic examination to reveal nugget size, spacing, penetration, soundness, and surface condition.

(c) All pertinent information obtained from the foregoing tests shall be recorded. These samples and data constitute workmanship samples which shall be available for comparison with quality control specimens that may be made during production.

(d) With every change of material gage, the machine setting control shall be verified by test samples.

(e) At the beginning of each production run, which is a group of panels or assemblies all produced during a 24 hr period using the same welding process, material, and material thickness, either a tension test or a peel test as shown in Fig. HW-745, sketch (f), shall be performed. The acceptance criterion for these tests shall be that the parent metal adjacent to the weld must fail before the weld itself fails.

(3) Machine Settings and Controls. The resistance welding machine settings and process control parameters used in the making of the proof test panel and the workmanship samples shall be recorded. Except for minor variations and adjustments as may be permitted at the discretion of the Inspector, the applicable settings shall be used in the fabrication of all panels in a given production run.

(4) Pressure Tests and Inspection. All production boilers shall be pressure tested to a pressure not less than 1.5 times the allowable working pressure. These tests and inspection during fabrication shall be in accordance with HG-510, except that provisions of HG-510(b) may be exceeded because the application of pressure during formation of the pillows will exceed the design and test pressure by more than the allowed 10 psi (69 kPa).

(5) Records. Records shall be kept of all data obtained from tests of the proof test boiler or panel, duplicate test panel, the workmanship samples, the welding machine settings, and the welding procedure and process control parameters. Records shall be kept of all preheat, postheat, and heat-treatment procedures and of inspection procedures.

(f) If spot and seam welding machines other than those used for the initial proof test panel, duplicate test panel, and workmanship samples are to be used in production, each additional machine and welding procedure shall be qualified in accordance with (e)(2)(a) and (b) above.

(g) Lap joints only, between two thicknesses of metal sheet, may be resistance spot or seam welded. The use of projection welding (including resistance stud welding) is excluded.

(h) The range of thickness of sheet materials which may be resistance spot or seam welded shall be:

(1) two-ply joints [see Fig. HW-745, sketch (a)]:

(a) the minimum thickness t_1 or t_2 shall be 0.045 in. (1.14 mm);

(b) the maximum thickness t_1 or t_2 shall be $^1/_4$ in. (6 mm) nominal.

(i) If arc welding, gas welding, or brazing are used for the attachment of nozzles, tubes, and fittings, for repair or for the closing of peripheral seams, the qualification of welding or brazing procedure and welding or brazing performance shall be conducted in accordance with the requirements of Section IX. Filler metals, if used, shall conform to the requirements of

Section IX.

(j) For construction having sheets formed within dies where the dies control the shape of the pillow and restrain the spot welds so that the bending in the sheet is outside the heat affected zone, the welding may be done before or after forming. The requirements and limitations in (d)(2) above do not apply to this method of construction.

HW-800 FORMING PLATES

The ends of plates which form the longitudinal joints of boiler shells shall be formed by pressure, not sledging, to the proper curvature.

HW-801 BASE METAL PREPARATION

(a) The preparation of joints prior to welding may involve any of the conventional methods in use such as machining, thermal cutting, chipping, grinding, or combinations of these.

(b) Where thermal cutting is used, the effect on the mechanical and metallurgical properties of the base metal shall be taken into consideration.

(c) The method of base metal preparation used shall leave the welding groove with reasonably smooth surfaces and free from deep notches, striations, or irregularities. The surfaces for welding shall be free of all scale, rust, oil, grease, or other foreign materials.

(d) Cast surfaces to be welded shall be machined, chipped, or ground where necessary to remove foundry scale and to expose sound metal.

HW-810 ASSEMBLY

(a) Parts that are being welded shall be fitted, aligned, and retained in position during the welding operation within the tolerance specified in HW-812.

(b) Bars, jacks, clamps, tack welds, or other appropriate means may be used to hold the edges of the parts to be welded in alignment.

(c) Tack welds used to secure alignment shall either be removed completely when they have served their purpose, or their stopping and starting ends shall be properly prepared by grinding or other suitable means so that they may be satisfactorily incorporated into the final weld. Tack welds, whether removed or left in place, shall be made using a fillet weld or butt weld procedure qualified in accordance with Section IX. Tack welds to be left in place shall be made by welders qualified in accordance with Section IX and shall be examined visually for defects, and if found defective shall be removed.

It is not necessary that a subcontractor performing such tack welds for the vessel manufacturer be a holder of an ASME Certificate of Authorization. If the tack welds are permanently left in place, the final vessel manufacturer shall maintain the controls to assure that the necessary welding procedure and performance qualifications are met in order to satisfy Code requirements.

(d) When joining two parts by the inertia and continuous drive friction welding processes, one of the two parts must be held in a fixed position and the other part rotated. The two faces to be joined must be essentially symmetrical with respect to the axis of rotation. Some of the basic types of applicable joints are solid round to solid round, tube to tube, solid round to tube, solid round to plate, and tube to plate.

[SEC IV PT HF-HW A-8] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:51 2003)

HW-812 ALIGNMENT TOLERANCE

(a) The edges of plates at butt joints shall not be offset from each other at any point in excess of the amount in the following table, where *t* is the plate thickness.

	Direction of Joints in Cylindrical Vessels	
Plate Thickness, in.	**Longitudinal**	**Circumferential**
Up to $^1/_2$, incl.	$^1/_4t$	$^1/_4t$
Over $^1/_2$ to $^3/_4$, incl.	$^1/_8$ in.	$^1/_4t$
Over $^3/_4$	$^1/_8$ in.	$^3/_{16}$ in.

(b) Butt joints in heads and butt joints between cylindrical shells and hemispherical heads shall meet the requirements in (a) above for longitudinal joints in cylindrical shells.

HW-813 DISTORTION

(a) The cylinder or barrel of a drum or shell shall be circular at any section within a limit of 1% of the mean diameter, based on the differences between the maximum and minimum mean diameters at any section, and if necessary to meet this requirement shall be reheated, rerolled, or reformed. To determine the difference in diameters, measurements may be made on the inside or the outside. For vessels with longitudinal lap joints, the permissible difference in inside diameters may be increased by the nominal plate thickness.

(b) Cylindrical furnaces and other cylindrical parts subjected to external pressure shall be rolled to a circle with a maximum permissible deviation from the true circle of not more than $^1/_4$ in. (6 mm).

HW-820 SPECIFIC WELDING REQUIREMENTS

HW-820.1 Finished Longitudinal and Circumferential Joints

(a) Butt welded joints shall have complete penetration and full fusion. The surface of the weld may be left as-welded provided the weld is free of coarse ripples, grooves, overlaps, abrupt ridges, or valleys. A reduction in thickness due to the welding process is acceptable provided all of the following conditions are met.

(1) The reduction in thickness shall not reduce the material of the adjoining surfaces below the minimum required thickness at any point.

(2) The reduction in thickness shall not exceed $^1/_{32}$ in. (0.8 mm) or 10% of the nominal thickness of the adjoining surface, whichever is less.[1]

HW-820.2 Fillet Welds.

In making fillet welds, the weld metal shall be deposited in such a way that adequate penetration into the base metal at the root of the weld is secured. The reduction of the thickness of the base metal due to the welding process at the edges of the fillet weld shall meet the same requirements as for butt welds [see HW-820.1].

1 It is not the intent of this paragraph to require measurement of reductions in thickness due to the welding process. If a disagreement between the Manufacturer and the Inspector exists as to the acceptability of any reduction in thickness, the depth shall be verified by actual measurement.

HW-820.3 Double-Welded Butt Joints.

Before applying weld metal on the second side to be welded, the root of double-welded butt joints shall be prepared by suitable methods such as chipping, grinding, or thermal gouging, so as to secure sound metal at the base of weld metal deposited on the face side, except for those processes of welding by which proper fusion and penetration are otherwise obtained and by which the root of the weld remains free from impurities.

HW-820.4 Stud Welding.

[SEC IV PT HF-HW A-8] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:51 2003)

In the case where arc stud welding and resistance stud welding is used to attach load carrying studs, a production stud weld test of the procedure and welding operator shall be performed on five studs, welded and tested in accordance with either the bend or torque stud weld testing described in Section IX as follows:

(a) prior to start of daily operation if used continuously on units of similar construction;

(b) prior to the start of application to a given unit when not used continuously;

(c) after adjustment or servicing is done on welding equipment.

HW-820.5 Procedure and Performance Qualification Tests and Material Requirements for Stud Welding.

Procedure and performance qualification tests for stud welds shall be made in accordance with Section IX. Further requirements for stud welding are as follows.

(a) Metallic coatings (such as cadmium plating) if used shall not be within $^{1}/_{2}$ in. (13 mm) from the weld end of the stud.

(b) The base metal must be above 50°F (10°C) during the welding process.

HW-820.6 Stud Welding.

In the case where stud welding and resistance stud welding are used for joining nonpressure bearing attachments, which have essentially no load carrying function (such as extended heat transfer surfaces, insulation attachment pins, etc), to pressure parts by any automatic welding process performed in accordance with a Welding Procedure Specification (in compliance with Section IX as far as applicable), procedure and performance qualification testing is not required.

In the case where stud welding is used to attach nonload-carrying studs, a production stud weld test, appropriate to the end use application requirements, shall be specified by the Manufacturer or assembler and carried out on a separate test plate or tube:

(a) prior to start of daily operation if used continuously on units of similar construction;

(b) prior to the start of application to a given unit when not used continuously;

(c) after adjustment or servicing is done on welding equipment.

HW-820.7

The welded joint between two members joined by the inertia and continuous drive friction welding processes shall be a full penetration weld. Visual examination of the as-welded flash roll of each

weld shall be made as an in-process check. The weld upset shall meet the specified amount within ±10%. The flash shall be removed to sound metal.

HW-820.8 Welding (Brazing) by Non-Certificate Holders

(a) Welders, including brazers, and welding and brazing operators not in the employ of the manufacturer (Certificate of Authorization Holders) may be used to fabricate boilers or parts thereof constructed in accordance with the Section, provided all of the following conditions are met.

(1) All Code construction shall be the responsibility of the Manufacturer.

(2) All welding shall be performed in accordance with the Manufacturer's welding procedure specifications which have been qualified by the Manufacturer in accordance with the requirements of Section IX and this Section.

(3) All welders shall be qualified by the Manufacturer in accordance with the requirements of Section IX and this Section.

(4) The Manufacturer's quality control system shall include as a minimum:

(a) a requirement for complete and exclusive administrative and technical supervision of all welders by the

[SEC IV PT HF-HW A-8] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:51 2003)

Manufacturer;

(b) evidence of the Manufacturer's authority to assign and remove welders at his discretion without involvement of any other organization;

(c) a requirement for Assignment of Welder Identification symbols;

(d) evidence that this program has been accepted by the Manufacturer's Authorized Inspection Agency which provides the inspection service.

(5) The Manufacturer shall be responsible for Code compliance of the completed boiler or part, including Code symbol stamping and providing Data Report Forms properly executed and countersigned by the Inspector.

HW-830 REPAIR OF WELD DEFECTS

Visible defects, such as cracks, pinholes and incomplete fusion, and defects detected by leakage tests shall be removed by mechanical means or by thermal grooving processes, after which the joint shall be rewelded and reexamined.

HW-840 POSTHYDROTEST WELDING OF NONPRESSURE PARTS TO PRESSURE PARTS

Nonpressure parts may be welded to pressure parts after the hydrostatic test has been performed in accordance with the requirements as set forth in HG-510 provided the following criteria are met.

(a) The welding is done in accordance with this Subpart (see HW-820).

(b) The welding is limited to P-No.1 materials.

(c) The attachment is done by stud welding or with fillet welds where the throat of the weld is not to exceed the lesser of 1.5 times the thickness of the pressure part or $^{1}/_{4}$ in. (6 mm).

(d) The completed weld is inspected by the Authorized Inspector.

(e) The Manufacturer's Data Report Form shall be signed only after completion of the welding.

(f) Welding is not permitted on brazed joints.

HW-900 INSPECTION DURING FABRICATION

The manufacturer shall submit the boiler or other pressure part for inspection at such stages of the work as may be designated by the Inspector.

HW-910 CHECK OF WELDING PROCEDURE QUALIFICATIONS

(a) It is the duty of the Inspector to assure himself that the welding procedures employed in construction have been qualified under the provisions of Section IX. The manufacturer shall submit evidence to the Inspector that those requirements have been met.

(b) The Inspector has the right at any time to call for and witness the test welding and testing, although it is not mandatory that he witness the test welding and the testing unless he so desires.

HW-911 CHECK OF WELDER AND WELDING OPERATOR PERFORMANCE QUALIFICATIONS

[SEC IV PT HF-HW A-9] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:51 2003)

(a) It is the duty of the Inspector to assure himself that all welding is done by welders or welding operators qualified under the provisions of Section IX. The manufacturer shall make available to the Inspector a certified copy of the record of performance qualification tests of each welder and welding operator as evidence that these requirements have been met.

(b) The Inspector has the right at any time to call for and witness the test welding and testing, although it is not mandatory that he witness the test welding and the testing unless he so desires.

HB-1000 SCOPE

The requirements of this Subpart HB are applicable to boilers and parts thereof that are fabricated by brazing.

HB-1001 RESPONSIBILITY OF MANUFACTURER OR CONTRACTOR

Each manufacturer or contractor is responsible for the brazing done by his organization and shall establish the procedures and conduct the tests required in Section IX to qualify the brazing procedures he uses in the construction of the brazed assemblies built under Section IV and the performance tests of brazers and brazing operators to determine their ability to apply the procedure properly.

HB-1100 GENERAL

Materials used in the construction of boilers and parts thereof by brazing shall conform to the specifications in Section II, and shall be limited to those materials for which allowable stress values have been assigned in Table HF-300.1 and Table HF-300.2. The materials being brazed shall be of proved brazing quality with the brazing filler metal employed. Satisfactory qualification of the brazing procedure under Section IX is considered proof of acceptable material for brazed construction.

HB-1101 COMBINATIONS OF DISSIMILAR MATERIALS

Combinations of dissimilar metals may be joined by brazing provided they meet the qualification requirements of Section IX.

HB-1102 BRAZING FILLER METALS

The selection of the brazing filler metal for a specific application shall depend upon its suitability for the base metals being joined. Satisfactory qualification of the brazing procedure under Section IX is considered proof of the suitability of the filler metal. Brazing used with brazing filler metals other than those listed in Section II, Part C, SFA-5.8 shall be separately qualified for both procedure and performance qualification in accordance with Section IX.

HB-1103 FLUXES AND ATMOSPHERES

Suitable fluxes or atmospheres or combinations of fluxes and atmospheres shall be used to prevent oxidation of the brazing

[SEC IV PT HF-HB A-11] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:51 2003)

filler metal and the surfaces to be joined. Satisfactory qualification of the brazing procedure under Section IX is considered proof of the suitability of the flux and/or atmosphere.

HB-1200 BRAZING PROCESSES

Specific brazing processes which are permitted for use under this Section are classified by method of heating and are torch brazing, furnace brazing, induction brazing, electrical resistance brazing, and dip brazing - salt and flux bath.

HB-1201 JOINT BRAZING PROCEDURES

A joint brazing procedure shall be developed for each different type of joint of a brazed assembly. A recommended form for recording the brazing procedure is shown in QB-480 of Section IX. If more than one joint occurs in a brazed assembly, the brazing sequence shall be specified on the drawing or in instructions accompanying the drawing. If welding and brazing are to be done on the same assembly, the welding shall precede the brazing unless it is determined that the heat of welding will not adversely affect the braze previously made, and the weld will not be adversely contaminated by the brazing metal.

HB-1202 BRAZING QUALIFICATIONS AND RECORDS

HB-1202.1 Qualification of Brazing Procedures

(a) Each brazing procedure employed in the fabrication of boilers shall be qualified in accordance with Section IX. Only qualified procedure specifications shall be followed in construction. Each manufacturer shall conduct the required tests to qualify all brazing procedures to be used by his organization.

(b) The nominal thickness of base material used with lap joints tested using the test fixture shown in QB-463.7 of Section IX shall not exceed $^{1}/_{2}$ in. (13 mm). There is no thickness limitation when specimens are tested without the test fixture shown in QB-463.7.

HB-1202.2 Qualification of Brazers and Brazing Operators.

All brazers assigned to manual brazing shall have passed the tests prescribed for brazers in Section IX. All brazing operators assigned to brazing by automatic means or by furnace, induction, resistance, or dip brazing shall pass the tests as prescribed in Section IX. Such tests shall be conducted by the manufacturer or contractor.

HB-1202.3 No Production Work Without Qualifications.

No production work shall be undertaken until both the brazing procedure and the brazers or brazing operators have been qualified.

HB-1202.4 Maintenance of Records of Qualifications and Identifying Marks

(a) The manufacturer shall maintain a record of the brazers and brazing operators employed by him showing the date and results of qualifying tests and the identifying mark assigned to each. These records shall be certified to by the manufacturer and shall be accessible to the Inspector.

(b) Each brazer and brazing operator so qualified shall be assigned an identifying number, letter, or symbol by the manufacturer which shall be used to identify the work of that brazer or brazing operator.

[SEC IV PT HF-HB A-13] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:51 2003)

HB-1300 STRENGTH OF BRAZED JOINTS

(a) It is the responsibility of the designer to determine from suitable tests or from past experience that the specific brazing filler metal selected can produce a joint which will have adequate strength over the operating temperature range. The strength of the brazed joint shall not be less than the strength of the base metal, or the weaker of the two base metals in the case of dissimilar metal joints.

(b) For any type of joint, the strength of the brazed section shall exceed that of the base metal portion of the test specimen in the qualification tension tests provided for in QB-150 of Section IX. Lap joints shall have a sufficient overlap to provide a higher strength in the brazed joint than in the base metal.

HB-1301 BRAZED JOINT EFFICIENCY FACTORS

(a) The joint efficiency factor to be used in design of boilers with brazed joints shall be 0.80 for joints in which visual examination assures that the brazing filler metal has penetrated the entire joint.

(b) The joint efficiency factor to be used in the design of boilers shall be 0.50 for joints in which visual examination will not provide proof that the brazing filler metal has penetrated the entire joint.

HB-1302 MINIMUM THICKNESS

The minimum thickness of nonferrous and other copper or copper-alloy plates, heads, and tubesheets shall be as specified in HF-301.

HB-1303 PERMISSIBLE SERVICE TEMPERATURE

Satisfactory qualification of the brazing procedure in accordance with Section IX, Part QB is considered satisfactory proof of the adequacy of the base materials, the brazing filler metal, the flux and/or atmosphere, and other variables of the procedure for service not exceeding 250°F (121°C).

HB-1304 APPLICATION OF BRAZING FILLER METAL

The design shall provide for the application of the brazing filler metal as part of the design of the joint. Where practicable, the brazing filler metal shall be applied in such a manner that it will flow into the joint or be distributed across the joint and produce visible evidence that it has penetrated the joint.

(a) Manual Application. The manual application of the brazing filler metal by face-feeding to a joint should be from one side only. Visual observation of the other side of the joint will then show if the required penetration of the joint by the filler metal has been obtained. If the side opposite to the filler metal application cannot be visually examined, as is the case with socket-type joints in pipe and tubing (blind joint), a joint efficiency factor of 0.50 shall be used in design of this joint.

(b) Preplaced Brazing Filler Metal. The brazing filler metal may be preplaced in the form of slugs, powder, rings, strip, cladding, spraying, or other means. After brazing, the brazing filler metal should be visible on both sides of the joint. If the brazing filler metal is preplaced within a blind joint in such a manner that it penetrates the major portion of the joint during brazing and appears at the visible side of the joint, a joint efficiency factor of 0.80 may be used in the design of the joint. If the brazing filler metal is preplaced on the outside or near the outside of a blind joint, and the other side cannot be inspected to ascertain complete penetration, then a joint efficiency factor of 0.50 shall be used in the design of the joint.

[SEC IV PT HF-HB A-13] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:52 2003)

TABLE HB-1305
RECOMMENDED JOINT CLEARANCES AT BRAZING TEMPERATURE

Brazing Filler Metal	Clearance, in.
B Al Si Group	0.006–0.010 for laps < 1/4 in.
	0.010–0.025 for laps > 1/4 in.
B CuP Group	0.001–0.005
B Ag Group	0.002–0.005
B Cu Zn Group	0.002–0.005
B Cu Group	0.000–0.002

TABLE HB-1305 RECOMMENDED JOINT CLEARANCES AT BRAZING TEMPERATURE

HB-1305 JOINT CLEARANCE

(a) The joint clearance shall be kept sufficiently small so that the filler metal will be distributed by capillary attraction. Since the strength of a brazed joint tends to decrease as the joint clearance used is increased, the clearances for the assembly of joints in boilers shall be within the tolerances set up by the joint design and as used for the corresponding qualification specimens made in accordance with Section IX.

(b) If greater tolerances are to be used in production, the joint must be requalified for those greater tolerances. The control of tolerances required may be obtained by using rivets, spot welding, crimping, or other means which will not interfere with the quality of the braze. If such means are employed in production, they must also be employed in qualification of procedure, brazer, and operator.

NOTE: For guidance, see Table HB-1305 which gives recommended joint clearances at brazing temperature for various types of brazing filler metal. Brazing alloys will exhibit maximum unit strength if clearances are maintained within these limits.

HB-1306 OPENINGS

(a) Openings for nozzles and other connections shall be far enough away from any main brazed joint so that the joint and the opening reinforcement plates do not interfere with one another.

(b) Openings for pipe connections in boilers having brazed joints may be made by inserting pipe couplings, not exceeding NPS 3 (DN 75), or similar devices in the shell or heads and securing them by welding, provided the welding is performed by welders who have been qualified under the provisions of Section IX for the welding position and type of joint used. Such attachments shall conform to the rules for welded connections.

HB-1307 BRAZED CONNECTIONS

[SEC IV PT HF-HB A-13] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:52 2003)

(a) Connections, such as saddle type fittings and fittings inserted into openings formed by outward flanging of the vessel wall, in sizes not exceeding NPS 3 (DN 75), may be attached to boilers by lap joints of brazed construction. Sufficient brazing shall be provided on either side of the line through the center of the opening parallel to the longitudinal axis of the shell to develop the strength of the reinforcement through shear in the brazing.

(b) For nozzle fittings having a bolting flange and an integral flange for brazing, the thickness of the flange attached to the boiler shall not be less than the thickness of the neck of the fitting.

HB-1400 CLEANING OF SURFACES TO BE BRAZED

The surfaces to be brazed shall be clean and free from grease, paint, oxides, scale, and foreign matter of any kind. Any chemical or mechanical cleaning method may be used that will provide a surface suitable for brazing.

1 Flux residues can be extremely corrosive as well as interfere with visual inspection.

HB-1401 POSTBRAZING OPERATIONS

Brazed joints shall be thoroughly cleaned of flux residue by any suitable means after brazing and prior to inspection.[1] Other postbrazing operations such as thermal treatments shall be performed in accordance with the qualified procedure.

HB-1402 REPAIR OF DEFECTIVE BRAZING

Brazed joints which have been found to be defective may be rebrazed, where feasible, after thorough cleaning, and by employing the same brazing procedure used for the original braze. If a different brazing procedure is employed, i.e., torch repair of furnace brazed parts, a repair brazing procedure shall be established and qualified.

When a repair brazing procedure is established it shall provide control of the application of brazing filler metal to meet the conditions set forth in HB-1301(a). Where these requirements cannot be met, the limitations of HB-1301(b) will apply.

HB-1500 INSPECTION

HB-1501 INSPECTION OF BRAZING PROCEDURE

The Inspector shall examine the procedure for each type of joint being produced and shall determine that the procedure has been qualified in accordance with the requirements of Section IX and shall satisfy himself that fabrication of the joint is in accordance with the procedure. Where there is evidence of consistent poor quality, the Inspector shall have the right at any time to call for and witness tests of the brazing procedure.

[SEC IV PT HF-HB A-15] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:52 2003)

HB-1502 CERTIFICATION OF BRAZER AND BRAZING OPERATOR

(a) The manufacturer shall certify that the brazing on a vessel or part thereof has been done by brazers or brazing operators who are qualified under the requirements of Section IX, and the Inspector shall assure himself that only qualified brazers or brazing operators have been used.

(b) The manufacturer shall make available to the Inspector a certified copy of the record of the qualification tests of each brazer and brazing operator. The Inspector shall have the right at any time to call for and witness tests of the ability of a brazer or brazing operator.

HB-1503 VISUAL EXAMINATION

(a) Where possible, both sides of each brazed joint shall be visually examined after flux residue removal. Where it is not possible to inspect one side of a brazed joint (blind joint), the Inspector shall check the design to determine that the proper joint factor has been employed, unless he can assure himself that the brazing filler metal has been preplaced in such a manner that it satisfied HB-1304.

(b) There shall be evidence that the brazing filler metal has penetrated the joint. In a butt braze there shall be no concavity. The braze may be repaired or rebrazed.

(c) The presence of a crack in the brazing filler metal shall be cause for rejection. Dye penetrant inspection may be used if desired. The braze may be repaired or rebrazed.

(d) The presence of a crack in the base metal adjacent to a braze shall be cause for rejection even if the crack is filled with brazing alloy. Such cracking shall not be repaired.

(e) Visible pinholes or open defects in the braze shall be cause for rejection. The joint may be rebrazed.

(f) Rough fillets, particularly those with a convex appearance, are cause for rejection. Such joints may be repaired or rebrazed.

HB-1510 STAMPING

Boilers shall be stamped according to the requirements of HG-530 or the stamping may be placed on a nonferrous plate, irremovably attached to a visible part of the boiler.

HC-100 SCOPE

The rules in Part HC are applicable to heating boilers that are constructed primarily of cast iron, and shall be used in conjunction with general requirements of Part HG of this Section.

[SEC IV PT HC A-2] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:52 2003)

HC-200 GENERAL MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

All materials used for heating boilers that are constructed primarily of cast iron shall meet the requirements of this Article for gray iron castings.

HC-201 MANUFACTURE

The melting procedure shall be optional with the Manufacturer.

HC-202 CHEMICAL COMPOSITION

Drillings taken from test ingots, broken test specimens, or from castings, shall conform to the following as to chemical composition.

(a) The manganese shall be controlled as required to meet $Mn \geq (1.7 \times S) + 0.2$, where Mn is percent manganese and S is percent sulfur.

(b) The phosphorous content shall not exceed 1.00%.

HC-203 TENSILE STRENGTH CLASSIFICATION

Castings shall be known and listed by classes according to the minimum requirements as to tensile strengths of test bars, specified as follows:

Class No.	**Tensile Strength Min., psi**
20	20,000
25	25,000
30	30,000
35	35,000
40	40,000

HC-204 TENSION TEST

The tension test shall be considered the primary test for qualification under this Article. The results of the tension or transverse tests shall determine compliance for the various classes given in HC-203. (See HC-212, Retests.)

HC-205 TEST BARS

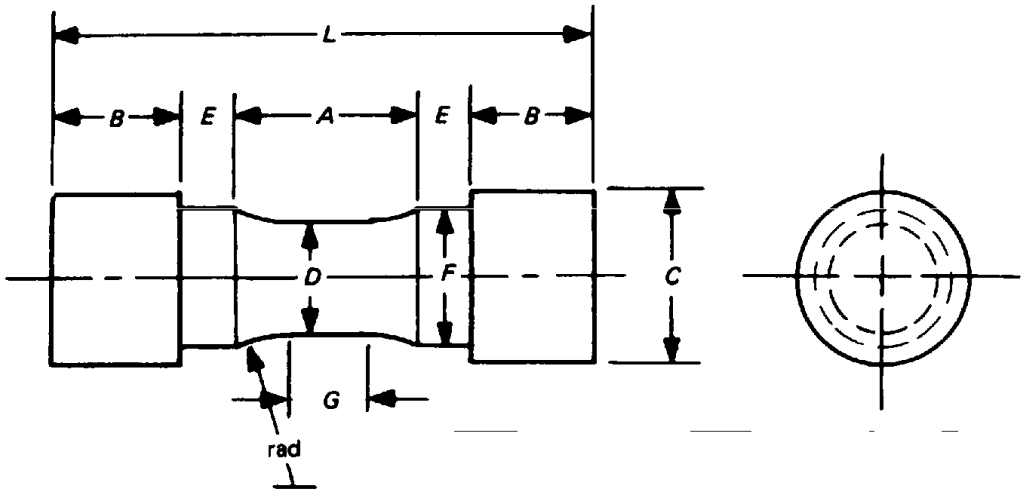
Test bars shall be cast separately from the castings (see HC-207). The sizes of cast test bars shall be as determined in HC-206. Tension specimens shall be machined from those castings to the dimensions shown in Fig. HC-205.1. Tension test specimens "cast to size" shall not be used. The test bar castings shown in Fig. HC-206.1 may be used for optional transverse tests, when that test is specified.

HC-206 SELECTION OF TEST BAR SIZE

The dimensions of the test bars as shown in Fig. HC-206.1 shall be determined by the thickness of the controlling section of the casting as follows (the body or shell of the casting shall be the controlling section):

Thickness of Controlling Section of Casting, in.	**Test Bar**
0.5 and under	A
0.51 to 1.00	B
over 1.00	C

[SEC IV PT HC A-2] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:52 2003)



Dimensions			
	Tension Test Specimen *A*	Tension Test Specimen *B*	Tension Test Specimen *C*
G—Length of parallel, min., in.	0.50	0.75	1.25
D—Diameter, in.	0.500 ± 0.010	0.750 ± 0.015	1.25 ± 0.025
R—Radius of fillet, min., in.	1	1	2
A—Length of reduced section, min., in.	1¼	1½	2¼
L—Overall length, min., in.	3¾	4	6⅜
C—Diameter of end section, in., approximately	¾	1⅛	1⅞
E—Length of shoulder, min., in.	¼	¼	5/16
F—Diameter of shoulder, in.	⅝ ± 1/64	15/16 ± 1/64	1 7/16 ± 1/64
B—Length of end section	Note (1)	Note (1)	Note (1)

NOTE:
(1) Optional to fit holders on testing machine. If threaded, root diameter shall not be less than dimension *F*.

FIG. HC-205.1 DIMENSIONS OF TENSILE TEST SPECIMEN

FIG. HC-205.1 DIMENSIONS OF TENSILE TEST SPECIMEN

HC-207 MOLDING AND POURING TEST BARS

Test bars shall be made under the same sand conditions as the castings. The bars shall be poured from the same ladles of iron used to pour the castings. The test bars shall receive the same thermal treatment as the castings. Thermal treatment involving a liquid quench from above the critical range is not permitted for castings covered in this Article.

[SEC IV PT HC A-2] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:53 2003)

HC-208 TENSILE STRENGTH TEST PROCEDURE

Tension test specimens (Fig. HC-205.1) shall fit the holders of the testing machine in such a way that the load shall be axial. The use of self-aligning shackles is recommended.[1] After reaching a stress equivalent to 15,000 psi, the speed of the moving head of the testing machine shall not exceed 0.125 in./min.

HC-209 TRANSVERSE TEST

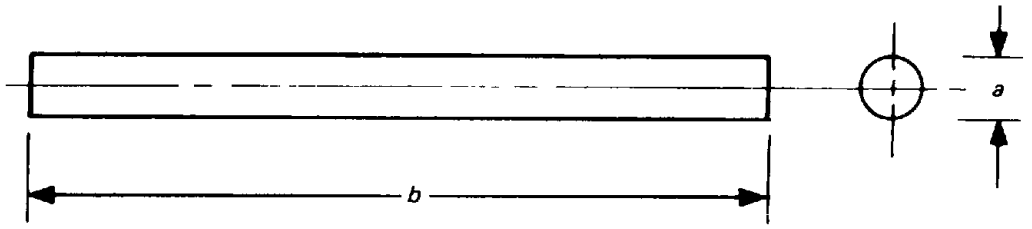
(a) Except for the tensile tests required in HC-402.2, the Manufacturer may waive the tension test and the transverse test may be used. When used, the minimum

1 The use of ball and socket holders in the tensile strength test is recommended. Tests made under conditions where eccentric loadings may occur will give erroneous results.

breaking load, lb, prescribed as follows, shall apply (see HC-212 Retests):

Class No.	Test Bar A 0.875 in. Diam., 12 in. Supports, lb	Test Bar B 1.20 in. Diam., 18 in. Supports, lb	Test Bar C 2.00 in. Diam., 24 in. Supports, lb
20	900	1800	6000
25	1025	2000	6800
30	1150	2200	7600
35	1275	2400	8300
40	1400	2600	9100

[SEC IV PT HC A-2] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:54 2003)



Test Bar	Diameter a, in.	Dimensions Length[1] b in.	Distance Between Supports in Transverse Test, in.
A	0.875	15	12
B	1.20	21	18
C	2.00	27	24

NOTES:
(1) If only tensile tests are specified, dimension *b* may be reduced to the minimum length shown in Fig. HC-205.1.
(2) Test bars shall be plain, cylindrical shapes as shown. Where bars are cast on end, allowance for draft may be made. However, the diameter at the center of the length must correspond to the normal diameter, within the following permissible variations:

	Permissible Variations, in.
Test Bar A	±0.05
Test Bar B	±0.10
Test Bar C	±0.10

FIG. HC-206.1 CAST TEST BARS[2]

FIG. HC-206.1 CAST TEST BARS[2]

(b) Where the transverse test has been made as prescribed in (a) above and the transverse or flexure test bar fails to meet the load requirements, the Manufacturer shall have the right to have a tension test specimen machined from a broken end of the transverse test bar tested. In the event that this tension test specimen conforms to the requirements of the class specified, as prescribed in HC-203, the class requirements shall be considered as having been met, irrespective of the transverse breaking load.

HC-210 TRANSVERSE TEST PROCEDURE

(a) The transverse test shall be made on the bar as cast, or as skin machined (provided in the latter case that the diameter is not reduced below the minimum sizes given in Table HC-210) with central loading between supports. Corrections shall be made for sizes of round bars as shown in Table HC-210. In case of slightly elliptical bars (maximum and minimum diameters both within the tolerances given in Table HC-210), loading shall be on the minimum diameter, and the correction factor shall be obtained as follows: Square the depth of the bar measured at the point of application of the original load, multiply by the width, and divide the product by the cube of the diameter of the standard or nominal size bar. A bar whose diameters (maximum and minimum) vary by more than 0.025 in. (0.64 mm) for the 0.875 in. (22 mm) diameter nominal size, or by more than 0.050 in. (1.27 mm) for the 1.2 in. (30 mm) and 2.0 in. (51 mm) diameter nominal sizes, respectively, shall be considered

[SEC IV PT HC A-2] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:54 2003)

a slightly elliptical bar.

(b) In all cases, controlling dimensions shall be the diameter of the bar at fracture.

TABLE HC-210
CORRECTION FACTORS FOR TRANSVERSE TEST BARS
(In Order to Correct to the Standard Diameter, the Breaking Load and Deflection Obtained in Testing the Bar Shall Be Divided by the Respective Correction Factors.)

Test Bar A 0.875 in. in Diameter			Test Bar B 1.20 in. in Diameter			Test Bar C 2.000 in. in Diameter		
Diameter of Test Bars, in.	Correction Factor		Diameter of Test Bars, in.	Correction Factor		Diameter of Test Bars, in.	Correction Factor	
	Load	Deflection		Load	Deflection		Load	Deflection
0.825	0.838	1.061	1.10	0.770	1.091	1.90	0.857	1.053
0.830	0.853	1.054	1.11	0.791	1.081	1.91	0.871	1.047
0.835	0.869	1.048	1.12	0.813	1.071	1.92	0.885	1.042
0.840	0.885	1.042	1.13	0.835	1.062	1.93	0.899	1.037
0.845	0.900	1.036	1.14	0.857	1.053	1.94	0.913	1.032
0.850	0.916	1.029	1.15	0.880	1.043	1.95	0.927	1.026
0.855	0.933	1.023	1.16	0.903	1.034	1.96	0.941	1.021
0.860	0.949	1.017	1.17	0.927	1.026	1.97	0.955	1.015
0.865	0.966	1.012	1.18	0.951	1.017	1.98	0.970	1.010
0.870	0.983	1.006	1.19	0.975	1.009	1.99	0.985	1.005
0.875	1.000	1.000	1.20	1.000	1.000	2.00	1.000	1.000
0.880	1.017	0.994	1.21	1.025	0.992	2.01	1.015	0.995
0.885	1.034	0.989	1.22	1.051	0.984	2.02	1.030	0.990
0.890	1.051	0.983	1.23	1.077	0.976	2.03	1.046	0.985
0.895	1.069	0.978	1.24	1.105	0.968	2.04	1.061	0.980
0.900	1.087	0.972	1.25	1.130	0.960	2.05	1.076	0.976
0.905	1.106	0.967	1.26	1.158	0.952	2.06	1.092	0.972
0.910	1.125	0.962	1.27	1.185	0.945	2.07	1.109	0.967
0.915	1.143	0.956	1.28	1.214	0.938	2.08	1.125	0.962
0.920	1.162	0.951	1.29	1.242	0.930	2.09	1.141	0.957
0.925	1.181	0.946	1.30	1.271	0.923	2.10	1.158	0.952

TABLE HC-210 CORRECTION FACTORS FOR TRANSVERSE TEST BARS

(c) The rate of application of the load shall be such that fracture is produced in not less than 15 sec for the 0.875 in. (22 mm) diameter bar, 20 sec for the 1.2 in. (30 mm) diameter bar, and 40 sec for the 2.0 (51 mm) in. diameter bar.

HC-211 NUMBER OF TESTS

(a) For purposes of this requirement, a melting period shall not exceed 8 hr.

(b) For tensile or transverse tests for each class of iron, two or more test bars shall be cast from each melt, one during the first half of the melting period, and the other during the last half of the melting period. For chemical composition test samples, see HC-202.

(c) One chemical composition test and either one tensile or one transverse test shall be made on each melt (or mixture if two or more mixtures of a different class of iron are made in a given melt) for each controlling section (see HC-206) in the castings made from each melt (or mixture).[2]

[SEC IV PT HC A-2] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:55 2003)

HC-212 RETESTS

(a) If any test specimen shows defective machining or obvious lack of continuity of metal, it shall be discarded and replaced by another specimen.

2 Example: If Class 20, Test Bar A, castings alone are being made, one test shall be made on each melt on Test Bar A. If Class 20, controlling sections A and B castings (that is, light and medium sections) are made from the same melt (or mixture), then Test Bars A and B shall be made and tested. In all cases, test bars corresponding to the different tensile classes (Nos. 20, 30, and 40) and controlling sections (A, B, and C) must be made and tested to correspond to the classes of iron specified for the castings, and the controlling sections thereof.

(b) In case of the failure of a test bar to meet the specified strength within 90% of its value, a retest may

be made. If the retest fails, the casting shall be rejected, except as provided for in (c) below.

(c) As provided for in HC-209(b) when the transverse test bars fail to meet the specification requirements, tension test specimens may be machined from the broken ends of the transverse test bar. If the tension specimens meet the requirements of the specified class, the castings shall be accepted.

HC-213 WORKMANSHIP, FINISH, AND REPAIR

(a) The surface of the casting shall conform substantially to the dimensions on drawings or to the dimensions predicated by the pattern, and be free from injurious defects. The surface of the casting shall be free from burnt-on sand and shall be reasonably smooth. Risers, fins, and projections used to facilitate the making of the casting shall be removed. In other respects, they shall conform to whatever requirements may be specially agreed upon between the Manufacturer and Purchaser.

(b) Seepage about chaplets, and minor leakage defects, may be repaired by peening or by plugging as directed below. Provided the surrounding metal is sound, a minor leak may be plugged with a solid cast iron tapered thread pipe plug. The maximum size of the pipe plug shall be 1 in. IPS and there shall be no less than four full standard pipe threads in the section metal. (See Table HC-213.)

TABLE HC-213
PIPE PLUG SIZE FOR MINIMUM WALL THICKNESS

Pipe Plug, IPS	Minimum Wall Thickness for 4 Thread Engagement, in.
1/8	0.15
1/4	0.22
3/8	0.22
1/2	0.285
3/4	0.285
1	0.35

[SEC IV PT HC A-2] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:55 2003)

TABLE HC-213 PIPE PLUG SIZE FOR MINIMUM WALL THICKNESS

HC-214 EXAMINATIONS AND TESTS

The Manufacturer shall be responsible for all examinations and tests. When requested by a Purchaser, the Manufacturer shall agree to permit a representative of the Purchaser to have entry, at the time while work under the contract of the Purchaser is being performed, to all parts of the Manufacturer's works which concern the castings manufactured to the requirements of this Article. All examinations and tests shall be made at the place of the manufacture prior to shipment, unless otherwise specified and shall be so conducted as not to interfere unnecessarily with the operation of the works.

HC-215 TEST RECORDS

The Manufacturer shall record and retain all test results required by this Article for a period of at least 1 year. The test results shall be readily identifiable with the casting represented by the test results.

HC-300 MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES

(a) Table HC-300 gives the maximum allowable stress values in tension for castings conforming to the class iron listed therein.

(b) The maximum allowable stress value in bending shall be $1^{1}/_{2}$ times that permitted in tension and the maximum allowable stress value in compression shall be two times that permitted in tension.

(c) Stress values in Table HC-300 shall be used in calculations employing the available formulas in Part HG when applicable to the geometry of the boiler or boiler parts. Where the design pressure cannot be calculated under the available formulas, then the design pressure of the part in question shall be established in accordance with the provisions of HC-400.

HC-301 BASIS FOR ESTABLISHING STRESS VALUES IN TABLE HC-300

In the determination of allowable stress values for pressure parts, the Committee is guided by successful experience in service, insofar as evidence of satisfactory performance is available. Such evidence is considered equivalent to test data where operating conditions are known with reasonable certainty. In the evaluation of new materials, it is necessary to be guided to a certain extent by the comparison of test information with similar data on successful applications of similar materials.

At any temperature below the creep range, the allowable stresses are established at no higher than the lowest of the following:

(1) $^{1}/_{5}$ of the specified minimum tensile strength at room temperature;

(2) $^{1}/_{5}$ of the tensile strength at temperature.

[SEC IV PT HC A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:55 2003)

TABLE HC-300
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES IN TENSION FOR CAST IRON, ksi
(Multiply by 1000 to Obtain psi)

Spec. No. [Note (1)]	Class	Minimum Tensile Strength, ksi	Maximum Allowable Design Stress Values in Tension, ksi
	20	20.0	4.0
	25	25.0	5.0
	30	30.0	6.0
	35	35.0	7.0
	40	40.0	8.0

NOTE:
(1) Cast iron specifications shall comply with Article 2 of Part HC.

TABLE HC-300 MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES IN TENSION FOR CAST IRON, ksi

HC-310 HEADS

HC-310.1 Heads With Pressure on Concave Side.

Heads with pressure on the concave side (plus heads) shall be designed in accordance with formulas in HG-305 using the maximum allowable stress value in tension from Table HC-300. Bolted flanges when cast integral with concave heads shall have dimensions that conform to ANSI B16.1, Cast Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings, Class 125 and Class 250, and may be used as part of a pressure vessel for pressures not exceeding the ANSI ratings at temperatures not exceeding 450°F (232°C).

HC-310.2 Heads With Pressure on Convex Side.

The thickness of heads with pressure on the convex side (minus heads) shall not be less than the thickness required in HC-310.1 for plus heads under the same pressure, nor less than 0.01 times the inside diameter of the head skirt.

[SEC IV PT HC A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:56 2003)

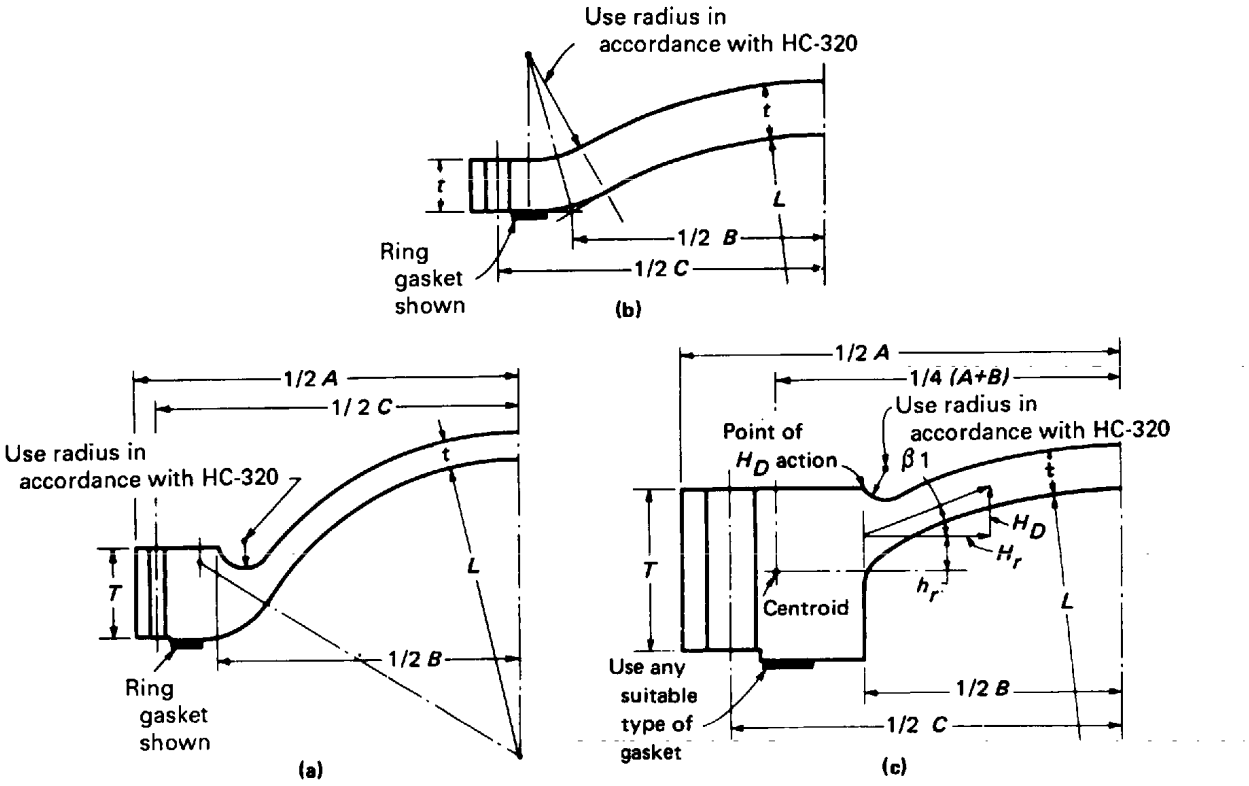


FIG. HC-311 SPHERICALLY SHAPED COVERS WITH BOLTING FLANGES

FIG. HC-311 SPHERICALLY SHAPED COVERS WITH BOLTING FLANGES

HC-311 SPHERICALLY SHAPED COVERS

Circular cast iron spherically shaped covers with bolting flanges, similar to Fig. HC-311, sketches (a), (b), and (c), shall be designed in accordance with the following, and shall also be subjected to the proof test provisions of HC-400.

(a) Notations. The symbols used in the formulas of this paragraph are defined as follows:

A	= outside diameter of flange, in.
B	= inside diameter of flange, in.
C	= bolt circle diameter, in.
t	= minimum required thickness of head plate after forming, in.
L	= inside spherical or crown radius, in.
r	= inside knuckle radius, in.
P	= design pressure for existing vessels, psi
S	= maximum allowable stress value as given in Table HC-300, psi

[SEC IV PT HC A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:56 2003)

T	= flange thickness, in.
M_o	= the total moment, in.-lb, determined as in Section VIII, Division 1, Appendix 2, 2-6, except that for heads of the type shown in Fig. HC-311, sketch (c), a moment $H_r h_r$ (which may add or subtract) shall be included in addition to the moment $H_D h_D$ where
H_r	= radial component of the membrane load in the spherical segment, lb, acting at the intersection of the inside of the flange ring with the center line of the dished cover thickness $= H_D \cot \beta_1$
h_r	= lever arm of force H_r about centroid of flange ring, in.
H_D	= axial component of the membrane load in the spherical segment, lb, acting at the inside of the flange ring $= 0.785B^2P$
h_D	= radial distance from the bolt circle to the inside of the flange ring, in.
β_1	= angle formed by the tangent to the center line of the dished cover thickness at its point of intersection with the flange ring, and a line perpendicular to the axis of the dished cover $=$ arc sin $[B/(2L + t)]$

NOTE: Since $H_r h_r$ in some cases will subtract from the total moment, the moment in the flange ring when the internal pressure is zero may be the determining loading for the flange design.

HC-311.1 Heads Concave to Pressure.

Circular spherically dished heads with bolting flanges, concave to the pressure and conforming to the several types illustrated in Fig. HC-311, shall be designed in accordance with the following formulas:

(a) Heads of the Type Shown in Fig. HC-311, Sketch (a)

(1) Head thickness

$$t = \frac{5PL}{6S}$$

[SEC IV PT HC A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:56 2003)

(2) Flange thickness *T*:

For ring gasket,

$$T = \sqrt{\frac{M_o}{SB}\left[\frac{A + B}{A - B}\right]}$$

For full-faced gasket,

$$T = 0.6\sqrt{\frac{P}{S}\left[\frac{B(A + B)(C - B)}{A - B}\right]}$$

NOTE: The radial components of the membrane load in the spherical segment are assumed to be resisted by its flange.

Within the range of ANSI B16.1-1975, the flange facings and drillings should conform to those standards and the thickness specified therein shall be considered as a minimum requirement.

(b) Heads of the Type Shown in Fig. HC-311, Sketch (b)

(1) Head thickness

$$t = \frac{5PL}{6S}$$

(2) Flange thickness for ring gaskets shall be calculated as follows:

(a) For heads with round bolting holes,

$$t = Q + \sqrt{\frac{1.875M_o(C + B)}{SB(7C - 5B)}} \qquad \text{(I)}$$

$$Q = \frac{PL}{4S}\left[\frac{C + B}{7C - 5B}\right] \qquad \text{(II)}$$

(I-II)

(b) For heads with bolting holes slotted through the edge of the head,

[SEC IV PT HC A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:57 2003)

$$T = Q + \sqrt{\frac{1.875M_o(C + B)}{SB(3C - B)}} \qquad \text{(III)}$$

$$Q = \frac{PL}{4S}\left[\frac{C + B}{3C - B}\right] \qquad \text{(IV)}$$

(III-IV)

(3) Flange thickness for full face gaskets shall be calculated by the following formula:

$$T = Q + \sqrt{Q^2 + \frac{3BQ(C - B)}{L}} \qquad \text{(V)}$$

(V)

The value of Q in Eq. (V) is calculated by Eq. (II) for round bolting holes or by Eq. (IV) for bolting holes slotted through the edge of the head.

(4) The required flange thickness shall be T as calculated in (2) or (3) above, but in no case less than the value of t calculated in (1).

(c) Heads of the Type Shown in Fig. HC-311, Sketch (c)

(1) Head thickness

[SEC IV PT HC A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:57 2003)

$$t = \frac{5PL}{6S}$$

(2) Flange thickness

$$T = F + \sqrt{F^2 + J}$$

where

$$F = \frac{PB\sqrt{4L^2 - B^2}}{8S\,(A - B)}$$

and

[SEC IV PT HC A-3] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:57 2003)

$$J = \left(\frac{M_o}{SB}\right)\left(\frac{A + B}{A - B}\right)$$

HC-315 OPENINGS AND REINFORCEMENTS

(a) The dimensional requirements in HG-320 through HG-328 are applicable to cast iron and shall be used in the design of openings and reinforcements in boilers and boiler parts.

(b) Cast iron flanges, nozzles, and opening reinforcements which enter into the design calculations of the completed boiler or boiler part, shall be cast integrally with the boiler or boiler part.

HC-320 CORNERS AND FILLETS

A liberal radius shall be provided at projecting edges and reentrant corners in accordance with good foundry practice. Abrupt changes in surface contour and in wall thickness at junctures shall be avoided. Fillets and transition sections between adjacent main pressure containment walls or integral attachments thereto, such as nozzles, lugs, supports, flanges, and bosses, shall have radii or the equivalent not less than one times the thickness of the thinner of the sections being joined.

HC-325 WASHOUT OPENINGS

All cast iron steam and hot water boilers shall be provided with washout openings to permit the removal of any sediment that may accumulate therein. Washout plugs shall not be smaller than NPS $1^{1}/_{2}$ (DN 40) for boilers having gross internal volume more than 5 cu ft (142 l). Washout plugs shall not be smaller than 1 in. (25 mm) for boilers having gross internal volume not more than 5 cu ft (142 l). Washout openings may be used for return pipe connections and the washout plug placed in a tee so that the plug is directly opposite and as close as possible to the opening in the boiler.

HC-330 ASSEMBLY METHOD

Cast iron boilers may be assembled using internal connections, such as electrochemically compatible metallic push nipples or grommet seals, or external connections such as cast iron headers or threaded pipe headers. The completed boiler shall satisfactorily pass the hydrostatic test prescribed in HC-410.

[SEC IV PT HC A-4] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:57 2003)

HC-400 TESTS TO ESTABLISH DESIGN PRESSURE

HC-401 GENERAL

(a) The design pressure for a boiler or boiler parts, for which the strength cannot be computed with a satisfactory assurance of accuracy, shall be established in accordance with the requirement of this paragraph using the following test procedure.

(b) Safety of testing personnel should be given serious consideration when conducting the bursting tests in HC-402.

HC-401.1 Purpose for Which Tests May Be Used.

The tests in these paragraphs may be used for the purpose of establishing the design pressure of those parts or component parts for which the thickness cannot be determined by means of design rules given in this Section. Design changes shall also require a retest. The maximum allowable working pressure of all other elements or component parts shall not be greater than that determined by means of the applicable design rules.

HC-401.2 Frequency of Tests.

The tests performed in HC-401.1 shall be repeated within every 5 year period. This testing period may be extended when parts are intermittently produced, in which case the tests shall be performed at the time of or before the first production run after the 5 year period. All requirements of HC-403 shall be met.

HC-402 BURSTING TEST PROCEDURE

(a) The design pressure of any component part tested by this method shall be established by a hydrostatic test to failure by rupture of a full-size sample of such pressure part.

(b) The design pressure of any component part determined by this method shall be based on hydrostatically testing three representative boilers or boiler parts to destruction. The lowest value of P_B obtained shall be used in determining the value of P_R in the following formula:

$$P_R = \frac{P_B}{5} \times \left[\frac{\text{Specified minimum tensile strength}^1}{\text{Average tensile strength of associated test bar (see HC-402.2)}} \right]$$

where

P_R = design pressure, psi

P_B = destruction test pressure, psi

NOTE: Due to the geometry of parts of cast iron boilers, failure under hydrostatic tests is principally in bending. When an analysis of the test indicates failure occurred in bending, P_R may be multiplied by 1.5.

HC-402.1

HC-402.1 Test Gages

(a) An indicating gage shall be connected directly to the vessel. If the indicating gage is not readily visible to the operator controlling the pressure applied, an additional indicating gage shall be provided where it will be visible to the operator throughout the duration of the test. For large vessels, it is recommended that a recording gage be used in addition to indicating gages.

(b) Dial indicating pressure gages used in testing shall be graduated over a range of about double the intended maximum test pressure, but in no case shall the range be less than $1^{1}/_{2}$ nor more than 4 times that pressure. Digital reading pressure gages having a wider range of pressure may be used provided the readings give the same or greater degree of accuracy as obtained with dial pressure gages.

(c) All gages shall be calibrated against a standard deadweight tester or a calibrated master gage. Gages shall be recalibrated at any time that there is reason to believe that they are in error.

1 The specified tensile strength is the tensile strength for the class of iron set forth in Table HC-300.

HC-402.2 Associated Test Bars.

A separately cast test bar shall be produced, machined, and tested in

accordance with the requirements of the tensile bar test procedure in Article 2 of Part HC for each of the three boilers or boiler sections to be tested to destruction [see HC-402(b)]. Each test bar shall be from the same ladle of iron from which is cast the boiler or boiler section to be subjected to bursting. The arithmetical average tensile strength, psi, of the three bars shall be determined and shall equal or exceed the minimum tensile strength, specified in Table HC-300, of the class of iron selected by the Manufacturer for use in the formula in HC-402(b) for determining the design pressure. In no case shall the actual tensile strength of any of the three test bars, used to determine this arithmetical average tensile strength, be more than 10% under the minimum tensile strength listed in Table HC-300 for the class of iron selected by the Manufacturer. The tensile strengths obtained from the associated test bars shall be recorded on the Manufacturer's Master Data Report for Boilers Constructed From Cast Iron (Form H-5).

HC-403 WITNESSING, RECORDING, AND CERTIFYING TESTS

Tests to establish the design pressure of a boiler or boiler parts shall be witnessed by the Manufacturer's personnel designated to be responsible for the examination. These bursting tests shall be recorded on the Manufacturer's Master Data Report for Boilers Constructed From Cast Iron as shown in Form H-5 and the completed form shall be certified by the designated responsible engineering head of the Manufacturer and his signature notarized. These forms shall be kept on file by the Manufacturer as a matter of record.

HC-404 RATING OF PRODUCTION BOILERS BASED ON TESTS

All boilers or boiler parts of the same material, design, and construction, whose design pressures are based on a test to destruction of a sample boiler or boiler part in accordance with HC-402, shall be considered to have design pressures equal to the maximum allowable working pressure thus determined and shall be subjected to a hydrostatic test pressure in conformity with rules of HC-410.

HC-410 HYDROSTATIC TEST

All completed boilers or boiler parts shall satisfactorily pass the hydrostatic test prescribed in this paragraph.

HC-410.1 Steam Boilers.

All steam boilers shall have each individual section or boiler part subjected to a hydrostatic test pressure of not less than 60 psig (414 kPa) at the shop where made. The assembled boiler shall be subjected to a hydrostatic test of not less than 45 psig (310 kPa).

HC-410.2 Hot Water Boilers.

[SEC IV PT HC A-4] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:57 2003)

All hot water heating or hot water supply boilers marked for working pressures not over 30 psi (207 kPa) shall have each individual section or boiler part subjected to a hydrostatic test of not less than 60 psi (414 kPa) at the shop where made. Hot water heating and hot water supply boilers marked for working pressures over 30 psi (207 kPa) shall have each individual section or boiler part subjected to a hydrostatic test of $2^1/_2$ times the maximum allowable working pressure at the shop where made. The assembled boiler shall be subjected to a hydrostatic test pressure not less than $1^1/_2$ times the maximum allowable working pressure.

HC-410.3 Required Test Pressure.

In making hydrostatic pressure tests, the pressure shall be under such control that in no case shall the required test pressure be exceeded by more than 10 psi (69 kPa).

HC-501 GENERAL

[98]
HC-501.1 Quality Control System.

Each Manufacturer[1] or shop assembler shall have and maintain a quality control system which will establish that all Code requirements, including material, design, testing, fabrication, examination, and inspection (by the Manufacturer and shop assembler), shall be met.

Providing that Code requirements are suitably identified, the system may include provisions for satisfying any requirements by the Manufacturer or shop assembler or user which exceed minimum Code requirements and may also include provision for quality control of non-Code work. In such systems, the Manufacturer or shop assembler may make changes in parts of the system which do not affect the Code requirements.

The system that the Manufacturer or shop assembler uses to meet the requirements of this Section must be one suitable for his own circumstances. The necessary scope and detail of the system shall depend upon the complexity of the work performed and upon the size and complexity of the organization. A written description of the system the Manufacturer or shop assembler will use to produce a Code item shall be available for review. Depending upon the circumstances, the description may be brief or voluminous.

The written description may contain information of a proprietary nature relating to the Manufacturer's or shop assembler's processes. Therefore, the Code does not require any distribution of this information, except to the ASME Designee, as covered by HC-502.11.3. It is intended that information learned about the quality control system in connection with evaluation will be treated as confidential.

1 In Article 5, the Manufacturer referred to is the foundry who casts the boiler part or section and who may shop assemble it.

[98]

HC-502 OUTLINE OF FEATURES TO BE INCLUDED IN THE WRITTEN DESCRIPTION OF THE QUALITY CONTROL SYSTEM

The following is a guide to some of the features which should be covered in the written description of the quality control system.

HC-502.1 Product or Work Description.

The quality control system shall contain a brief description of the products the Manufacturer wishes to fabricate under the Code or the work the shop assembler wishes to accomplish under the Code.

HC-502.2 Authority and Responsibility.

The authority and responsibility of those in charge of the quality control system shall be clearly established. Persons performing quality control functions shall have sufficient and well-defined responsibility, the authority, and the organizational freedom to identify quality control problems and to initiate, recommend, and provide solutions.

HC-502.3 Organization.

An organization chart showing the relationship between management and engineering, purchasing, manufacturing, inspection, and quality control is required to reflect the actual organization. The purpose of this chart is to identify and associate the various organizational groups with the particular function for which they are responsible. The Code does not intend to encroach on the Manufacturer's or shop assembler's right to establish and, from time to time, alter whatever form of organization the Manufacturer or shop assembler considers appropriate for his Code work.

HC-502.4 Drawings, Design Calculations, Test Results, and Specification Control.

The Manufacturer's or shop assembler's quality control system shall provide procedures which will insure that the latest applicable drawings, design calculations, test results, specifications, and instructions required by the Code, as well as

authorized changes, are used for manufacture, assembly, examination, inspection, and testing.

HC-502.5 Material Control.

The Manufacturer or shop assembler shall include a system that requires verification that the material meets the requirements of Article 2 of Part HC. The system shall assure that only the intended material is used in Code construction.

HC-502.6 Examination Program.

The Manufacturer's or shop assembler's quality control system shall describe the bursting test procedure and the fabrication operations, sufficiently to determine at which stages specific examinations are to be performed.

HC-502.7 Correction of Nonconformities.

There shall be a system for correction of nonconformities. A nonconformity is any condition which does not comply with the applicable rules of this Section. Nonconformities must be corrected or eliminated before the completed component can be considered to comply with this Section.

HC-502.8 Calibration of Measurement and Test Equipment.

The Manufacturer or shop assembler shall have a system for calibration of all equipment used for examination, measuring, and testing to fulfill the requirements of this Section.

HC-502.9 Sample Forms.

The forms used in the quality control system and any detailed procedures for their use shall be available for review. The written description shall make necessary references to these forms. The forms exhibited shall be marked "Sample" and completed in a manner typical of actual production and test procedures.

HC-502.10 Retention of Records.

The Manufacturer or shop assembler shall have a system for retaining the Manufacturer's Data Forms for a minimum of 15 years.

HC-502.11 ASME Designee

[SEC IV PT HC A-5] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:58 2003)

HC-502.11.1

The written description of the quality control system shall include reference to the ASME Designee.

HC-502.11.2

The Manufacturer or shop assembler shall make available to the ASME Designee a controlled copy of the written description of the quality control system.

HC-502.11.3

The Manufacturer's or shop assembler's quality control system shall provide for the ASME Designee to have access to all drawings, calculations, specifications, procedures, process sheets, repair procedures, records, test results, and any other documents as necessary for the ASME Designee to perform his review in accordance with this Section. The Manufacturer or shop assembler may provide such access either to his own files of such documents or by providing copies to the ASME Designee.

HC-510 EXAMINATION

Examination of each boiler or boiler part shall be in compliance with Article 2 of Part HC. Hydrostatic tests shall be conducted as required in HC-410 by the Manufacturer or shop assembler, and there shall be a means of identifying acceptable boiler sections or parts.

The following is a brief introduction to Part HLW. It is general in nature, and should not be considered as a substitute for actual review of appropriate articles of the document. However, this will give the user a better understanding of the purpose, requirements, and intent of Part HLW.

Part HLW applies to water heaters in commercial or industrial sizes providing corrosion resistance for supplying potable hot water for commercial purposes at pressures not exceeding 160 psig (1100 kPa) and temperatures not exceeding 210°F (99°C).

Part HLW does not apply to residential size water heaters, which are excluded by provisions of HLW-101.

Differences in applicable criteria for water heaters versus hot water heating boilers are as follows.

(a) In a water heater, the temperature of the water is limited to a maximum of 210°F (99°C).

(b) A water heater is provided with a corrosion resistant lining or constructed with corrosion resistant materials.

(c) A water heater is intended to supply potable hot water with all makeup from a potable water supply system. Vessels built under the rules of Part HLW may be used for storage of potable water.

The following is a brief outline of the contents of each Article of Part HLW.

Article 1 - General

The scope of Part HLW is given, and the service restriction and exemption are stated.

Article 2 - Materials

The material requirements for the linings permitted are specified as well as the lining thickness requirements. The material requirements specified for the lining materials were, in general, taken from existing standards by abstracting those

[SEC IV PT HLW INTRO] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:58 2003)

requirements which were considered to be those essential for the applications covered by these rules.

Article 3 - Design

The design criteria for water heaters is given in Article 3. The pressure is specified as a maximum allowable working pressure of 160 psi (1100 kPa) with a minimum of 100 psi (690 kPa). The maximum water temperature permitted is 210°F (99°C).

The maximum allowable working pressure of the water heater shall be established in accordance with the proof test provision of HLW-500. As an alternative, stress values in Table HLW-300 may be used in calculations employing the available formulas when applicable to the geometry of the lined water heater or parts.

Article 4 - Weldments

The provisions for weldment joint design are similar to those given elsewhere in this Section and in Section VIII, Division 1. In addition, some acceptable joint designs are provided which have been commonly used in the construction of water heaters and have provided satisfactory service performance.

Article 5 - Tests

Proof test procedure is delineated for establishing the maximum allowable working pressure of a water heater or parts, and this test is required to be witnessed and accepted by the Authorized Inspector. The Manufacturer's Master Data Proof Test Report for Lined Water Heaters shall be certified by the designated responsible engineering head of the Manufacturer and the forms shall be kept on file by the Manufacturer as a matter of record.

Article 6 - Inspection and Stamping

Inspection and stamping requirements for water heaters are given. An "HLW" Code Symbol Stamp is provided for water heaters made in accordance with Part HLW of Section IV.

Article 7 - Controls

Each water heater is required to have an operating control and a separate high-limit temperature-actuated control which shuts off the fuel supply in case of operating control failure. Water heaters should be equipped with suitable primary safety controls, safety limit switches, burners, or electric elements as appropriate and as required by a nationally recognized standard. Examples of these nationally recognized standards are listed.

Article 8 - Installation

Some acceptable piping installations are shown. Provisions for the installation of safety relief valves and other valves are given.

HLW-100 SCOPE

(a) The rules in Part HLW apply to water heaters and water storage tanks with corrosion resistance for supplying potable hot water. The foreword provides the basis for these rules. Part HLW is not intended to apply to hot water heating boilers.

(b) This Part contains mandatory requirements, specific prohibitions, and nonmandatory guidance for materials, designs, fabrication, examination, inspection, testing, certification, and pressure relief.

(c) Laws or regulations issued by a municipality, state, provincial, federal, or other enforcement or regulatory body having jurisdiction at the location of an installation, establish the mandatory applicability of these rules, in whole or in part.

[SEC IV PT HLW A-1] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:58 2003)

jurisdiction at the location of an installation, establish the mandatory applicability of these rules, in whole or in part.

(d) Linings for lined water heaters are limited to those listed in HLW-200.

(e) The materials used in the construction of unlined corrosion resistant water heaters are limited to those listed in Table HLW-301.

(f) Water heaters and tanks built under the rules of Part HLW may be provided with cathodic protection.

(g) Water heaters used for deionized water fabricated of stainless steel listed in Table HLW-301 may be built to Part HLW provided:

(1) all welding meets the requirements of Section IX;

(2) the maximum thickness shall be $^{1}/_{2}$ in. (13 mm).

HLW-101 SERVICE RESTRICTION AND EXCEPTION

HLW-101.1 Service Restriction.

The rules of Part HLW are restricted to potable water heaters and water storage tanks for operation at pressures not exceeding 160 psi (1100 kPa) and water temperatures not in excess of 210°F (99°F).

HLW-101.2 Exception.

Based on the Committee's consideration, water heaters are exempted when none of the following limitations is exceeded:

(a) heat input of 200,000 Btu/hr (58.6 kW);

(b) water temperature of 210°F (99°C);

(c) nominal water-containing capacity of 120 gal (454 l), except that they shall be equipped with safety devices in accordance with the requirements of HLW-800.

HLW-102 PERMISSIBLE STAMPING

Any water heater or storage tank that meets all of the requirements of Part HLW, including those for inspection, may be stamped with the Code HLW Symbol even though exempted from such stamping.

HLW-200 LINING

(a) Glass Lined. Glass lining shall be of an analysis intended for use in hot water service and the minimum average thickness shall be 0.005 in. (0.13 mm). The walls, ends, and other parts that are of steel and are glass lined shall be of a quality that is suitable for glass lining by the manufacturer's glass lining process. Glass lining may be applied to parts before assembly. The surfaces of the water heater vessel that are exposed to hot water shall have a coating with a minimum number of discontinuities, and the discontinuities shall average not more than $^{1}/_{8}$ sq in./sq ft of internal surface excluding edges and fittings. Thinning at corners may not extend over $^{1}/_{4}$ in. (6 mm) from the edge.

(b) Galvanized. The galvanized coating shall be based upon at least 1 oz of zinc/sq ft of surface based upon mathematical calculations corresponding to a coating thickness of 0.0017 in. (0.043 mm). The weight of the zinc coating shall be determined by weighing the water heater before galvanizing and again after the coating is applied.

[SEC IV PT HLW A-2] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:58 2003)

The zinc used for coating shall conform to ASTM B 6, Specification for Zinc (Slab Zinc) and shall be at least equal to the grade designated as "Prime Western." The aluminum content of the bath during actual galvanizing operations shall not exceed 0.01%. The galvanizer shall not damage the material by overpickling or by the use of excessively high temperature in pickling or galvanizing.

(c) Cement Lined. For cement-lined water heaters, the cement shall be applied to provide a minimum thickness of $^{3}/_{16}$ in. (4.8 mm). The lining shall be properly cured, adhere firmly to, and completely cover the interior of the vessel. The joints at the top of the water heater shall be sealed to prevent corrosion in back of the lining. The water absorption of the lining material shall not be more than 17% of the dry weight of the test specimen. The calcium oxide content shall not exceed 35%. The silicon content shall not be less than 25%.

(d) Copper-Lined. The material used for lining may be any copper of weldable or brazeable quality with a minimum thickness of 0.005 in. (0.13 mm). Lining attachments to steel backing by welding or brazing shall be in accordance with Section IX.

(e) Fluorocarbon Polymer-Lined. Fluorocarbon polymer linings shall be of an analysis intended for use in potable hot water service, and the minimum thickness shall be 0.003 in. (0.076 mm). The lining shall be cured at a temperature and for a length of time suitable to assure continuity of lining and elimination of solvents. The water absorption rate of the cured lining shall be less than 2% by the method specified in ASTM D 570 shown in Appendix I. Surfaces to be fluorocarbon polymer-lined must be cleaned to remove all scale, oxidation, oil, etc., prior to application of the lining. Interior surfaces may be coated with electroless nickel prior to lining. Flue tubes may be covered with a minimum thickness of 0.006 in. (0.15 mm) of sheet copper prior to the application of the fluorocarbon polymer lining.

(f) Amine or Polyamine Epoxy-Lined

(1) Amine or polyamine epoxy linings shall be of an analysis intended for use in potable hot water service, and the minimum thickness shall be 0.003 in. (0.076 mm). The lining shall be cured at a temperature and for a length of time suitable to assure continuity of lining and elimination of solvents. The water absorption rate of the cured lining shall be less than 2% by the method specified in ASTM D 570 shown in Appendix I. Surfaces to be epoxy lined must be cleaned to remove all scale, oxidation, oil, etc., prior to application of the lining.

(2) The use of amine or polyamine epoxy linings shall be limited to electric water heaters with immersion type elements, storage tanks, and those surfaces of fired water heaters that are not directly heated by the products of combustion.

(g) Thermally Sprayed Metallic Linings. The material used for linings shall be any copper or copper alloy of sprayable quality. Prior to coating, the interior surfaces of the vessel or vessel parts shall be cleaned by grit blasting. The minimum lining thickness shall be 0.005 in. (0.13 mm). The process shall be controlled to ensure that the temperature of the surface being coated does not exceed 650°F (343°C).

(h) Polymeric, Flexible Linings. Materials used shall be listed by National Sanitation Foundation International (NSFI) as meeting the requirements of the Standard ANSI/NSF 14-1900 for potable water service at a minimum temperature of 210°F (99°C). The water absorption rate of the material shall be less than 10% by the 2 hr boiling water immersion test specified in SD-570 shown in Appendix I. No reground material shall be used.

The minimum thickness of the lining shall be 0.020 in. (0.51 mm). The interior surfaces of the vessel shall be free of projections or discontinuities that exceed one-half the thickness of the fabricated liner. The installed liner shall be in contact with all interior surfaces of the vessel and free of folds or cracks after the hydrostatic test of HLW-505. The design shall be such that:

(1) All transition parts, such as needed at vessel openings, shall be of compatible materials.

(2) Transition parts shall be designed so that any required brazing or welding of subsequent connections, if required, shall not damage the lining.

(i) Autocatalytic (electroless) Nickel-Phosphorus Lined. The composition shall be of an analysis suitable for use in potable, hot water service. It shall conform to ASTM B 733-90 SC3, Type 1, Class 1. The application shall be after all welding. The minimum thickness shall be 0.0003 in. (0.0076 mm). All surfaces to be lined shall be free of oxides, oil or other contaminants. The phosphorus content of the bath shall be at least 9%, but not over 13%. Following application, the vessel shall be drained

[SEC IV PT HLW A-2] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:58 2003)

and thoroughly rinsed with water.

HLW-201 PRIMARY PRESSURE PARTS MATERIAL

(a) The materials used for shells, heads, flues, headers, or tubes shall be limited to those listed in Tables HLW-300, HLW-301, and HF-300.2. For plate material, a certificate of compliance or a material test report is required to verify that the chemical and mechanical properties are within the permissible range listed in Section II. Material in all other product forms shall be accepted as complying with its Section II specification when marked as required by (c) below. Material test reports shall be furnished by the mill of origin, except that any material that has lost its identification with a Section II specification, or that is ordered in small quantities, may be accepted, provided that it satisfies the provisions of HLW-202.

(b) If a welded assembly is furnished as a part to the Manufacturer of the completed water heater vessel, a Manufacturer's Partial Data Report Form HLW-7 shall be provided by the parts Manufacturer. The parts Manufacturer shall comply with all applicable requirements of Part HLW, including inspection by an Authorized Inspector.

(c) The material in (a) above shall have the identification marking required by the appropriate Section II specification. During subsequent steps in fabrication, a painted color identification or some other method acceptable to the Authorized Inspector shall be used for identification. The method used shall remain distinguishable, or be reapplied until the part(s) are affixed in their proper location on the water heater vessel, and until the material is part of a uniquely identifiable subassembly.

HLW-202 ACCEPTANCE OF UNIDENTIFIED OR SMALL QUANTITIES OF MATERIAL

If the identification of materials required by HLW-201(a) is unavailable, each piece of plate material, or each length of other material, shall be shown to meet the chemical requirements and mechanical properties of the Section II specification designated for the part for which the material is to be used. The material shall be subjected to all required tests of the Section II specification. The manufacturer of the completed vessel shall verify that the material complies with the designated specification.

Testing shall be as in HLW-202.1 and HLW-202.2.

HLW-202.1 Plate.

The chemical check analysis and physical tests shall be made as required in the designated specification, with the following modification: when the direction of rolling is not definitely known, two tension specimens shall be taken at right angles to each other from a corner of each plate, and two bend specimens shall be taken from the middle of adjacent sides of each plate. One tension specimen and both bend specimens shall meet the specification requirements.

HLW-202.2 Tubes, Pipe, Rods, Bars, and Shapes.

Each length of tube, pipe, rod, bar, or shape shall be subjected to a chemical check analysis and physical tests to show that all the material is identified with a given heat or heat treatment lot, and that the material complies with the chemical and physical requirements of the designated specification.

HLW-202.3 Marking and Test Report.

When the identity of material with a designated specification has been established in accordance with HLW-202.1 or HLW-202.2, each piece of material (except as alternatively provided in the material specification for tubes,

pipes, rods, bars, or shapes) shall be marked or identified by the manufacturer or the testing agency by any method acceptable to the Authorized Inspector, giving the designated specification number and grade or type, and a serial S-number identifying the particular lot of material. A suitable test report shall be furnished, properly filled out and certified by the manufacturer or testing agency. This report when accepted by the Authorized Inspector shall constitute authority to use the material.

HLW-203 MISCELLANEOUS PRESSURE PARTS MATERIAL

(a) Parts such as flanges, welding caps, welding necks, manhole frames, or manhole covers that are formed by casting, forging, rolling, or die forming, shall be constructed from materials permitted under Part HLW, or by an appropriate ANSI or

[SEC IV PT HLW A-2] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:57:59 2003)

manufacturer's standard to which the parts are made. Such parts shall be marked with the name or trademark of the manufacturer. Such markings shall be considered as the manufacturer's certification that the product complies with the material specification and is suitable for service at the rating indicated. A certificate of compliance or a material test report is not required.

(b) Carbon steel or cast iron pressure parts of small size, such as nozzles, internally threaded fittings, handhole frames, or handhole covers, for which it is difficult or impossible to obtain identified material, or that may be stocked and for which material test reports or certificates cannot be readily obtained, may be constructed from Section II materials other than those listed in Tables HLW-300, HLW-301, and HF-300.2, provided they are suitable for the application. These parts may be identified in any permanent or temporary manner that is acceptable to the Authorized Inspector and that will serve to identify the part with the manufacturer's written listing. The manufacturer who certifies the completed vessel shall satisfy himself that such parts are suitable for the welding, fabrication, service, and test conditions of its design. The use of such parts shall be subject to the acceptance of the Authorized Inspector.

HLW-204 FLANGES AND PIPE FITTINGS

The following standards covering flanges and pipe fittings are acceptable for use under Part HLW in accordance with the requirements of HLW-203. Pressure-temperature ratings shall be per the appropriate standard:

(a) ANSI B16.5, Flanges and Flanged Fittings

(b) ANSI B16.9, Factory-Made Wrought Steel Buttwelding Fittings

(c) ANSI B16.11, Forged Steel Fittings, Socket-Welding and Threaded

(d) ANSI B16.15, Cast Bronze Threaded Fittings

(e) ANSI B16.24, Bronze Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings

(f) ANSI B16.28, Wrought Steel Buttwelding Short Radius Elbows and Returns

(g) ANSI B16.42, Ductile Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings

HLW-300 DESIGN

(a) Water heaters are limited to a maximum allowable working pressure of 160 psi (1100 kPa) and the maximum water temperature shall be 210°F (99°C). The maximum allowable working pressure for water heaters shall be not less than 100 psi (690 kPa).

(b) Water heaters may be fired with oil, gas, or electricity. Water heaters shall be designed using the rules in this Part.

(c) The temperature used in design shall not be less than the mean metal temperature (through the thickness) expected under operating conditions for the part considered. If necessary, the metal temperature shall be determined by computation using accepted heat transfer procedures or by measurements from equipment in service under equivalent operating conditions. Pressure parts subject to direct radiation and/or the products of combustion shall be designed to prevent flame impingement.

(d) Tables HLW-300 and HLW-301 give the maximum allowable stress values in tension for materials conforming to the tensile strengths listed therein when the design is based on the formulas given in this Article.

(e) The maximum allowable stress value in bending shall be $1^1/_2$ times that permitted in tension and the maximum allowable stress value in compression shall be two times that permitted in tension.

[SEC IV PT HLW A-3] Copyright by AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS (Thu Jan 30 09:57:59 2003)

(f) The maximum allowable working pressure of the water heater shall be established in accordance with the proof test provision of HLW-500. As an alternative, stress values in Tables HLW-300 and HLW-301 may be used in calculations employing the available formulas when applicable to the geometry of the water heater or parts.

HLW-301 MINIMUM THICKNESSES

The minimum thickness of sheet or plate material used for heads or shells in any lined or unlined water heater vessel shall not be less than $^1/_8$ in. (3.2 mm).

HLW-302 SHELLS UNDER INTERNAL PRESSURE

When the provisions of HLW-501 to HLW-504 are not used, the thickness and the maximum allowable working pressure of cylindrical shells, pipe, and headers shall be determined in accordance with the following formulas:

$$t = \frac{PR}{SE - 0.6P}$$

$$P = \frac{SEt}{R + 0.6t}$$

where

P	= maximum allowable working pressure, psi (but not less than 100 psi)
S	= maximum allowable stress value from Tables HLW-300, HLW-301, HF-300.1, and HF-300.2, psi
t	= required wall thickness, exclusive of liner, in.

[SEC IV PT HLW A-3] Copyright by AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS (Thu Jan 30 09:57:59 2003)

R = inside radius of cylinder, in.

E = efficiency of longitudinal joint or ligament between tube holes, whichever is less. For welded joints, use the efficiency specified in HLW-402. For seamless shells, use $E = 1$.

HLW-303 BASIS FOR ESTABLISHING STRESS VALUES IN TABLES HLW-300 AND HLW-301

In the determination of allowable stress values for pressure parts, the Committee is guided by successful experience in service, insofar as evidence of satisfactory performance is available. Such evidence is considered equivalent to test data where operating conditions are known with reasonable certainty. In the evaluation of new materials, it is necessary to be guided to a certain extent by the comparison of test information with similar data on successful applications of similar materials.

Page 174

Page 176

Pages 175-175

TABLE HLW-300
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES IN TENSION FOR LINED MATERIALS, ksi

Spec. No.	Grade	Nominal Composition	P-No.	Group No.	Spec. Min. Tensile Strength, ksi	Note(s)	Max. Allowable Design Stress, ksi
Plate							
SA-285	A	C	1	1	45	...	11.3
	B	C	1	1	50	...	12.5
	C	C	1	1	55	...	13.8
SA-455		C–Mn	1	2	75	(5)	18.8
SA-455		C–Mn	1	2	73	(6)	18.3
SA-455		C–Mn	1	2	70	(7)	17.5
SA-285 Modified to Chem.						(3)	
AISI C-1012		0.10C to 0.15C	1	1	45	...	11.3
AISI C-1015		0.13C to 0.18C	1	1	50	...	12.5
AISI C-1023		0.20C to 0.25C	1	1	55	...	13.8
SA-414 Sheet	A	C	1	1	45	...	11.3
	B	C	1	1	50	...	12.5
	C	C	1	1	55	...	13.8
	D	C–Mn	1	1	60	...	15.0
	E	C–Mn	1	1	65	...	16.3
	F	C–Mn	1	2	70	...	17.5
	G	C–Mn	1	2	75	...	18.8
SA-414 Sheet Modified to Chem.						(3)	
AISI C-1012		0.10C to 0.15C	1	1	45	...	11.3
AISI C-1015		0.13C to 0.18C	1	1	50	...	12.5
AISI C-1023		0.20C to 0.25C	1	1	55	...	13.8
Bars and Forging							
SA-36	...	C–Mn–Si	1	1	58	(1)	14.5
SA-105		Forging C–Si	1	2	70	...	17.5
SA-181	Class 60	Forging C–Si	1	1	60	...	15.0
Pipe							
SA-53	A	Smls. C	1	1	48	...	12.0
SA-53	B	Smls. C–Mn	1	1	60	...	15.0
SA-106	A	Smls. C–Si	1	1	48	...	12.0
SA-106	B	Smls. C–Si	1	1	60	...	15.0
SA-106	C	Smls. C–Si	1	2	70	...	17.5
SA-53	A	ERW C	1	1	48	(2)	10.2
SA-53	B	ERW C–Mn	1	1	60	(2)	12.8
SA-135	A	ERW C	1	1	48	(2)	10.2
SA-135	B	ERW C–Mn	1	1	60	(2)	12.8
SA-178	A	ERW C	1	1	47	(2)(4)	10.0
SA-178	C	ERW C	1	1	60	(2)	12.8

[SEC IV PT HLW A-3] Copyright by AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS (Thu Jan 30 09:58:01 2003)

TABLE HLW-300 (CONT'D)
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES IN TENSION FOR LINED MATERIALS, ksi

Spec. No.	Grade	Nominal Composition	P-No.	Group No.	Spec. Min. Tensile Strength, ksi	Note(s)	Max. Allowable Design Stress, ksi
Plate							
SA-515	60	C–Si	1	1	60	...	15.0
	65	C–Si	1	1	65	...	16.3
	70	C–Si	1	2	70	...	17.5
SA-516	55	C–Si	1	1	55	...	13.8
	60	C–Mn–Si	1	1	60	...	15.0
	65	C–Mn–Si	1	1	65	...	16.3
	70	C–Mn–Si	1	2	70	...	17.5
Bars							
SA-675	45	C	1	1	45	...	11.3
	50	C	1	1	50	...	12.5
	55	C	1	1	55	...	13.8
	60	C	1	1	60	...	15.0
	65	C	1	1	65	...	16.3
	70	C	1	2	70	...	17.5

GENERAL NOTE: Nonferrous material, if utilized for connections, etc., shall be in accordance with Table HF-300.2.

NOTES:
(1) These allowable stress values apply also to structural shapes.
(2) The stress value includes a joint factor of 0.85.
(3) For use only as shell plates, heads, tubesheets, or other surfaces to be glass lined.
(4) Tensile value in parentheses is expected minimum.
(5) For thickness up to $\frac{3}{8}$ in., incl.
(6) For thickness over $\frac{3}{8}$ in. to 0.580 in., incl.
(7) For thickness over 0.580 in. to 0.750 in., incl.

TABLE HLW-300 (CONT'D) MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES IN TENSION FOR LINED MATERIALS, ksi

Page 178

Pages 177-177

[SEC IV PT HLW A-3] Copyright by AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS (Thu Jan 30 09:58:03 2003)

TABLE HLW-301
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES FOR MATERIALS IN TENSION FOR UNLINED WATER HEATERS, ksi

Spec. No.	Grade	Nominal Composition	P-No.	Group No.	Spec. Min. Tensile Strength, ksi	Note(s)	Max. Allowable Design Stress, ksi (See HLW-303)	
							Standard	Alternative
Plate								
Alloy Steel								
SA-240	304	18Cr–8Ni	8	1	75	(2)(3)(5)	16.7	17.8(7)
	304L	18Cr–8Ni	8	1	70	(2)(3)(5)	14.3	16.5(7)
	316	16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	75	(2)(3)(5)	17.7	18.8(7)
	316L	16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	70	(2)(3)(5)	14.1	16.7(7)
	439	18Cr–Ti	7	2	65	(1)(3)(4)	16.3	...
	S44400	18Cr–2Mo	7	2	60	(1)(2)(4)	15.0	...
Tube								
Alloy Steel								
SA-213	TP304	Smls. 18Cr–8Ni	8	1	75	(2)(3)(5)	16.7	17.8(7)
	TP304L	Smls. 18Cr–8Ni	8	1	70	(2)(3)(5)	14.3	16.5(7)
	TP316	Smls. 16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	75	(2)(3)(5)	17.7	18.8(7)
	TP316L	Smls. 16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	70	(2)(3)(5)	14.1	16.7(7)
SA-249	TP304	Wld. 18Cr–8Ni	8	1	75	(2)(3)(5)(7)	14.2	15.1(7)
	TP304L	Wld. 18Cr–8Ni	8	1	70	(2)(3)(5)(7)	11.9	14.0(7)
	TP316	Wld. 16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	75	(2)(3)(5)(7)	15.0	16.0(7)
	TP316L	Wld. 16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	70	(2)(3)(5)(7)	12.0	14.2(7)
SA-268	TP439	Smls. 18Cr–Ti	7	2	60	(1)(3)(4)	15.0	...
	S44400	Smls. 18Cr–2Mo	7	2	60	(1)(2)(4)	15.0	...
	S44400	Wld. 18Cr–2Mo	7	2	60	(1)(2)(4)(5)(7)	12.8	...
	S44735	Smls. 29Cr–4Mo	10J	1	75	(8)	18.4	...
	S44735	Wld. 29Cr–4Mo	10J	1	75	(7)(8)	15.5	...
Bar								
Alloy Steel								
SA-479	304	18Cr–8Ni	8	1	75	(2)(3)(5)	16.7	17.8(7)
	304L	18Cr–8Ni	8	1	70	(2)(3)(5)	14.3	16.5(7)
	316	16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	75	(2)(3)(5)	17.7	18.8(7)
	316L	16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	70	(2)(3)(5)	14.1	16.7(7)
	439	18Cr–Ti	7	2	70	(1)(3)(4)	16.6	...
	S44400	18Cr–2Mo	7	2	60	(1)(2)(4)	15.0	...
Pipe								
Alloy Steel								
SA-312	TP304	Smls. 18Cr–8Ni	8	1	75	(2)(3)(5)	16.7	17.8(7)
	TP304	Wld. 18Cr–8Ni	8	1	75	(2)(3)(5)(7)	14.2	15.1(7)
	TP304L	Smls. 18Cr–8Ni	8	1	70	(2)(3)(5)	14.3	16.5(7)
	TP304L	Wld. 18Cr–8Ni	8	1	70	(2)(3)(5)(7)	12.2	14.0(7)
	TP316	Smls. 16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	75	(2)(3)(5)	17.7	18.8(7)
	TP316	Wld. 16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	75	(2)(3)(5)(7)	15.0	16.0(7)
	TP316L	Smls. 16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	70	(2)(3)(5)	14.1	16.7(7)
	TP316L	Wld. 16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	70	(2)(3)(5)(7)	12.0	14.2(7)

[SEC IV PT HLW A-3] Copyright by AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS (Thu Jan 30 09:58:04 2003)

TABLE HLW-301 (CONT'D) 98
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES FOR MATERIALS IN TENSION FOR UNLINED WATER HEATERS, ksi

Spec. No.	Grade	Nominal Composition	P-No.	Group No.	Spec. Min. Tensile Strength, ksi	Note(s)	Max. Allowable Design Stress, ksi (See HLW-303) Standard	Alternative
Forgings								
Alloy Steel								
SA-182	F304	18Cr–8Ni	8	1	75	(2)(3)(5)	16.7	17.8(7)
	F304L	18Cr–8Ni	8	1	70	(2)(3)(5)	14.3	16.5(7)
	F316	16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	75	(2)(3)(5)	17.7	18.8(7)
	F316L	16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	70	(2)(3)(5)	14.1	16.7(7)

NOTES:
(1) The maximum is $\frac{3}{8}$ in.
(2) The maximum thickness is $\frac{1}{2}$ in.
(3) The service temperature shall not exceed 210°F.
(4) Filler metal shall be Type 430 with a nominal molybdenum content of approximately 2%. The 300 series of chromium–nickel–iron filler metals shall not be used in welding vessels conforming to the requirements of Section IV.
(5) Water heaters using this material are to be operated only on deionized water having a minimum specific resistivity of 1.0 MΩ/cm.
(6) Due to the relatively low yield strength of the austenitic stainless steel materials, these higher stress values were established at temperatures at which the short time tensile properties govern to permit the use of these alloys where slightly greater deformation is acceptable. These higher stress values exceed two-thirds but do not exceed 90% of the yield strength at temperature. Use of these stress values may result in dimensional changes due to permanent strain. These stress values are not recommended for flanges of gasketed joints or other applications where slight amounts of distortion can cause leakage or malfunction.
(7) The stress value includes a joint factor of 0.85.
(8) Heat treatment after forming or fabrication is neither required nor prohibited.

[98]

TABLE HLW-301 (CONT'D) MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES FOR MATERIALS IN TENSION FOR UNLINED WATER HEATERS, ksi

At any temperature below the creep range, the allowable stresses are established at no higher than the lowest of the following:

(1) $\frac{1}{4}$ of the specified minimum tensile strength at room temperature;

(2) $\frac{1}{4}$ of the tensile strength at temperature;

(3) $\frac{2}{3}$ of the specified minimum yield strength at room temperature;

(4) $\frac{2}{3}$ of the yield strength at temperature.

In Table HLW-301 for austenitic stainless steel materials, two sets of allowable stress values are provided. The higher values should be used only where slightly greater deformation is not in itself objectionable. The higher alternative allowable stresses are identified by a note. These stresses exceed two-thirds for austenitic stainless steel materials but do not exceed 90% of the minimum yield at temperature. These higher stresses are not recommended for the design of flanges and other strain sensitive applications.

HLW-305 BLANK UNSTAYED DISHED HEADS, PRESSURE ON CONCAVE SIDE

[SEC IV PT HLW A-3] Copyright by AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS (Thu Jan 30 09:58:04 2003)

HLW-305.1 General.

When the provisions of HLW-501 to HLW-504 are not used, the required thickness at the thinnest point after forming of ellipsoidal and torispherical heads under pressure on the concave side (plus heads) shall be computed by the appropriate formulas in this paragraph.

(a) Notations. The notations used in this paragraph are defined as follows:

t	= required wall thickness, exclusive of liner, in.
P	= maximum allowable working pressure, psi [but not less than 100 psi (690 kPa)]
D	= inside diameter of the head skirt; or inside length of the major axis of an ellipsoidal head; or inside diameter of a cone head at the point under consideration, measured perpendicular to the longitudinal axis, in.
S	= maximum allowable stress value from Tables HLW-300, HF-300.1, and HF-300.2, psi
L	= inside spherical or crown radius, in.
E	= lowest efficiency of any joint in the head; use the efficiency specified in HLW-402. For seamless heads, use $E = 1$.

HLW-305.2 Ellipsoidal Heads.

When the provisions of HLW-501 to HLW-504 are not used, the required thickness and the maximum allowable working pressure of a dished head of semiellipsoidal form, in which half the minor axis (inside depth of the head minus the skirt) equals one-fourth of the inside diameter of the head skirt, shall be calculated by the following formulas:

$$t = \frac{PD}{2SE - 0.2P}$$

$$P = \frac{2SEt}{D + 0.2t}$$

HLW-305.3 Torispherical Heads.

When the provisions of HLW-501 to HLW-504 are not used, the required thickness and the maximum allowable working pressure of a torispherical head shall be calculated by the following formulas:

$$t = \frac{0.885PL}{SE - 0.1P}$$

$$P = \frac{SEt}{0.885L + 0.1\ t}$$

HLW-305.4 Inside Crown Radius of Unstayed Heads.

The inside crown radius to which an unstayed formed head is dished shall be not greater than the outside diameter of the skirt of the head. The inside knuckle radius of a torispherical head shall be not less than 6% of the outside diameter of the skirt of the head but in no case less than three times the head thickness.

HLW-305.5 Hemispherical Heads.

Because of the complexity of joint design, hemispherical heads are not permitted.

HLW-306 BLANK UNSTAYED DISHED HEADS, PRESSURE ON CONVEX SIDE

HLW-306.1

When the provisions of HLW-501 to HLW-504 are not used, unstayed dished heads with the pressure on the convex side shall have a maximum allowable working pressure equal to 60% of that for heads of the same dimension with the pressure on the concave side.

HLW-306.2 Hemispherical Heads.

Because of the complexity of joint design, hemispherical heads are not permitted.

[98]
HLW-307 TUBES

When the provisions of HLW-501 to HLW-504 are not used, the thickness of seamless or welded tubes shall be in accordance with HG-301.2 when subjected to internal pressure or HG-312.2 when subjected to external pressure.
[98]

[98]
HLW-307.1 Ferrous Tubes. - Deleted

[98]
HLW-307.2 Nonferrous Tubes. - Deleted

HLW-308 OPENINGS

HLW-308.1

Single openings in water heaters do not require reinforcement under the following conditions. Welded connections attached in accordance with the applicable rules and not larger than:

(a) NPS 3 (DN 75) in shells or heads $^{3}/_{8}$ in. (10 mm) or less; NPS 2 (DN 50) in shells or heads over $^{3}/_{8}$ in. (10 mm);

(b) threaded, studded, or expanded connections in which the hole cut in the shell or head is not greater than NPS 2 (DN 50).

HLW-308.2

When the provisions of HLW-501 to HLW-504 are not used, all other openings shall be reinforced in accordance with HG-321 of this Section.

HLW-309 TUBES ATTACHED BY ROLLING

(a) The tube hole in the head or tubesheet shall be formed either:

(1) to the full size diameter by a method which will not produce irregularities that would interfere with proper rolling and sealing, or

(2) to a lesser diameter, then enlarged to full diameter by a secondary drilling, cutting, or reaming operation to remove such irregularities.

The sharp edges of tube holes shall be taken off both sides with a file or other tool.

(b) The minimum thickness of any tubesheet with tubes installed by rolling shall be $^{3}/_{16}$ in. (4.8 mm).

[SEC IV PT HLW A-4] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:05 2003)

HLW-400 DESIGN OF WELDED JOINTS

HLW-401 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

All welds, fillet or full penetration, shall be made to a qualified welding procedure by qualified welders for each welding process employed (manual, semiautomatic, automatic), in accordance with the applicable provisions of Section IX to insure satisfactory penetration and fusion into the base metal to the root of the weld. All members, prior to being welded, shall be properly fitted, aligned, and retained in position in accordance with the Procedure Specification for the welding procedure to be used.

HLW-401.1 Butt Joints.

Longitudinal or circumferential joints uniting plates of a drum, shell, or other pressure parts shall be butt joints. A butt joint shall be double welded butt or may have filler metal added from one side only, provided the weld penetration is complete.

(a) If there are two or more courses, the welded longitudinal joints of adjacent courses shall be not less than 6 in. (152 mm) apart.

(b) If the plates are of unequal thickness, at no point shall the plate on one side of the joint be offset with the plate on the other side of the joint in excess of one-fourth of the thickness of the thickest plate. The weld may be partly or entirely in the tapered section or adjacent to it as indicated in Fig. HLW-401.1.

HLW-401.2 Corner or Tee Joints.

Unflanged heads or tubesheets of water heaters may be constructed by attaching unflanged heads or tubesheets to the shell by welding, provided:

(a) corner or tee joints shall be as shown in Fig. HLW-401.2, sketches (a), (b), (c), or (d).

(b) the head or tubesheet is supported by tubes.

(c) the welded joint for Fig. HLW-401.2, sketches (a), (b), and (c) is wholly within the shell and forms no part thereof. The throat of the fillet weld shall be not less than 0.7 times the thickness of the thinner plate.

[SEC IV PT HLW A-4] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:05 2003)

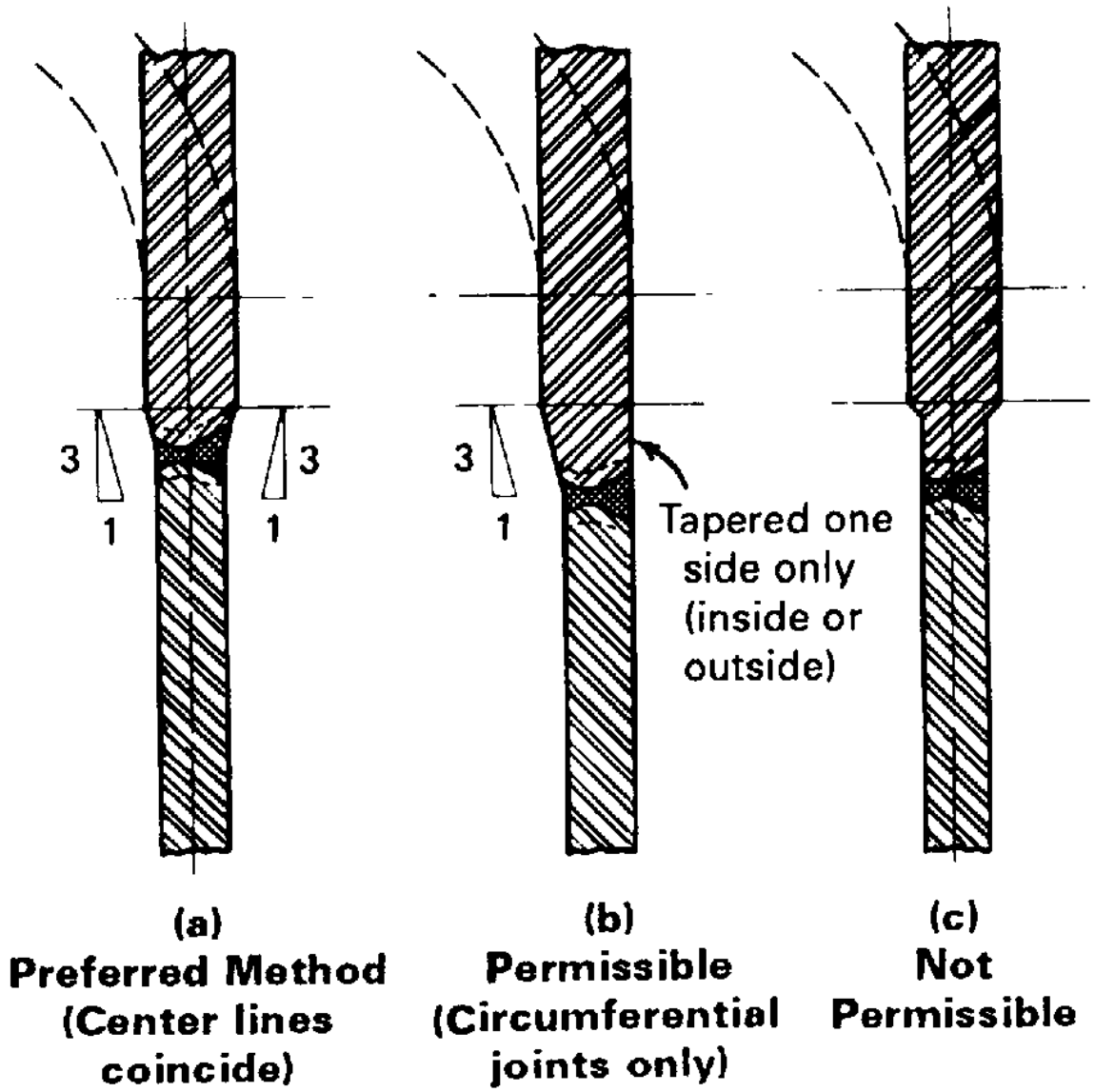


FIG. HLW-401.1 BUTT WELDING OF PLATES OF UNEQUAL THICKNESS

FIG. HLW-401.1 BUTT WELDING OF PLATES OF UNEQUAL THICKNESS

(d) for Fig. HLW-401.2, sketches (b) and (d) the weld shall have full penetration.

HLW-402 JOINT EFFICIENCIES

[SEC IV PT HLW A-4] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:05 2003)

The following joint efficiencies *E* are to be used in the formulas of this Section (i.e., HLW-302 and HLW-305) for joints completed by an arc or gas welding process.

(a) E = 85% for full penetration butt joints as attained by double welding or by other means, which will obtain the same quality of deposited weld metal on the inside and outside weld surfaces, to provide complete joint penetration and assurance that the weld grooves are completely filled (HLW-401.1). Welds that

use metal backing strips that remain in place are excluded.

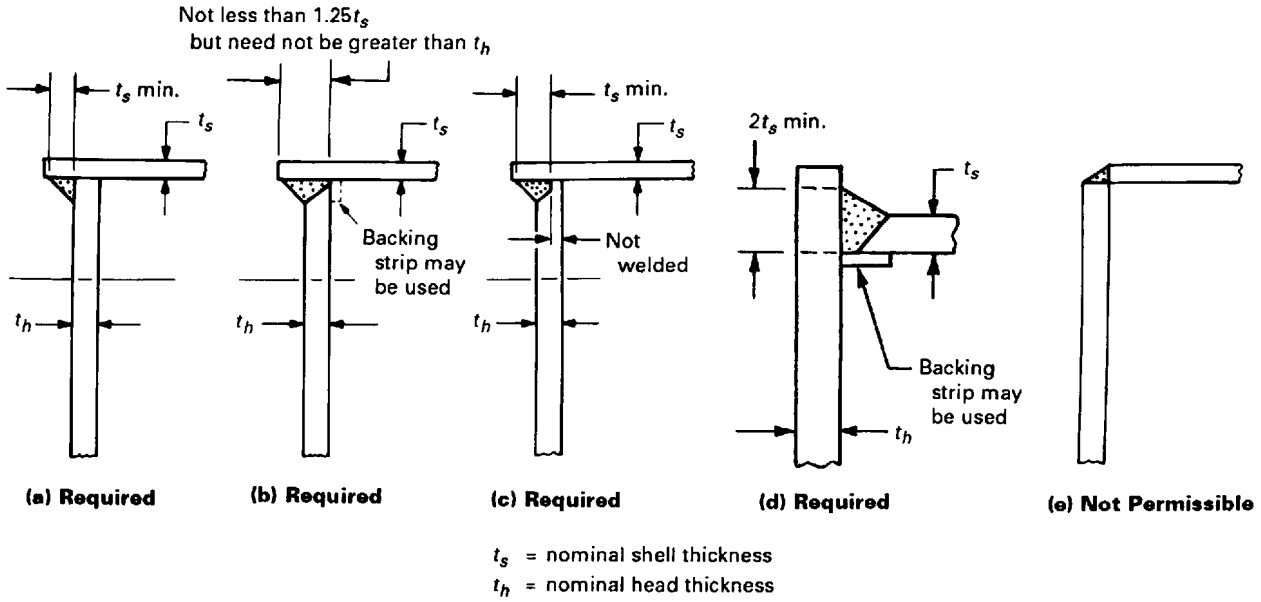


FIG. HLW-401.2 TYPICAL CORNER JOINTS

FIG. HLW-401.2 TYPICAL CORNER JOINTS

(b) E = 80% for full penetration single-welded butt joints with backing strips other than those included in (a) above.

HLW-402.1 Joint Efficiencies for External Pressure Design.

Joint efficiency *E* factors are not required to be used when the part is designed for external pressure only.

HLW-411 HEADS OR TUBESHEETS ATTACHED BY WELDING

Typical water heater welded joints are shown in Fig. HLW-411.

HLW-411.1

Flanged heads or tubesheets of water heaters attached by butt welding shall be in accordance with Fig. HLW-415, sketch (d) or (e).

HLW-411.2

Flanged heads or tubesheets of water heaters may be constructed by attaching an outwardly or inwardly flanged head or tubesheet to the shell by fillet welding, provided:

[SEC IV PT HLW A-4] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:06 2003)

(a) inwardly flanged head or tubesheets are full fillet welded [see Fig. HLW-415, sketch (a)];

(b) the joint attaching an outwardly flanged head or tubesheet shall be in accordance with Fig. HLW-415, sketch (b) or (c).

[98]
HLW-413 TUBES ATTACHED BY WELDING

(a) The edge of the plate at the tubesheet hole may be beveled or recessed to a depth at least equal to the thickness of the tubes. Where the plate is beveled or recessed, the projection of the tubes beyond the tube sheet shall not exceed a distance equal to the tube thickness. The depth of any bevel or recess shall not be less than the tube thickness or $^1/_8$ in. (3.2 mm), whichever is greater, nor more than one-third of the tubesheet thickness.

(b) Where no bevel or recess is employed, tubes shall extend beyond the tubesheet not less than 1.5 times the tube thickness, nor more than 3 times the sum of the thickness of the head plus the thickness of the tube [see Fig. HLW-413, sketch (d)].

(c) When openings are flanged for tubes as shown in Fig. HLW-413, sketch (a), (b), or (e), flanges shall extend parallel to the tube for a minimum distance equal to the tube thickness.

(d) Where exposed to gases of greater than 850°F (454°C), head flanges shall conform to the limitations of Fig. HLW-413.

(e) When the temperature of the gases is normally 850°F (454°C) or less, the length of flange or tube may extend beyond the limits of Fig. HLW-413.

[98]

HLW-415 HEAD-TO-SHELL ATTACHMENTS

Ellipsoidal, torispherical, and other types of formed heads, concave or convex to the pressure shall have the following requirements as to skirt length.

(a) An ellipsoidal or torispherical head which is attached to a shell by a butt joint as shown in Fig. HLW-415, sketch (e), need not be provided with a skirt when the nominal head thickness does not exceed $1^1/_4$ times the nominal shell thickness. When the nominal head thickness exceeds $1^1/_4$ times the nominal shell thickness, a skirt shall be provided having a length not less than 3 times the nominal head thickness or $1^1/_2$ in. (38 mm), whichever is smaller. When a skirt is used, it shall meet the requirements for shell thickness in HLW-301.

(b) Ellipsoidal or torispherical heads, concave or convex to pressure, that are to be fitted inside or over a shell (lap joint) shall have a skirt of at least 3 times the nominal head thickness, but in no case less than 1 in. (25 mm).

(c) Shells and heads may be attached to shells or heads using a butt weld with one plate edge offset as shown in Fig. HLW-415, sketch (d). The weld may be deposited on the inside of the vessel only when the weld is accessible for inspection after the vessel is completed.

HLW-420 OPENINGS IN WELDS

Any type of opening that meets the requirements for reinforcement given in HG-321 may be located in a butt welded joint.

[SEC IV PT HLW A-4] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:07 2003)

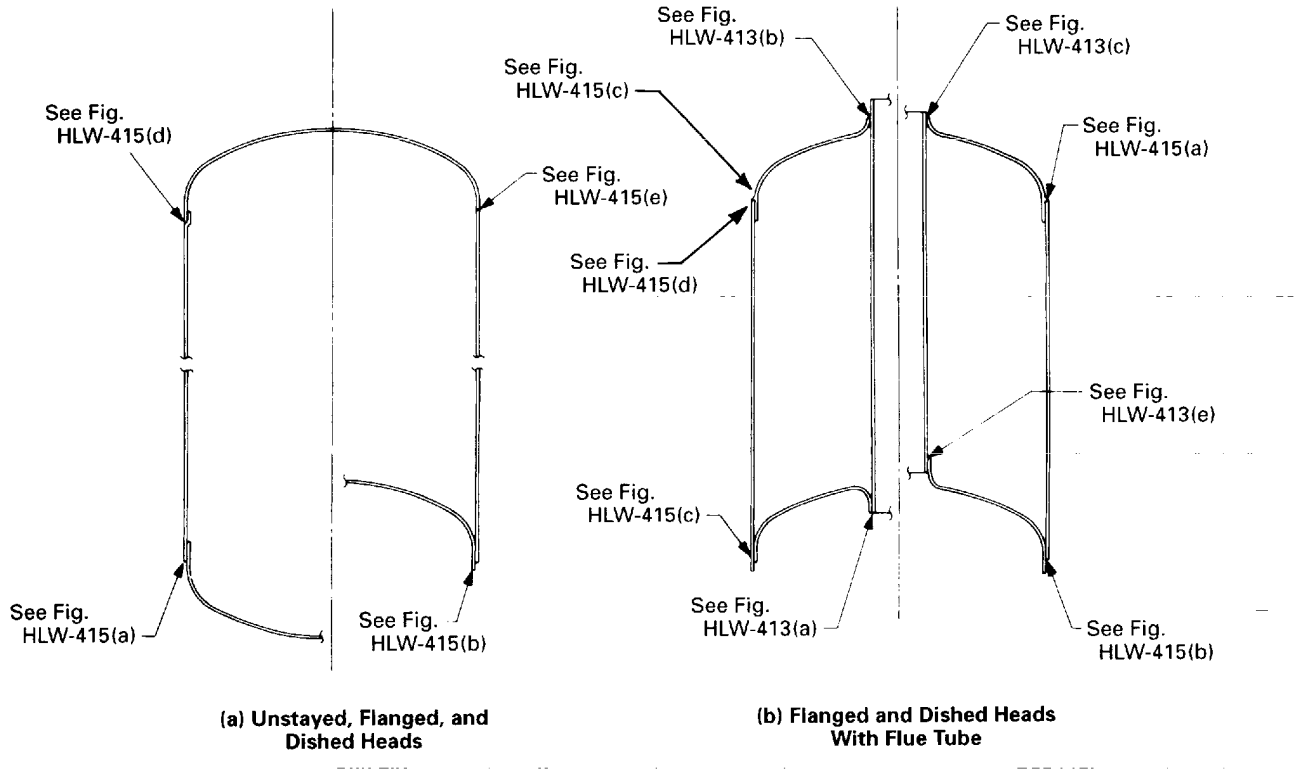
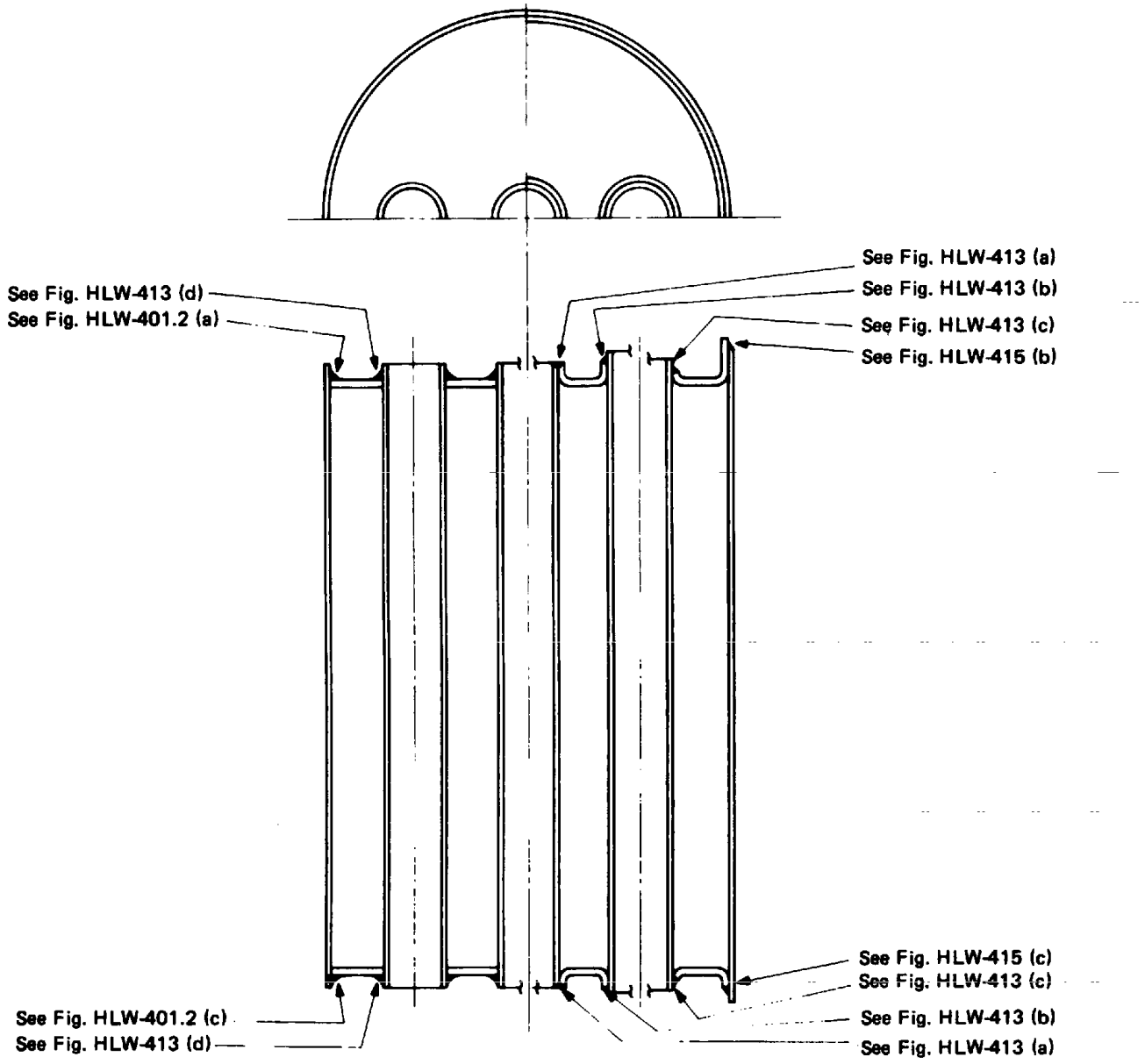


FIG. HLW-411 TYPICAL WATER HEATER WELDED JOINTS

FIG. HLW-411 TYPICAL WATER HEATER WELDED JOINTS

[SEC IV PT HLW A-4] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:07 2003)



(c) Unflanged and flanged flat heads with multiple heads

FIG. HLW-411 TYPICAL WATER HEATER WELDED JOINTS (CONT'D)

FIG. HLW-411 TYPICAL WATER HEATER WELDED JOINTS (CONT'D)

[SEC IV PT HLW A-4] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:08 2003)

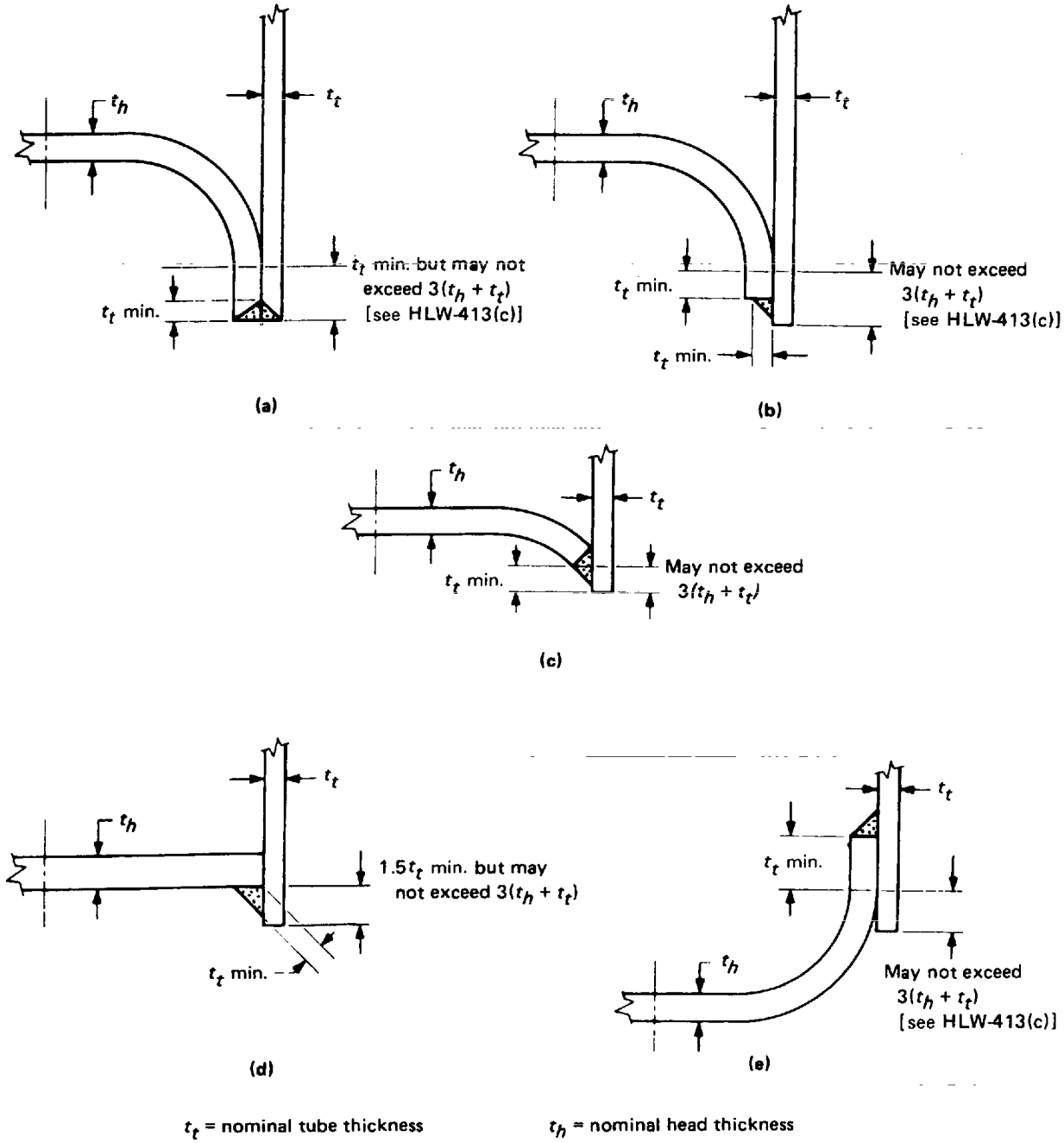


FIG. HLW-413 TUBES ATTACHED BY WELDING

[98]
FIG. HLW-413 TUBES ATTACHED BY WELDING

[SEC IV PT HLW A-4] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:08 2003)

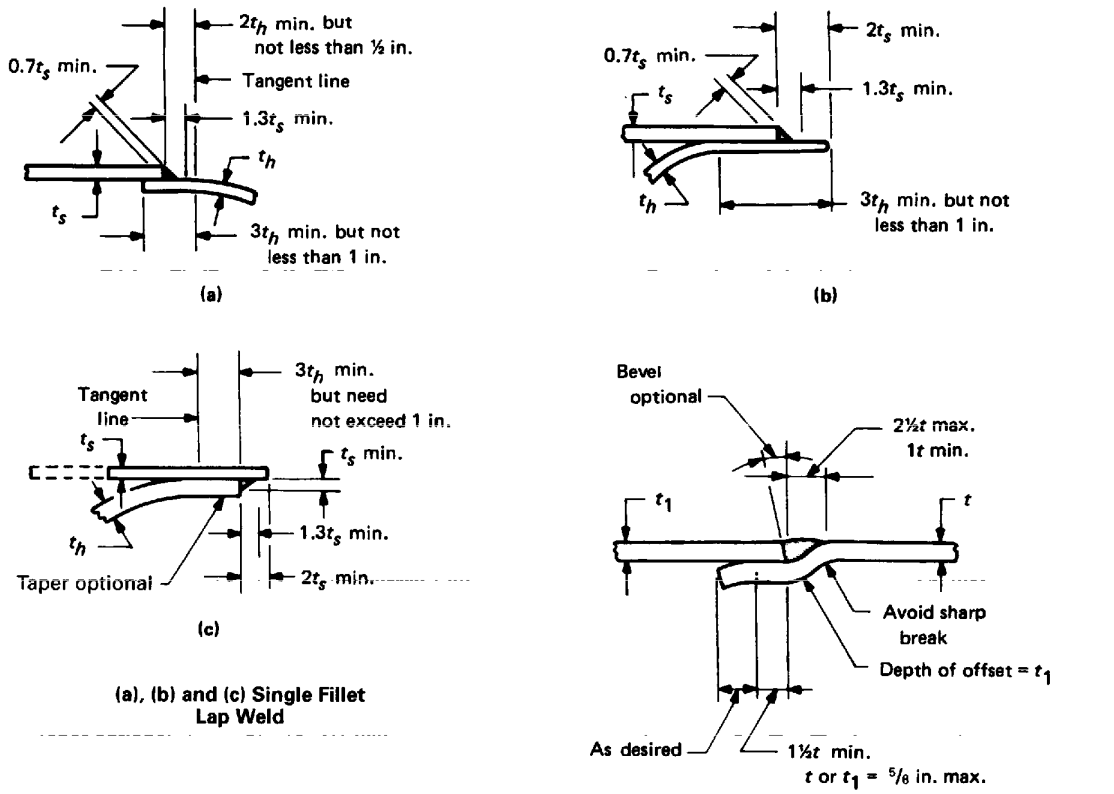


FIG. HLW-415 HEADS ATTACHED TO SHELLS

[SEC IV PT HLW A-4] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:09 2003)

FIG. HLW-415 HEADS ATTACHED TO SHELLS

HLW-430 WELDED CONNECTIONS

HLW-430.1 Strength of Attachment Welds.

Nozzles, other connections, and their reinforcement may be attached to a water heater by arc or gas welding. Sufficient welding shall be provided on either side of the line through the center of the opening parallel to the longitudinal axis of the shell to develop the strength of the shell as prescribed in HG-327 through shear or tension in the weld, whichever is applicable. The strength of groove welds shall be based on the area subjected to shear or to tension. The strength of fillet welds shall be based on the area subjected to shear, computed on the minimum leg dimension. The inside periphery of a fillet weld shall be used in computing its length.

HLW-430.2 Stress Values for Weld Metal.

The allowable stress values for groove and fillet welds and for shear in nozzle necks in percentages of stress values for the vessel material are as follows:

Nozzle wall	70%
Groove welded tension	74%
Groove welded shear	60%
Fillet weld shear	49%

NOTE: These values are obtained by combining the following factors: $87\frac{1}{2}$% for combined end and side loading, 80% for shear strength, and the applicable joint efficiency factors.

HLW-431 MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS FOR ATTACHMENT WELDS

HLW-431.1 General.

The location and minimum size of attachment welds for nozzles and other connections shall conform to the requirements in this paragraph.

(a) Notations. The notations used in this paragraph and in Fig. HLW-431.1 are defined as follows:

t	= nominal thickness of shell or head, in.
t_n	= nominal thickness of nozzle wall, in.
t_e	= thickness of reinforcement element, in.
t_w	= dimension of partial-penetration attachment welds (fillet, single-bevel, or single-J), measured as shown in Fig. HLW-431.1, in.
t_c	= the smaller of $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm) or $0.7\,t_n$ (inside corner welds may be further limited by a lesser length of projection of the nozzle wall beyond the inside face of the water heater wall)
$t_{\min.}$	= the smaller of $\frac{3}{4}$ in. (19 mm) or the thickness of either of the parts joined by a fillet, single-bevel, or single-J weld, in.
t_1, t_2	= not less than $\frac{1}{3}\,t_{\min.}$ or $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm) and $t_1 + t_2$ not less than $1\frac{1}{4}\,t_{\min.}$

HLW-431.2 Inserted Nozzles Without Added Reinforcement Elements

[SEC IV PT HLW A-4] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:09 2003)

(a) Nozzles inserted into or through a hole cut in the shell and without additional reinforcement elements shall be attached by a full-penetration groove weld or by two partial penetration welds, one on each face of the shell. Permissible types of welds are shown in Fig. HLW-431.1, sketches (a) through (h).

(b) Backing strips shall be used with full penetration welds deposited from one side only when the shell thickness is over $^3/_8$ in. (10 mm) or when complete joint penetration cannot be verified by visual inspection. The two partial penetration welds may be any desired combination of fillet, single-bevel, and single-J welds. The dimension t_w of each weld shall be not less than $^1/_4$ in. (6 mm) or 0.7t and their sum shall be not less than $1^1/_4\, t_{min}$ (see Fig. HLW-431.1).

HLW-431.3 Inserted Nozzles With Added Reinforcement.

Inserted-type nozzles having added reinforcement in the form of one or more separate reinforcement plates shall be attached by welds at the nozzle neck periphery and at the outer edge of each reinforcement plate. The weld at the outer edge of each reinforcement plate shall be a fillet weld with a minimum throat dimension of $^1/_2\, t_{min}$.

HLW-431.4 Nozzles With Integral Reinforcement.

Nozzles and other connections having integral reinforcement in the form of extended necks or saddle-type pads shall be attached by a full-penetration weld or by means of a fillet weld along the outer edge and a fillet, single-bevel, or single-J weld along the inner edge. The throat dimension of the outer weld shall be not less than $^1/_2\, t_{min}$. The dimension t_w of the inner weld shall be not less than 0.7 t_{min} [see Fig. HLW-431.1, sketch (h)].

HLW-431.5 Fittings With Internal Threads and Studded Pads.

The attachment of internally threaded fittings and studded pads shall meet the following requirements.

(a) Except as provided for in (b) below, internally threaded fittings shall be attached by a full-penetration groove weld or by two fillet or partial penetration welds, one on each face of the water heater wall. The minimum weld dimensions shall be as shown in Fig. HLW-431.5, sketches (u), (v), (w), and (x).

(b) Internally threaded fittings or equivalent bolting pads not exceeding NPS 4 (DN 100) may be attached by a fillet weld deposited from the outside only, having

the minimum dimensions shown in Fig. HLW-431.5, sketches (a) through (l). Fittings or studded pads which are not subject to a bending load and which will be plugged, such as those for thermostats, anode rods, drain valves, cleanouts, and heating elements, may be attached to water heater vessels having a thickness not greater than $^3/_8$ in. (10 mm) by a fillet weld deposited from the outside only having the minimum dimensions shown in Fig. HLW-431.5, sketch (y)0. The maximum size opening in the water heater vessel shall be $5^3/_8$ in. (137 mm) in any direction but not greater than one-half the vessel diameter.

[SEC IV PT HLW A-4] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:10 2003)

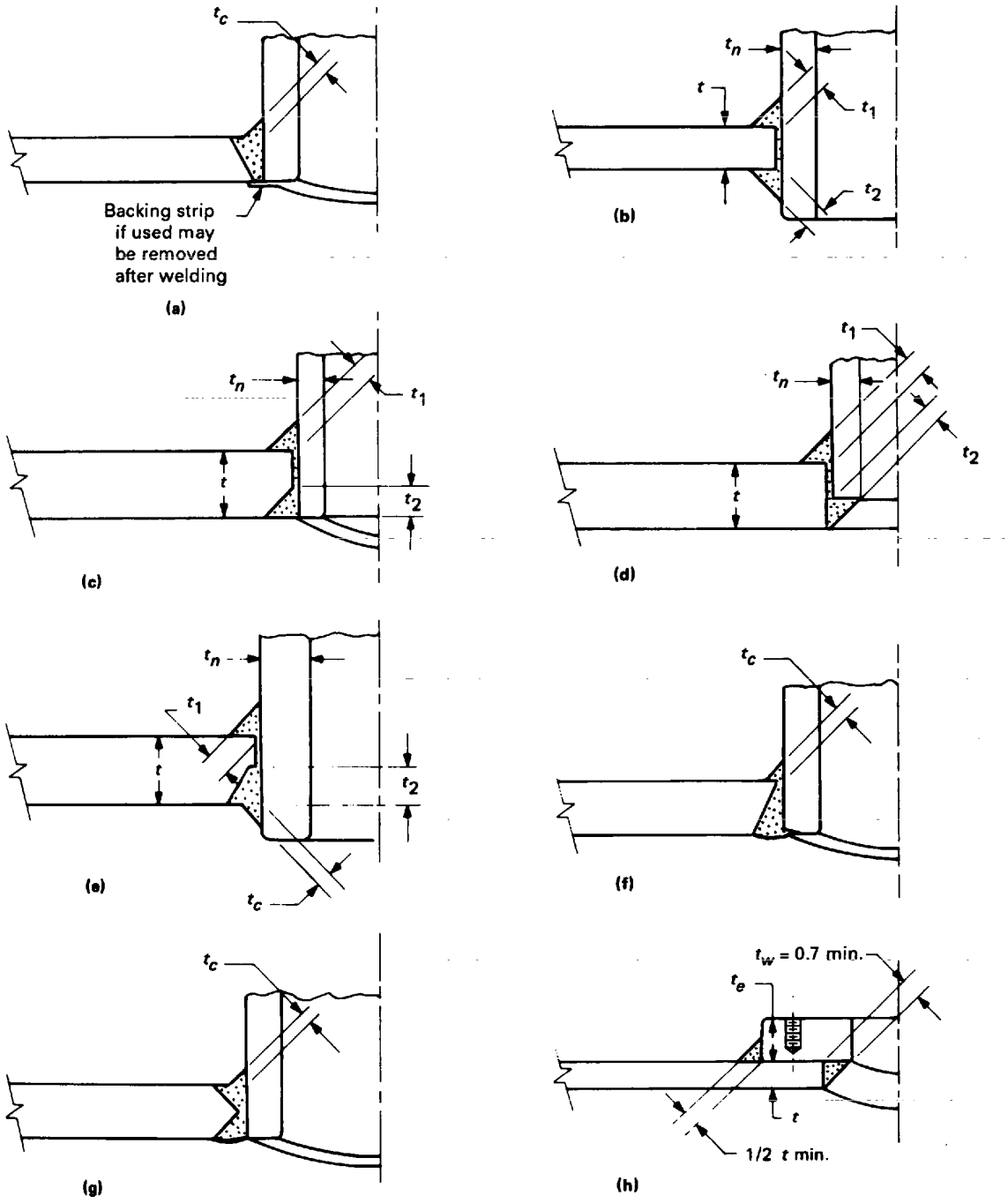


FIG. HLW-431.1 SOME ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF WELDS FOR FITTINGS, NOZZLES, AND OTHER CONNECTIONS TO SHELLS AND HEAD

[SEC IV PT HLW A-4] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:10 2003)

FIG. HLW-431.1 SOME ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF WELDS FOR FITTINGS, NOZZLES AND OTHER CONNECTIONS TO SHELLS AND HEAD

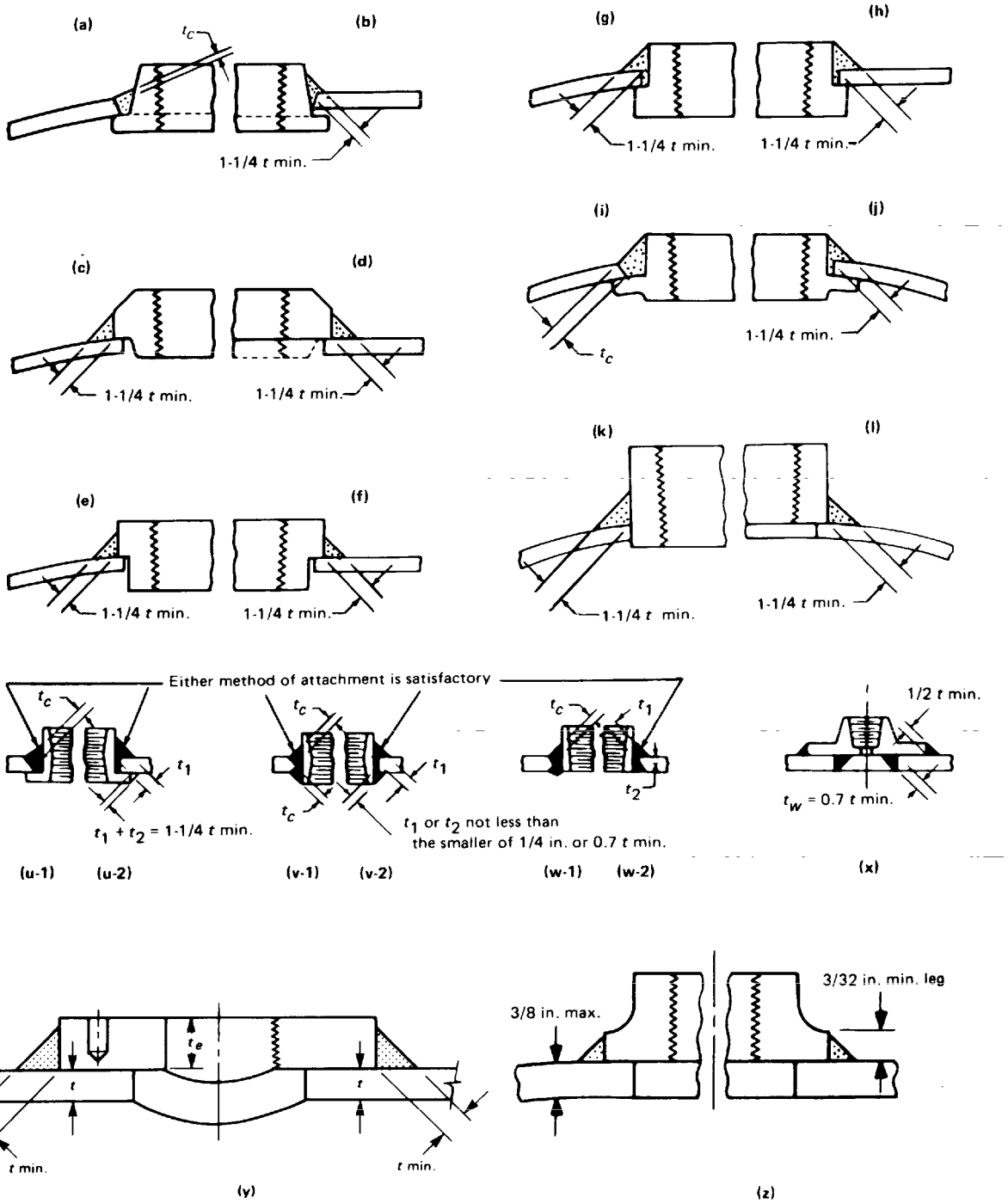


FIG. HLW-431.5 SOME ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF WELDS FOR FITTINGS, NOZZLES, AND OTHER CONNECTIONS TO SHELLS AND HEAD

[SEC IV PT HLW A-4] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:11 2003)

FIG. HLW-431.5 SOME ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF WELDS FOR FITTINGS, NOZZLES, AND OTHER CONNECTIONS TO SHELLS AND HEAD

(c) Flange-type fittings not exceeding NPS 2 (DN 50) as shown in Fig. HLW-431.5, sketch (z) may be attached without additional reinforcement other than that in the fitting and its attachments, provided all of the following conditions are met:

(1) the water heater wall thickness shall not exceed $^{3}/_{8}$ in. (10 mm);

(2) the minimum fillet leg shall be $^{3}/_{32}$ in. (2.4 mm);

(3) the opening in the water heater wall shall not exceed the outside diameter of the nominal pipe plus $^{3}/_{4}$ in. (19 mm).

HLW-431.6 Internally Threaded Fittings Attached by Resistance Welding.

Resistance welding may be used for the attachment of fittings under the following limitations and requirements.

(a) The welding process utilized shall be limited to projection welding.

(b) Materials used in resistance welded parts shall be limited to a maximum carbon content of 0.15%.

(c) The thickness *t* shall not exceed $^{5}/_{16}$ in. (8 mm), and the fitting shall not exceed NPS 2 (DN 50).

(d) The maximum allowable working pressure for a vessel with fittings attached by resistance welding shall be established by a proof test in accordance with HLW-500.

(e) In lieu of the Procedure and Performance Qualification requirements of Section IX, the following requirements shall be met.

(1) Workmanship Samples

(a) Three welded specimens of each combination of fitting size and base metal thickness employed shall be made immediately before and after the welding of the fittings for the proof test vessel. These test specimens shall be representative of the manufacturing practice employed in the attachment of the fittings to the proof test vessel. Sufficient base metal shall overlap the fitting to allow securement for the tensile test.

(b) These welded specimens shall be subjected to tensile loading. Each specimen shall pass the tensile test by shearing the fitting or the base metal. Separation at the weld interface shall constitute failure. Any failure shall require a repeat of the workmanship sample test as herein required.

(c) All pertinent information obtained from the foregoing tests shall be recorded. These samples and data constitute workmanship samples which shall be available for comparison with quality control specimens that are made during production.

(2) Machine Settings and Controls

(a) The resistance welding machine settings and process control parameters used in the attachment of the fittings to the proof test vessel and the workmanship samples shall be recorded. Except for minor variations and adjustments as permitted in the above parameters, the applicable settings shall be used in the fabrication of all vessels in a given production run.

(b) The machine settings and control shall be verified by a test sample prior to the start of daily operations, after any service or adjustment is done on the welding equipment, and with every change in material or nominal thickness.

(3) Records. Records shall be kept of all data obtained from tests of the proof test vessel, the workmanship samples, the welding machine settings, the welding procedure, and process control parameters.

(4) If resistance welding machines other than those used for the initial proof test vessel and workmanship samples are to be used in production, each additional machine and welding procedure shall be qualified in full accordance with (e)(1), (e)(2), and (e)(3) above.

HLW-431.7 Stud Welds.

Arc stud welding and resistance stud welding, as defined in E-101, where the pressure exerts a tensile load on the studs, may be used only for the attachments of bolted unstayed flat heads, cover plates and blind flanges, handholes and manholes, with the further limitations as follows.

(a) Studs attached by stud welding shall not be in direct contact with products of combustion or flue gases.

(b) Where the pressure exerts a tensile load on the studs, a full face gasket must be used on flat heads, cover plates, and blind flanges attached by stud welding.

(c) The minimum size stud used shall be not less than $^{1}/_{4}$ in. (6 mm) nominal diameter and the maximum size shall not exceed $^{7}/_{8}$ in. (22 mm) nominal diameter.

(d) The type of stud shall be limited to round externally threaded studs.

(e) Base metal shall be of ferrous material specification as permitted by this Section, and the base metal must be thick enough to prevent burn through.

(f) Stud material for arc stud welding and resistance stud welding of carbon steel shall be low carbon steel

of an acceptable material in this Section and with a carbon maximum of 0.27% and with a minimum tensile strength of 60,000 psi (410 MPa).

(g) The maximum spacing of studs shall not exceed 12 times the nominal diameter of the stud.

(h) The maximum allowable stress for the stud shall be 7800 psi (54 MPa) based on the smallest cross-sectional area (i.e., the root of the thread).

HLW-431.8 Friction Welding.

Materials joined by the inertia and continuous drive friction welding processes shall be limited to material assigned P-Numbers in Section IX and shall not include rimmed or semikilled steel.

HLW-432 BRAZED CONNECTIONS FOR COPPER LINED VESSELS

Brazing shall meet the applicable requirements of Subpart HB, Articles 10 through 15, inclusive. Some acceptable brazed connections are as shown in Fig. HLW-432.1.

HLW-440 WELDING PROCESSES

The welding processes that may be used under this Part are restricted to the following.

(a) Arc or gas welding processes are restricted to shielded metal arc, submerged arc, gas metal arc, gas tungsten arc, plasma arc, atomic hydrogen metal arc, oxyhydrogen, and oxyacetylene.

(b) Pressure welding processes are restricted to flash, induction, resistance, pressure thermit, pressure gas, and inertia and continuous drive friction welding.

(c) Definitions are given in Section IX which include variations of these processes.

[98]
HLW-450 WELDING QUALIFICATIONS

Unless otherwise specified in this Part the procedures, the welders, and the welding operators used in welding pressure parts and in joining nonpressure parts (attachments) to pressure parts shall be qualified in accordance with Section IX.

Some linings require an elevated temperature for proper application. These elevated temperatures are not to be considered a form of heat treatment for welding procedure qualification.

[98]

HLW-451 PRODUCTION WORK QUALIFICATIONS

(a) No production work shall be undertaken until the procedures, the welders, and the welding operators have been qualified, except that performance qualification by radiography, in conformance with Section IX, QW-304 for welders or QW-305 for welding operators, may be performed within the first 3 ft (0.9 m) of the first production weld.

(b) Welders, including brazers, and welding and brazing operators not in the employ of the manufacturer (Certificate of Authorization Holders) may be used to fabricate water heaters or parts thereof constructed in accordance with the Section, provided all of the following conditions are met.

(1) All Code construction shall be the responsibility of the Manufacturer.

(2) All welding shall be performed in accordance with the Manufacturer's welding procedure specifications which have been qualified by the Manufacturer in accordance with the requirements of Section IX and this Section.

(3) All welders shall be qualified by the Manufacturer in accordance with the requirements of Section IX and this Section.

(4) The Manufacturer's quality control system shall include as a minimum:

(a) a requirement for complete and exclusive administrative and technical supervision of all welders by the Manufacturer;

(b) evidence of the Manufacturer's authority to assign and remove welders at his discretion without involvement of any other organization;

(c) a requirement for Assignment of Welder Identification symbols;

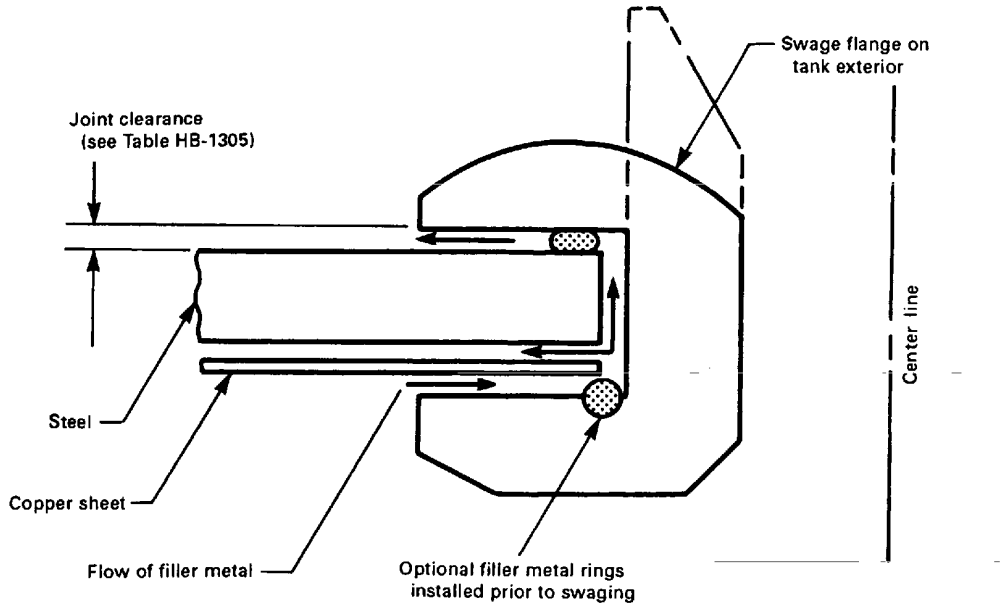
(d) evidence that this program has been accepted by the Manufacturer's Authorized Inspection Agency which provides the inspection service.

(5) The Manufacturer shall be responsible for Code compliance of the completed vessel or part, including Code symbol stamping and providing Data Report Forms properly executed and countersigned by the Inspector.

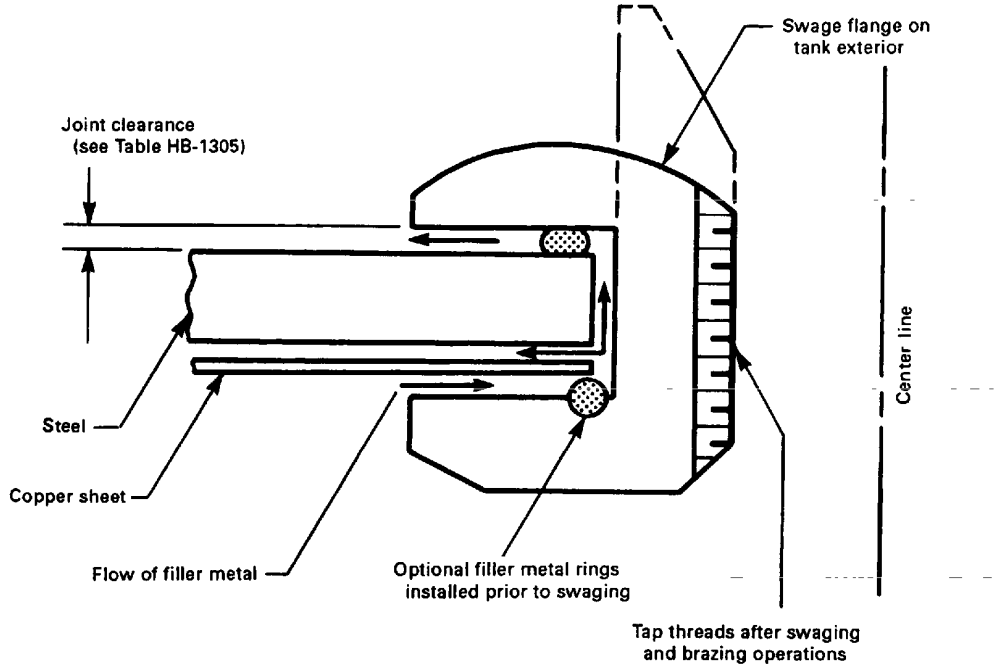
HLW-452 INTERCHANGE OF QUALIFYING TESTS AMONG MANUFACTURERS PROHIBITED

The performance qualification tests for welders and welding operators conducted by one manufacturer or contractor shall not qualify a welder or welding operator to do work for any other manufacturer or contractor.

[SEC IV PT HLW A-4] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:13 2003)



(a)



(b)

FIG. HLW-432.1 SOME ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF BRAZED FITTINGS, NOZZLES, AND OTHER CONNECTIONS TO COPPER-LINED SHELLS AND HEADS

[SEC IV PT HLW A-4] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:13 2003)

FIG. HLW-432.1 SOME ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF BRAZED FITTING, NOZZLES, AND OTHER CONNECTIONS TO COPPER-LINED SHELLS AND HEADS

HLW-453 MAINTENANCE OF RECORDS OF QUALIFICATIONS AND IDENTIFYING MARKS

The Manufacturer or contractor shall maintain a record of the welding procedures and welders and welding operators employed by him showing the date and results of test and the identification mark assigned to each welder. These records shall be certified to by the Manufacturer or contractor and be accessible to the Inspector. The welder or welding operator shall stamp his identification mark on or adjacent to all welded joints made by him at intervals of not greater than 3 ft (0.9 m), or the Manufacturer shall keep a record of the welded joints on a water heater vessel and the welders and welding operators used in making the joints.

HLW-454 POSTHYDROTEST WELDING OF NONPRESSURE PARTS TO PRESSURE PARTS

Nonpressure parts may be welded to pressure parts after the hydrostatic test has been performed as set forth in HLW-505, provided the following criteria are met:

(a) The welding is limited to P-No. 1 materials.

(b) The attachment is done by stud welding, or by fillet welding where the throat of the weld does not exceed the lesser of 1.5 times the thickness of the pressure part or $^{1}/_{4}$ in. (6 mm).

(c) The completed weld is inspected by the Authorized Inspector.

(d) The Manufacturer's Data Report Form shall be signed only after the completion of the welding.

HLW-460 SPECIFIC WELDING REQUIREMENTS

HLW-460.1 Finished Longitudinal and Circumferential Joints

(a) Butt welded joints shall have complete penetration and full fusion. The surface of the weld may be left as-welded provided the weld is free of coarse ripples, grooves, overlaps, abrupt ridges, or valleys. A reduction in thickness due to the welding process is acceptable provided all of the following conditions are met.

(1) The reduction in thickness shall not reduce the material of the adjoining surfaces below the minimum required thickness at any point.

(2) The reduction in thickness shall not exceed $^{1}/_{32}$ in. (0.8 mm) or 10% of the nominal thickness of the adjoining surface, whichever is less.[1]

HLW-460.2 Fillet Welds.

In making fillet welds, the weld metal shall be deposited in such a way that adequate penetration into the base metal at the root of the weld is secured. The reduction of the thickness of the base metal due to the welding process at the edges of the fillet weld shall meet the same requirements as for butt welds [see HLW-460.1].

HLW-460.3 Double-Welded Butt Joints.

Before applying weld metal on the second side to be welded, the root of double-welded butt joints shall be prepared by suitable methods such as chipping, grinding, or thermal gouging, so as to secure sound metal at the base of weld metal deposited on the face side, except for those processes of welding by which proper fusion and penetration are otherwise obtained and by which the root of the weld remains free from impurities.

HLW-460.4 Repair of Weld Defects.

Visible defects, such as cracks, pinholes, and incomplete fusion, and defects detected by leakage tests shall be removed

[SEC IV PT HLW A-4] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:13 2003)

by mechanical means or by thermal grooving processes, after which the joint shall be rewelded and reexamined.

HLW-460.5 Stud Welding.

In the case where arc stud welding and resistance stud welding is used to attach load carrying studs, a production stud weld test of the procedure and welding operator shall be performed on five studs, welded and tested in accordance with either the bend or torque stud weld testing described in Section IX as follows:

(a) prior to start of daily operation if used continuously on units of similar construction;

(b) prior to the start of application to a given unit when not used continuously;

(c) after adjustment or servicing is done on welding equipment.

HLW-460.6 Procedure and Performance Qualification Tests and Material Requirements for Stud Welding.

Procedure and performance qualification tests for stud welds shall be made in accordance with Section IX. Further requirements for stud welding are as follows.

(a) Metallic coatings (such as cadmium plating) if used shall not be within $^{1}/_{2}$ in. (13 mm) from the weld end of the stud.

1 It is not the intent of this paragraph to require measurement of reductions in thickness due to the welding process. If a disagreement between the Manufacturer and the Inspector exists as to the acceptability of any reduction in thickness, the depth shall be verified by actual measurement.

(b) The base metal must be above 50°F (10°C) during the welding process.

HLW-460.7 Stud Welding.

In the case where stud welding and resistance stud welding are used for joining nonpressure bearing attachments, which have essentially no load carrying function (such as extended heat transfer surfaces, insulation attachment pins, etc), to pressure parts by any automatic welding process performed in accordance with a Welding Procedure Specification (in compliance with Section IX as far as applicable), procedure and performance qualification testing is not required.

In the case where stud welding is used to attach nonload-carrying studs, a production stud weld test, appropriate to the end use application requirements, shall be specified by the Manufacturer or assembler and carried out on a separate test plate or tube:

(a) prior to start of daily operation if used continuously on units of similar construction;

(b) prior to the start of application to a given unit when not used continuously;

(c) after adjustment or servicing is done on welding equipment.

HLW-460.8 Tack Welds.

Tack welds used to secure alignment shall either be removed completely when they have served their purpose, or their stopping and starting ends shall be properly prepared by grinding or other suitable means so that they may be satisfactorily incorporated into the final weld. Tack welds, whether removed or left in place, shall be made using a fillet weld or butt weld procedure qualified in accordance with Section IX. Tack welds to be left in place shall be made by welders qualified in accordance with Section IX and shall be examined visually for defects, and if found defective, shall be removed.

It is not necessary that a subcontractor performing such tack welds for the vessel manufacturer be a holder of an ASME Certificate of Authorization. If the tack welds are permanently left in place, the final vessel manufacturer shall maintain the controls to assure that the necessary welding procedure and performance qualifications are met in order to satisfy Code requirements.

HLW-460.9 Friction Welding

[SEC IV PT HLW A-4] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:13 2003)

(a) When joining two parts by the inertia and continuous drive friction welding processes, one of the two parts must be held in a fixed position and the other part rotated. The two faces to be joined must be essentially symmetrical with respect to the axis of rotation. Some of the basic types of applicable joints are solid round to solid round, tube to tube, solid round to tube, solid round to plate, and tube to plate.

(b) The welded joint between two members joined by the inertia and continuous drive friction welding processes shall be a full penetration weld. Visual examination of the as-welded flash roll of each weld shall be made as an in-process check. The weld upset shall meet the specified amount within ±10%. The flash shall be removed to sound metal.

HLW-500 TESTS TO ESTABLISH MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE WORKING PRESSURE AND PRODUCTION LINE TESTS

HLW-501 GENERAL

The required thickness for pressure parts and the maximum allowable working pressure for water heaters that are not based upon the formulas of Article 3 shall be established by a proof test. The proof test shall consist of the application of hydrostatic pressure to a full size sample of a water heater vessel. Material in excess of the material thicknesses or of higher strengths than specified for parts of proof test vessel(s) shall be acceptable for production of such parts. The maximum allowable working pressure for a series of water heaters may be established by a proof test on one vessel from the series, or two vessels from the series if the ligament spacing differs. Vessels with the smallest and largest ligament spacing on the heads shall be tested.

Vessels in the series shall have:

(a) heads of the same geometry and thickness;

(b) cylindrical shell and tube(s), if used, that differ only by length; and

(c) openings of the same size and type as those present on the vessel proof tested.

Optional openings in the shell may be added in accordance with the provisions of HLW-308.

Optional openings in the heads may be added in accordance with the provisions of HLW-308 if such head openings are located entirely within a circle, the center of which coincides with the center of the head and the diameter of which is equal to 80% of the head diameter.

HLW-502 PROOF TEST

HLW-502.1 Test Procedure

(a) The outer surface of the vessel shall be suitably cleaned. A brittle coating shall be applied. The technique shall be suited to the coating material.

(b) The hydrostatic pressure shall be increased gradually until approximately one-half the anticipated maximum allowable working pressure is reached. Thereafter, the test pressure shall be increased in steps of approximately $^{1}/_{10}$ or less of the anticipated maximum allowable working pressure. The pressure shall be held stationary at the end of each increment for a sufficient time to allow the observations required by the testprocedure to be made, and shall be released to zero to permit determination of any permanent strain or displacement after any pressure increment that indicates an increase in strain or displacement over the previous equal pressure increment as evidenced by flaking of the brittle coating, or by the appearance of strain lines. The application of pressure shall be stopped when the intended test pressure has been reached, or at the first

[SEC IV PT HLW A-5] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:13 2003)

sign of yielding.

(c) The yield strength shall be the average of three specimens cut from the part tested after the test is completed. The specimens shall be cut from a location where the stress during the test has not exceeded the yield strength. When excess stock from the same piece of wrought material is available the test specimens may be cut from this excess stock. The specimens shall not be removed by flame cutting or any other method involving sufficient heat to affect the properties of the specimen.

(d) The maximum allowable working pressure *P* in psi for the water heater tested under this paragraph shall be computed by one of the following formulas:

(1) if the average yield strength is determined in accordance with HLW-502.1(c) above,

$$P = 0.5H \frac{Y_s}{Y_a}$$

(2) to eliminate the necessity of cutting tensile specimens and determining the actual yield strength of the material under test, or when the test has been

stopped before any yielding, one of the following formulas may be used to determine the maximum allowable working pressure:

(a) for carbon steel meeting an acceptable Code Specification, with a specified minimum tensile strength of not over 70,000 psi (481 MPa),

[SEC IV PT HLW A-5] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:14 2003)

$$P = 0.5H\left(\frac{S}{S + 5000}\right)$$

(b) for any acceptable material listed in Section IV,

$$P = 0.4H$$

where

H	= hydrostatic test pressure at which the test was stopped, psi
Y_s	= specified minimum yield strength, psi
Y_a	= actual average yield strength from test specimens, psi, as outlined in HLW-502.1(c)
S	= specified minimum tensile strength, psi

When either of the formulas in (a) and (b) above is used, the material in the pressure part shall have no appreciable cold working or other treatment that would tend to raise the yield strength above the normal.

NOTE: Due to the geometry of parts commonly used in lined water heaters, yielding due to bending often occurs at pressures which are unusually low compared to burst strength. When an analysis of the test indicates yielding occurred in bending, P may be multiplied by 1.5.

HLW-502.2 Test Gages

(a) An indicating gage shall be connected directly to the water heater vessel. If the indicating gage is not readily visible to the operator controlling the pressure applied, an additional indicating gage shall be provided where it will be visible to the operator throughout the duration of the test. For large water heater vessels, it is recommended that a recording gage be used in addition to indicating gages.

(b) Dial indicating pressure gages used in testing shall be graduated over a range of about double the intended maximum test pressure, but in no case shall the range be less than $1^1/_2$ nor more than 4 times that pressure. Digital reading pressure gages having a wider range of pressure may be used provided the readings give the same, or greater, degree of accuracy as obtained with dial pressure gages.

(c) All gages shall be calibrated against a standard deadweight tester or a calibrated master gage. Gages shall be recalibrated at any time that there is reason to believe that they are in error.

HLW-503 TESTS OF PARTS SUBJECT TO COLLAPSE

HLW-503.1

Parts of water heaters subject to collapse which have not been proof tested in accordance with HLW-502 and for which

specified rules are not provided in this Section shall withstand, without excessive deformation, a hydrostatic test of not less than three times the desired maximum allowable working pressure.

HLW-504 WITNESSING, RECORDING, AND CERTIFYING TESTS

Tests to establish the maximum allowable working pressure of complete vessels or parts shall be witnessed by the manufacturer's personnel designated to be responsible for the examination. These tests shall also be witnessed and accepted by the Authorized Inspector. These proof tests shall be recorded on Form HLW-8, Manufacturer's Master Data Proof Test Report for Water Heaters or Storage Tanks. The completed form shall be certified by the designated responsible engineering head of the manufacturer. These forms shall be kept on file by the manufacturer as a matter of record.

HLW-505 HYDROSTATIC TEST

HLW-505.1

All water heater vessels shall be subjected to a hydrostatic test of $1^{1}/_{2}$ times the maximum allowable working pressure with the exception that the test pressure for glass-lined, and fluorocarbon polymer-lined, or amine or polyamine epoxy-lined water heater vessels shall be at least equal to, but not exceed within the tolerances of test pressure in HLW-505.2, the maximum allowable working pressure to be marked on the water heater vessel. Water heater vessels which are to be galvanized or cement-lined may be pressure tested either before or after galvanizing or cement lining.

HLW-505.2

While under the hydrostatic test pressure an inspection for leakage shall be made of all joints and connections. In making hydrostatic pressure tests the pressure shall be under such control that in no case shall the required test pressure be exceeded by more than 10 psi (69 kPa).

HLW-600 INSPECTION AND CERTIFICATION OF WATER HEATERS

[98]
HLW-600.1 Inspection by Authorized Inspector.

The inspection required by this Part shall be by an Inspector employed by an ASME accredited Authorized Inspection Agency,[1] that is, the inspection organization of a State or Municipality of the United States, a Canadian Province, or an Inspector of an insurance company authorized to write boiler and pressure vessel insurance. These Inspectors shall have been qualified by written examination under the rules of any State of the United States or Province of Canada which has adopted the Code.

[98]

[98]
HLW-600.2 Manufacturer's Responsibility

(a) The manufacturer who completes any water heater vessel to be marked with the Code HLW Symbol has the responsibility of complying with all requirements of this Part, and through proper certification of assuring that any work done by others also complies with the requirements of this Part.

(b)

[SEC IV PT HLW A-6] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:14 2003)

assurance that the quality control system is in compliance with that outlined in Appendix F. These responsibilities shall include, but are not limited to, providing or making available for review the following:

(1) a valid Certificate of Authorization for use of the HLW Symbol from the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee (see HLW-602);

(2) the design calculations per Article 3 or the certified proof test results per Article 5 and associated drawings (see HLW-300 and HLW-500);

(3) identification of materials to show compliance with Articles 2 and 3 and compliance with the provisions of Section IX (see HLW-200 and HLW-300);

(4) evidence of qualification of welding and/or brazing procedures (see HLW-432 and HLW-450);

1 Whenever Authorized Inspection Agency or AIA is used in this Code, it shall mean an ASME Accredited Authorized Inspection Agency.

(5) records of qualifications of each welder, welding operator, or brazer as evidence of compliance with the provisions of Section IX (see HLW-432 and HLW-450);

(6) any Manufacturer's Partial Data Reports when required by HLW-601.2;

(7) evidence of examination of materials before fabrication to make certain it has the required thickness, has no unacceptable indications, and is one of the acceptable materials permitted by this Part and that traceability to the material identification has been maintained [see HLW-201(c) and F-202.4];

(8) the manufacturer shall submit the water heater vessel or other pressure part for inspection at such stages of the work as may be designated by the Inspector.

[98]

[98]
HLW-600.3 Authorized Inspector's Duty

(a) The Authorized Inspector shall make such inspections as he believes are needed to enable him to certify that the water heater vessels have been constructed in accordance with the rules of this Part. He shall assure himself that the manufacturer is complying with all of the requirements of this Part.

(b) It is the duty of the Inspector to assure himself that the welding procedures employed in construction are qualified under the provisions of Section IX. The manufacturer shall submit evidence to the Inspector that those requirements have been met.

(c) It is the duty of the Inspector to assure himself that all welding is done by welders or welding operators qualified under the provisions of Section IX. The manufacturer shall make available to the Inspector a certified copy of the record of performance qualification tests of each welder and welding operator as evidence that these requirements have been met.

The Inspector has the right at any time to call for and witness the test welding and testing although it is not mandatory that he witness the test welding and the testing unless he so desires.

(d) The provisions of HG-515.4(b) apply to the fabrication of multiple duplicate water heaters and storage tanks.

[98]

HLW-601 MANUFACTURER'S DATA AND PARTIAL DATA REPORTS

HLW-601.1 Manufacturer's Data Report

(a) Each manufacturer shall complete a Manufacturer's Data Report for each vessel he produces. Form HLW-6 may be used. Individual manufacturer's data reports, if used, will satisfy the requirements for the Manufacturers' Data Report. The report may cover a single vessel or may include the serial numbers in uninterrupted sequence of identical water heater vessels completed, inspected, and stamped in a continuous 8 hr period.

[SEC IV PT HLW A-6] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:14 2003)

(b) The manufacturer shall have the responsibility of furnishing a copy of the completed Manufacturer's Data Report at the place of installation to the inspection agency, the purchaser, and the state, municipal, or provincial authority. The manufacturer shall either keep a copy of the Manufacturers' Data Report on file for at least 5 years, or the water heater vessel may be registered and the original Data Report filed with the National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors, 1055 Crupper Avenue, Columbus, Ohio 43229.

HLW-601.2 Partial Data Reports

(a) Manufacturer's Partial Data Reports for those parts of a water heater vessel requiring inspection under this Code, which are furnished by other than the shop of the manufacturer responsible for the completed heater, shall be executed by the parts manufacturer and shall be forwarded in duplicate, to the manufacturer of the finished water heater.

(b) Partial Data Reports (Form HLW-7) shall be completed for all parts that require inspection under this Code which are fabricated by a manufacturer other than the manufacturer of the completed water heater regardless of whether individual Manufacturer's Data Reports are compiled for the completed units. These Partial Data Reports, together with his own inspection, shall be the final Inspector's authority to witness the application of a Code Symbol to the completed water heater.

HLW-602 STAMPING OF WATER HEATERS

HLW-602.1 Stamping Requirements for Water Heaters.

All water heaters to which the Code Symbol is to be applied shall be built according to the rules of this Section by a manufacturer who is in possession of a Code Symbol Stamp and a valid Certificate of Authorization per procedure of HG-540. Each water heater vessel shall be marked or stamped with the Code Symbol shown in Fig. HLW-602.1 and the form of stamping shown in Fig. HLW-602.2 with the following data:

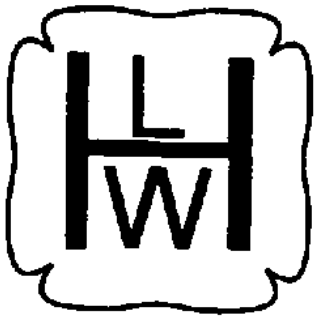


FIG. HLW-602.1 OFFICIAL SYMBOL TO DENOTE THE AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS' STANDARD

FIG. HLW-602.1 OFFICIAL SYMBOL TO DENOTE THE AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS' STANDARD

[SEC IV PT HLW A-6] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:15 2003)

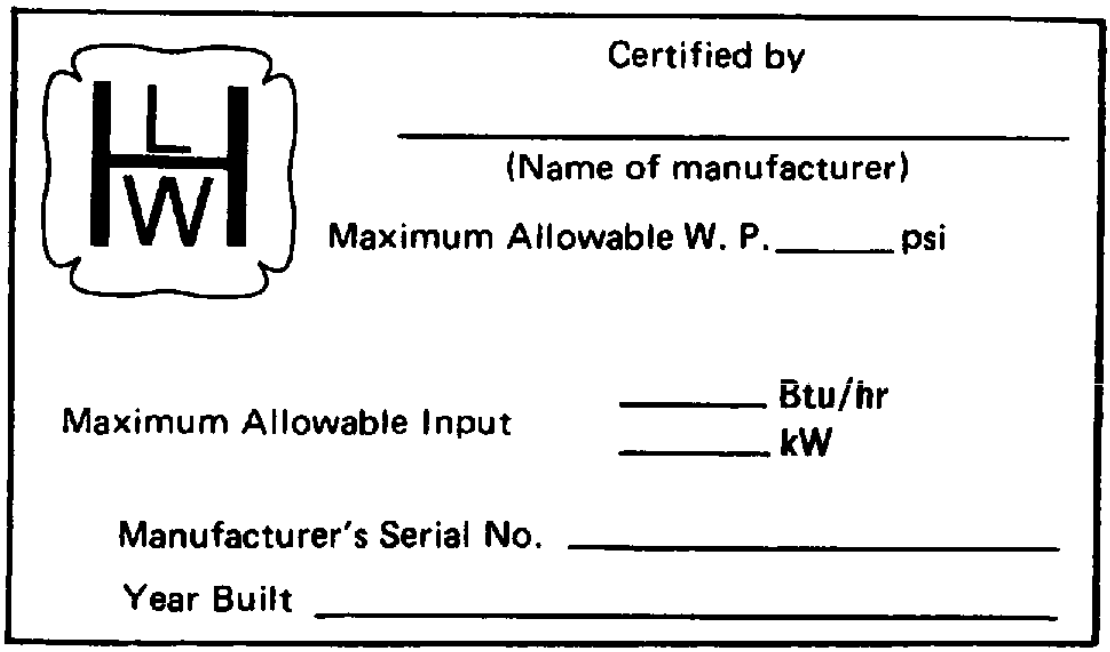


FIG. HLW-602.2 FORM OF STAMPING ON COMPLETED WATER HEATERS

FIG. HLW-602.2 FORM OF STAMPING ON COMPLETED WATER HEATERS

(a) the manufacturer's name, preceded by the words "Certified by"

(b) maximum allowable working pressure;

(c) maximum allowable input in Btu/hr; electric heaters may use kW or Btu/hr (expressed at the rate of 3500 Btu/hr per kW) or both. In lieu of the input markings storage tanks shall be marked "Storage Only"

(d) manufacturer's serial number (this may be a serial number or a combination model and serial number);

(e) year built (the year built may be incorporated into the serial number).

HLW-602.2 Stamping a Proof Tested Vessel.

A completed vessel or one tested prior to lining may have the required Code Symbol and marking applied, provided:

(a)

[SEC IV PT HLW A-6] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:15 2003)

(b) all welding was qualified as required by HLW-451;

(c) the MAWP is calculated by the method of HLW-502.1(d)(2);

(d) the interior of a lined vessel must be inspected to verify that it was not damaged; and

(e) the completed vessel is subjected to the hydrostatic test provisions of HLW-505.

[98]
HLW-602.3

When the Code Symbol and marking required by HLW-602.1, items (*1*) through (*5*), is applied directly to the water heater vessel, it shall be stamped with letters and figures at least $^{5}/_{16}$ in. (8 mm) high or on a stamping plate at least $^{3}/_{64}$ in. (1.2 mm) thick permanently fastened to the water heater vessel. Stamping plates bearing the stamping and marking required in HLW-602.1 may be used in lieu of stamping these data directly on the water heater vessel if the stamping plates are permanently attached to the water heater vessel. In this case the required data on the stamping plate shall be in characters not less than $^{1}/_{8}$ in. (3.2 mm) high.

If the required marking or stamping is to be covered by insulation, jacket, or other form of casing, one of the following shall be provided:

(a) an opening with a removal cover for viewing the marking or stamping;

(b) a nameplate, located in a conspicuous place on the jacket, duplicating the required Code Symbol and data. This plate shall be at least 3 in. × 4 in. (76 mm × 102 mm) in size marked with letters and numerals at least $^{1}/_{8}$ in. (3.2 mm) high and of either metallic material attached by mechanical means or of any material attached by an adhesive system meeting the requirements of Appendix 3.

[98]

HLW-602.4

Water heaters fabricated of austenitic stainless steel material listed in Table HLW-301 shall have a precautionary statement warning that the water heaters are to be operated only on deionized water having a minimum specific resistivity of 1.0 MΩ /cm clearly marked and located on the water heater so that it will be readily visible.

HLW-700 CONTROLS

HLW-701 TEMPERATURE CONTROL

[98]
HLW-701.1

Each individual automatically fired water heater, in addition to the operating control used for normal water heater operation shall have a separate high temperature limit actuated combustion control that will automatically cut off the fuel supply. The temperature range of the high temperature limit control shall not allow a setting over 210°F (99°C).

(a) On gas-fired water heaters, the high temperature limit control when actuated shall shut off the fuel supply with a

shutoff means other than the operating control valve. Separate valves may have a common body.

(b) On electrically heated water heaters, the high temperature limit control when actuated shall cut off all power to the operating controls.

(c) On oil-fired water heaters, the high temperature limit control when actuated shall cut off all current flow to the burner mechanism.

(d) On indirect water heating systems, the high temperature limit control when activated shall cut off the source of heat. [98]

HLW-702 LIMIT CONTROLS

Limit controls used with electric circuits should break the hot or line sides of the control circuit.

HLW-703 CONTROLS AND HEAT GENERATING APPARATUS

(a) All water heaters should be equipped with suitable primary (flame safeguard) safety controls, safety limit switches, and burners, or electric elements as required by a nationally recognized standard.[1]

(b) The symbol of the certifying organization[2] that has investigated such equipment as having complied with a nationally recognized standard shall be affixed to the equipment and shall be considered as evidence that the controls and heat generating apparatus were manufactured in accordance with that standard.

HLW-704 ELECTRICAL WIRING

HLW-704.1 Electrical Code Compliance.

All field wiring for controls, heat generating apparatus, and other appurtenances necessary for the operation of the water heater should be installed in accordance with the provisions of the National Electrical Code and/or should comply with the applicable local electrical codes. All water heaters supplied with factory mounted and wired controls, heat generating apparatus, and other appurtenances necessary for the operation of the water heaters should be installed in accordance with the provisions of the nationally recognized standards such as listed in footnote 1 of HLW-703.

1 Examples of these nationally recognized standards that are currently effective:

ANSI C95.3, Standard for Safety Oil-Fired Water Heaters (UL 732).

ANSI Z21.10.3, American National Standards for Gas Water Heaters, Volume III, Circulating Tank, Instantaneous and Large Automatic Storage Type Water Heaters.

Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., UL 795, Standards for Safety, Commercial-Industrial Gas-Heating Equipment.

Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., UL 1453, Standards for Safety, Electric Booster and Commercial Storage Tank Water Heaters.

2 A certifying organization is one that provides uniform testing, examination, and listing procedures under established, nationally recognized standards and that is acceptable to the authorities having jurisdiction.

HLW-800 SAFETY RELIEF VALVES

HLW-800.1 Safety Relief Valve Requirements for Water Heaters

(a) Each water heater shall have at least one officially rated temperature and pressure safety relief valve or at least one

[SEC IV PT HLW A-8] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:15 2003)

officially rated safety relief valve. The valve(s) shall be marked with the ASME Code Symbol V or HV to evidence compliance with the construction and rating requirements of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. No safety relief valve shall be smaller than NPS $^{3}/_{4}$ (DN 20).

(b) The pressure setting shall be less than or equal to the maximum allowable working pressure of the water heater. However, if any of the other components in the hot water supply system (such as valves, pumps, expansion or storage tanks, or piping) have a lesser working pressure rating than the water heater, the pressure setting for the relief valve(s) shall be based upon the component with the lowest maximum allowable working pressure rating. If more than one safety relief valve is used, the additional valve(s) may be set within a range not to exceed 10% over the set pressure of the first valve.

(c) The required relieving capacity in Btu/hr of the safety relief valve shall not be less than the maximum allowable input unless the water heater is marked with the rated burner input capacity of the water heater on the casing in a readily visible location, in which case the rated burner input capacity may be used as a basis for sizing the safety relief valves. The relieving capacity for electric water heaters shall be 3500 Btu/hr (1.0 kW) per kW of input. In every case, the following requirements shall be met. Safety relief valve capacity for each water heater shall be such that with the fuel burning equipment installed and operated at maximum capacity the pressure cannot rise more than 10% of maximum allowable working pressures.

(d) If operating conditions are changed or additional heater heating surface is installed, the safety relief valve capacity shall be increased, if necessary, to meet the new conditions and shall be in accordance with the above provisions. In no case shall the increased input capacity exceed the maximum allowable input capacity. The additional valves required, on account of changed conditions, may be installed on the outlet piping provided there is no intervening valve.

HLW-801 MOUNTING SAFETY RELIEF VALVES

HLW-801.1 Installation.

Safety relief valves shall be installed by either the installer or the manufacturer before a water heater is placed in operation.

HLW-801.2 Permissible Mountings.

Safety relief valves shall be connected to the top of water heaters or directly to a tapped or flanged opening in the water heater, to a fitting connected to the water heater by a short nipple, to a Y-base, or to a valveless header connecting water outlets on the same heater. Safety relief valves shall be installed with their spindles upright and vertical with no horizontal connecting pipe, except that, when the safety relief valve is mounted directly on the water heater vessel with no more than 4 in. (102 mm) maximum interconnecting piping, the valve may be installed in the horizontal position with the outlet pointed down. The center line of the safety relief valve connection shall be no lower than 4 in. (102 mm) from the top of the shell. No piping or fitting used to mount the safety relief valve shall be of a nominal pipe size less than that of the valve inlet.

HLW-801.3 Requirements for Common Connection for Two or More Valves

(a) When a water heater is fitted with two or more safety relief valves on one connection, this connection shall have a cross-sectional area not less than the combined areas of inlet connections of all the safety relief valves with which it connects.

(b) When a Y-base is used, the inlet area shall be not less than the combined outlet areas. When the size

of the water heater requires a safety relief valve larger than $4^{1}/_{2}$ in. (114 mm) diameter, two or more valves having the required combined capacity shall be used. When two or more valves are used on a water heater, they may be single, directly attached, or mounted on a Y-base.

HLW-801.4 Threaded Connections.

A threaded connection may be used for attaching a valve.

[SEC IV PT HLW A-8] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:15 2003)

HLW-801.5 Prohibited Mountings.

Safety relief valves shall not be connected to an internal pipe in the water heater or a cold water feed line connected to the water heater.

HLW-801.6 Use of Shutoff Valves Prohibited.

No shutoff of any description shall be placed between the safety relief valve and the water heater, or on discharge pipes between such valves and the atmosphere.

HLW-801.7 Safety Relief Valve Discharge Piping

(a) When a discharge pipe is used, its internal cross-sectional area shall be not less than the full area of the valve outlet or of the total of the valve outlets discharging thereinto, and shall be as short and straight as possible and so arranged as to avoid undue stress on the valve or valves. When an elbow is placed on a safety relief discharge pipe, it shall be located close to the valve outlet.

(b) The discharge from safety relief valves shall be so arranged that there will be no danger of scalding attendants. When the safety relief valve discharge is piped away from the water heater to the point of discharge, there shall be provisions for properly draining the piping and valve body. The size and arrangement of discharge piping shall be such that any pressure that may exist or develop will not reduce the relieving capacity of the relieving devices below that required to protect the water heater.

HLW-805 WATER SUPPLY

HLW-805.1 Connections.

Water supply shall be introduced into a water heater through an independent water supply connection. Feedwater shall not be introduced through openings or connections provided for cleaning, safety relief valves, drain, pressure gage, or temperature gage.

HLW-805.2 Pressure.

If the water supply pressure to a water heater exceeds 75% of the set pressure of the safety relief valve, a pressure reducing valve is required.

TABLE HLW-809.1
EXPANSION TANK CAPACITIES FOR A WATER HEATER[1]

System Volume, gal	Tank Capacities, gal	
	Prepressurized Diaphragm Type	Nonprepressurized Type
50	1	3
100	2	6
200	3	12
300	4	18
400	5	24
500	6	30
1000	12	60
2000	24	120

NOTE:

(1) Capacities in this Table are given as a guide to reduce or eliminate relief valve weeping under conditions of partial water system demands or occasional water draw during recovery.

System volume includes water heater capacity plus all piping capacity for a recirculation system or water heater capacity only for a nonrecirculation system.

The capacities are based upon a water temperature rise from 40°F to 180°F, 60 psi fill pressure, maximum operating pressure of 125 psi, 20% water recovery, and an acceptance factor of 0.465 for prepressurized types and 0.09156 for nonprepressurized types. A procedure for estimating system volume and for determining expansion tank sizes for other design conditions may be found in Chapter 13 of the 1987 Systems and Applications Volume of the ASHRAE Handbook.

[SEC IV PT HLW A-8] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:16 2003)

TABLE HLW-809.1 EXPANSION TANK CAPACITIES FOR A WATER HEATER[1]

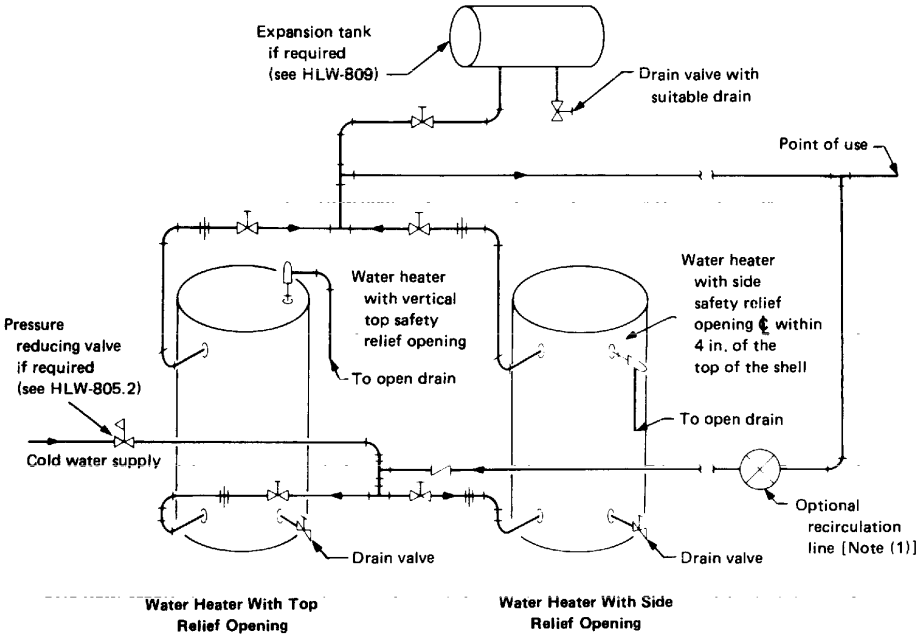
HLW-805.3 Stop Valves.

Stop valves should be placed in the supply and discharge pipe connections of a water heater installation to permit draining the water heater without emptying the system.

HLW-809 PROVISIONS FOR THERMAL EXPANSION IN HOT WATER SYSTEMS

HLW-809.1 Expansion Tank.

If a system is equipped with a check valve or pressure reducing valve in the cold water inlet line, consideration should be given to the installation of an airtight expansion tank or other suitable air cushion. Otherwise, due to the thermal expansion of the water, the safety relief valve may lift periodically. If an expansion tank is provided, it shall be constructed in accordance with Section VIII, Division 1. See Fig. HLW-809.1 for a typical acceptable installation. Except for prepressurized diaphragm type tanks, which should be installed on the cold water side, provisions shall be made for draining the tank without emptying the system.



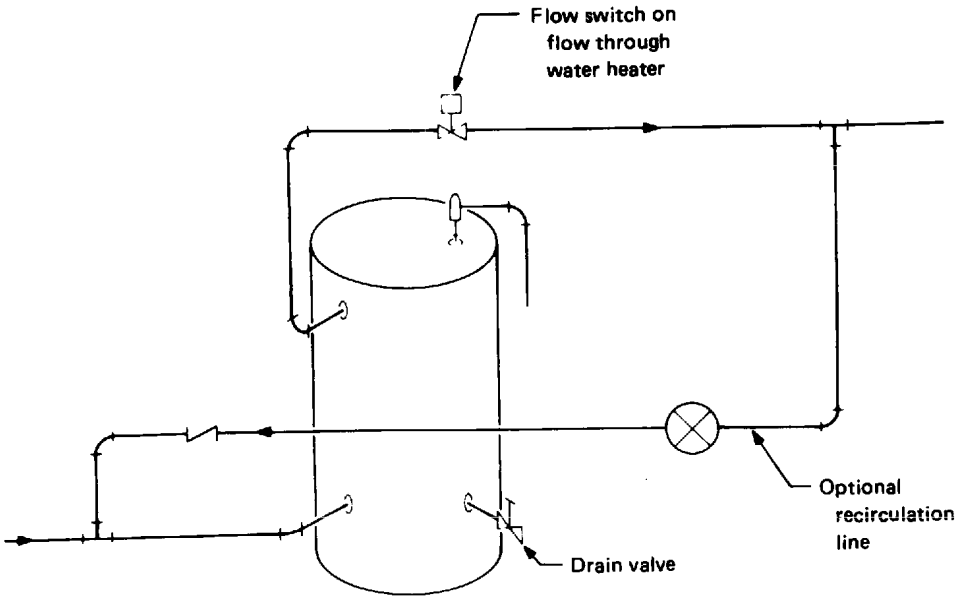
GENERAL NOTE: Thermometer requirements are in HLW-820.

NOTE:
(1) Recirculation system may be gravity or pump actuated.

FIG. HLW-809.1 A TYPICAL ACCEPTABLE PIPING INSTALLATION FOR STORAGE WATER HEATERS IN BATTERY

[SEC IV PT HLW A-8] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:17 2003)

FIG. HLW-809.1 A TYPICAL ACCEPTABLE PIPING INSTALLATION FOR STORAGE WATER HEATERS IN BATTERY



GENERAL NOTE: Thermometer requirements are in HLW-820.

FIG. HLW-809.2 A TYPICAL ACCEPTABLE PIPING INSTALLATION FOR FLOW THROUGH WATER HEATER WITH PROVISIONS FOR PIPING EXPANSION

FIG. HLW-809.2 A TYPICAL ACCEPTABLE PIPING INSTALLATION FOR FLOW THROUGH WATER HEATER WITH PROVISIONS FOR PIPING EXPANSION

HLW-809.2 Piping.

Provisions shall be made for the expansion and contraction of hot water mains connected to water heaters by providing substantial anchorage at suitable points and by providing swing joints when water heaters are installed in batteries, so that there will be no undue strain transmitted to the water heaters. See Figs. HLW-809.1 and HLW-809.2 for typical schematic arrangements of piping incorporating strain absorbing joints.

HLW-810 BOTTOM DRAIN VALVE

(a) Each water heater shall have a bottom drain pipe connection fitted with a valve or cock connected with the lowest water space practicable. The minimum size bottom drain valve shall be $^{3}/_{4}$ in. (19 mm).

(b) Any discharge piping connected to the bottom drain connection shall be full size to the point of discharge.

[98]
HLW-820 THERMOMETER

Each installed water heater shall have a thermometer so located and connected that it shall be easily readable. The thermometer shall be so located that it shall at all times indicate the temperature of the water in the water heater at or near the outlet.

[SEC IV PT HLW A-8] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:17 2003)

July 1, 1998
American Society Of Mechanical Engineers
SEC IV MA APP 1
APPENDIX 1 - MANDATORY PREPARATION OF TECHNICAL INQUIRIES TO THE BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL COMMITTEE

APPENDICIES

1-100 INTRODUCTION

The ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee meets regularly to consider written requests for interpretations and revisions to the Code rules, and to develop new rules as dictated by technological development. The Committee's activities in this regard are limited strictly to interpretations of the rules or to the consideration of revisions to the present rules on the basis of new data or technology. As a matter of published policy, ASME does not approve, certify, rate, or endorse any item, construction, proprietary device, or activity, and, accordingly, inquiries requiring such consideration will be returned. Moreover, ASME does not act as a consultant on specific engineering problems or on the general application or understanding of the Code rules. If, based on the inquiry information submitted, it is the opinion of the Committee that the inquirer should seek assistance, the inquiry will be returned with the recommendation that such assistance be obtained.

All inquiries that do not provide the information needed for the Committee's full understanding will be returned.

1-200 INQUIRY FORMAT

Inquiries shall be limited strictly to interpretations of the rules or to the consideration of revisions to the present rules on the basis of new data or technology. Inquiries shall be submitted in the following format.

(a) Scope. Involve a single rule or closely related rules. An inquiry letter concerning unrelated subjects will be returned.

(b) Background. State the purpose of the inquiry, which would be either to obtain an interpretation of Code rules, or to propose consideration of a revision to the present rules. Provide concisely the information needed for the Committee's understanding of the inquiry, being sure to include reference to the applicable Code Section, Division, Edition, addenda, paragraphs, figures, and tables. If sketches are provided, they shall be limited to the scope of the inquiry.

(c) Inquiry Structure. Prepare statements in a condensed and precise question format, omitting superfluous background information, and, where appropriate, composed in such a way that "yes" or "no" (perhaps with provisos) would be an acceptable reply. This inquiry statement should be technically and editorially correct.

(d) Proposed Reply. State what it is believed that the Code requires. If in the inquirer's opinion a revision to the Code is needed, recommended wording shall be provided.

1-300 SUBMITTAL

Inquiries shall preferably be submitted in typewritten form; however, legible handwritten inquiries will also be considered. They shall include the name and mailing address of the inquirer, and be mailed to the following address:

Secretary
ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee
Three Park Avenue
New York, NY 10016

2-100 REFERENCE STANDARDS

Specific editions of standards incorporated in this Code are shown in Table 2-100. It is not practical to refer to a specific edition of each standard throughout the Code text, so edition references are centralized here. Table 2-100 will be revised at intervals and reissued as needed.

[98]
2-200ORGANIZATIONS

Listed below are abbreviations and addresses of specific organizations referred to in this Code.

AGA

American Gas Association
1515 Wilson Boulevard
Arlington, VA 22209

American Gas Association
Laboratories
8501 East Pleasant Valley Road
Cleveland, OH 44131

ANSI

American National Standards Institute
11 West 42nd Street
New York, NY 10036

ASHRAE

American Society of Heating,
Refrigerating and Air
Conditioning Engineers
1791 Tullie Circle, NE
Atlanta, GA 30329

CGA

Canadian Gas Association
55 Scarsdale Road
Don Mills, Ontario, Canada
M3B 2R3

NFPA

National Fire Protection Association
International
1 Batterymarch Park
Quincy, MA 02269

NSFI

National Sanitation Foundation
International
3475 Plymouth Road
Ann Arbor, MI 48105

UL

Underwriters Laboratories, Inc.
333 Pfingsten Road
Northbrook, IL 60062
[98]

TABLE 2-100
CODES, STANDARDS, AND SPECIFICATIONS REFERENCED IN TEXT

American National Standards

B16.1-1989	Cast Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings
B16.5-1988	Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings
B16.9-1986	Factory-Made Wrought Steel Buttwelding Fittings
B16.11-1991	Forged Fittings, Socket Welding and Threaded
B16.15-1985	Cast Bronze Threaded Fittings
B16.24-1991	Cast Copper Alloy Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings
B16.28-1986	Wrought Steel Buttwelding Short Radius Elbows and Returns
B16.42-1987	Ductile Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings

ASME Performance Test Code

PTC 25-1994	Pressure Relief Devices

National Sanitation Foundation International (NSFI) Standard

ANSI/NSFI 14-1990	Plastic Piping Components and Related Materials

Underwriters Laboratories Standard for Safety

UL 969-1989	Marking and Labeling Systems

GENERAL NOTE: The issue date, shown immediately following the hyphen after the number of the standard, is the effective date of issue (edition) of the standard.

[SEC IV MA APP 2] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:18 2003)

APPENDIX 3 - MANDATORY ADHESIVE ATTACHMENT OF NAMEPLATES TO CASING

3-100 SCOPE

The rules in Appendix 3 cover minimum requirements for nameplates and for the use of adhesive systems for the attachment of nameplates to casing, limited to:

(a) the use of pressure-sensitive acrylic adhesives preapplied by the nameplate manufacturer and protected with a moisture stable release liner;

(b) use of the preapplied adhesive within 2 years of its application;

(c) use of an application procedure qualified as outlined in 3-101.

3-101 NAMEPLATE APPLICATION PROCEDURE QUALIFICATION

(a) Each nameplate manufacturer's construction shall be qualified in accordance with ANSI/UL 969, Marking and Labeling Systems, for a surface temperature rating greater than that achieved on the surface of the casing in the area where the nameplate is applied during operation. The exposure conditions shall be for high humidity or occasional exposure to water. In addition if the boiler or water heater is designed and marked for outdoor installation, indoor-outdoor qualification shall be obtained with a cold box temperature of -40°F (-40°C).

(b) Each lot or package of nameplates shall be marked with the adhesive application date.

(c) The manufacturer's quality control system shall define that written procedures, acceptable to the Authorized Inspector (or ASME Designee for cast iron boilers), for the application of adhesive backed nameplates shall be prepared and qualified. The application procedure qualification shall include the following essential variables:

(1) each nameplate manufacturer's material and construction, including thickness range, UL File No., and rated substrate temperature(s) and finish;

(2) the maximum temperature achieved on the surface of the casing in the area at which the nameplate is applied;

(3) cleaning requirements for the casing surface;

(4) application temperature range and pressure technique.

APPENDIX 4 - MANDATORY ALTERNATIVE SPECIFICATION FOR PLATES AND BARS IN LIEU OF SA-36 FOR FLAT PLATES AND BARS

[SEC IV MA APP 4] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:18 2003)

4-100 INTRODUCTION

Structural quality steels, Canadian Standard Association Specification CSA G40.21-1976, Grades 38W and 44W, Plates and Bars, not exceeding $^{3}/_{4}$ in. (19 mm) may be used in lieu of SA-36 in the construction of Section IV hot water boiler components.

4-101 SPECIFICATION

4-101.1

This specification covers structural quality steel plates, shapes, and bars for general construction and engineering purposes.

4-101.2

A number of strength levels are available under this specification and are designated by the minimum yield strength in ksi. The purchser must specify the grade and, if applicable, the category.

4-101.3

The types of steel covered by this specification are the following:

(a) Type W - Weldable Steels. Steels of this type meet specified strength requirements and are suitable for general welded construction where notch toughness at low temperatures is not a design requirement.

4-101.4

See Table 4-100 for chemical composition and Table 4-101 for mechanical properties.

4-102 MARKING

The material shall be marked with the CSA designation and grade, and heat number. A mill test report shall be supplied satisfying the requirements of the CSA G40.21-1976 specification and shall be in U.S. customary units.

[SEC IV MA APP 4] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:19 2003)

TABLE 4-100
CHEMICAL COMPOSITION HEAT ANALYSIS, PLATES AND BARS

Element	Composition Limit, %
Carbon, max.	0.22
Manganese	0.50–1.50
Phosphorus, max.	0.04
Sulfur, max.	0.05
Silicon, max.	0.40

TABLE 4-100 CHEMICAL COMPOSITION HEAT ANALYSIS, PLATES AND BARS

[SEC IV MA APP 4] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:19 2003)

TABLE 4-101
MECHANICAL PROPERTIES, PLATES AND BARS

Tensile strength	
min., psi	60,000
max., psi	90,000
Yield strength	
min., psi for Grade 38W	38,000
min., psi for Grade 44W	44,000
Elongation in 2 in., min., %	23
Elongation in 8 in., min., %	20

TABLE 4-101 MECHANICAL PROPERTIES, PLATES AND BARS

4-103 MANUFACTURE

4-103.1

The steel shall be made by any of the following processes:

(a) basic open hearth;

(b) basic electric furnace; or

(c) basic oxygen furnace.

4-103.2

When specified by the purchaser, plates provided from coils shall not be supplied under this specification.

4-104 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

[SEC IV MA APP 4] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:19 2003)

4-104.1

The steel shall meet the requirements of ASME SA-6.

4-200 MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS

(a) The maximum allowable stress for this C-Mn-Si material shall be the same as that allowable for SA-36 of Table HF-300.1 , Maximum Allowable Stress Value of 11.6 ksi (80 MPa).

(b) The material shall be considered to be P-No. 1, Group 1.

Section IV Rules permit a boiler to operate with internal pressure or with a vacuum. Rules in this Appendix cover the minimum requirements for the design, fabrication, and inspection of a boiler for vacuum operation only. Exemptions from certain Section IV requirements are provided. All other requirements of Section IV shall be met.

5-200 MAXIMUM PRESSURE AND TEMPERATURE

(a) Maximum Allowable Working Pressure. The boiler shall be designed for 15 psi vacuum (103 kPa vacuum) [0 psi (0 kPa)]. This value shall be used in all calculations, in lieu of the requirements of HG-300(a).

(b) Maximum temperature shall not exceed 210°F (99°C).

5-300 DESIGN PARAMETERS

(a) The thickness of cylindrical shells under external pressure shall be calculated in accordance with HG-312, except that, when boilers are designed for noncorrosive service at a maximum pressure difference between outside and inside of 15 psi (103 kPa), the thickness shall be not less than $^1/_8$ in. (3.2 mm).

(b) Rectangular boilers under external pressure shall have thicknesses calculated in accordance with Appendix 13-8 and 13-9 of Section VIII, Division 1. For noncorrosive service only, the thickness shall be not less than $^1/_8$ in. (3.2 mm).

(c) Stays in compression shall meet the requirements of the following:

$$l/r \leq 50$$

where

l = length

r = radius of gyration

(d) The furnace thickness shall be calculated in accordance with HG-301, using 15 psi (103 kPa) design pressure. For noncorrosive service only, the thickness shall be not less than $^1/_8$ in. (3.2 mm).

(e) Head thickness shall be calculated in accordance with HG-305, HG-306, or HG-307, using 15 psi (103 kPa) design pressure, except that, when boilers are designed for noncorrosive service at a maximum pressure difference between outside and inside of 15 psi (103 kPa), the thickness shall be not less than $^1/_8$ in. (3.2 mm).

(f) Tube thickness shall be calculated in accordance with HG-315.

(g) As an alternative to the calculations in items (a) through (f), the vessel may be:

[SEC IV MA APP 5] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:19 2003)

(1) designed and constructed to Code requirements for an internal pressure of 30 psig (207 kPa) using the proof test requirements of HG-501 or HG-502. However, no external pressure rating may be shown with the Code stamping unless Code requirements for external pressure are met (see HG-503).

(2) designed and constructed as a vacuum vessel for an external pressure of 15 psia (103 kPa) using the proof test requirements of HG-503.

5-400 WELDING

(a) Joint Efficiency. No factor has to be used for parts designed for external pressure ($\Sigma = 1$). For the furnace joint, efficiencies shall be in accordance with HW-702.

(b) Corner or tee joints shall be in accordance with HW-701.3.

(c) Attachment welds shall be in accordance with HW-731.

(d) Welding Qualifications shall be in accordance with ASME Section IX.

5-500 ALTERNATIVE TO HYDROTEST

A helium leak test, conducted at the maximum vacuum to which the boiler will be exposed, may be used in lieu of the hydrostatic test requirements specified in HG-510. This test shall be witnessed by the authorized inspector. The test shall be conducted in accordance with Section V, Article 10, Appendix IV or V. Maximum acceptable leakage rate shall be:

Appendix IV - Detector Probe	1×10^{-4} std cm^3/sec
Appendix V - Tracer Probe	1×10^{-5} std cm^3/sec
Appendix V - Hood	1×10^{-6} std cm^3/sec

5-600 INSTRUMENTS, FITTINGS, AND CONTROLS

Vacuum boilers shall be provided with instruments, fittings, and controls in accordance with Articles 6 and 7 of Part HG, but they are exempt from the following requirements if pressure and temperature controls are provided as described in (a), (b), and (c) below:

HG-603	Gauge Glass
HG-604	Water Column
HG-605	Pressure Control (second control only)
HG-606	Low Water Cut-Off
HG-703.2	Return Pipe Connection
HG-705	Feedwater Connection
HG-715	Blowoff and Drain Valves

These exemptions are applicable only when the following devices are installed:

(a) Pressure Control. A pressure control which interrupts the burner operation in response to boiler pressure, and is set at 2.5 psig vacuum (12.2 psia) (17.2 kPa).

(b) Temperature Control. Two temperature controls responsive to boiler temperature which can interrupt burner operation, one shall operate at a temperature below 210°F (99°C), and the other shall prevent the temperature from exceeding 210°F (99°C) with no automatic recycle. The use of a fusible plug to perform the second of these two functions is permissible.

(c) Safety Valve. A safety valve without a test lever, set at 7.1 psig (22 psia) (49 kPa) maximum pressure and sized in accordance with HG-400.

5-700 INSPECTION OPENINGS

Heat exchanger coil openings may be used to satisfy the requirements for inspection and access.

[SEC IV MA APP 5] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:19 2003)

A-100 CODE POLICY

(a) It is the policy of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee to adopt for inclusion in Section II, Parts A and B, only such specifications as have been adopted by the American Society for Testing and Materials, and in Section II, Part C, only such specifications as have been adopted by the American Welding Society.

(b) It is expected that requests for Code approval will normally be for materials for which there is an ASTM or AWS specification. For materials made to a recognized national or international specification other than those of ASTM or AWS, the inquirer shall notify the standards-developing organization that a request has been made to ASME for adoption of their specification under the ASME Code. For other materials, a request shall be made to ASTM or AWS to develop a specification that can be presented to the Code Committee.

(c) It is the policy of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee to consider requests to adopt new materials only from boiler, pressure vessel, or nuclear power plant component Manufacturers or end users. Further, such requests should be for materials for which there is a reasonable expectation of use in a boiler, pressure vessel, or nuclear power plant component constructed to the rules of one of the Sections of this Code.

A-101 APPLICATION

(a) The inquirer shall identify to the Committee the Section or Sections and Divisions of the Code in which the new material is to be incorporated, the temperature range of application, whether cyclic service is to be considered, and whether external pressure service is to be considered. The inquirer shall identify all product forms, size ranges, and specifications for which incorporation is desired.

(b) The inquirer shall state whether or not the material is covered by patents, whether or not it is licensed, and if licensed, any limitations on its manufacture.

A-102 MECHANICAL PROPERTIES

(a) Together with the specification for the material, the inquirer shall furnish the Committee with adequate data on which to base design values for inclusion in the applicable tables. The data shall include values of ultimate tensile strength, yield strength, reduction of area, and elongation, at 100°F (56°C) intervals, from room temperature to 100°F (56°C) above the maximum intended use temperature, unless the maximum intended use temperature does not exceed 100°F (38°C). If adoption is desired at temperatures at which time-dependent behavior may be expected to control design values, data on these time-independent properties shall be provided to a temperature 100°F (56°C) above the temperature at which time-dependent behavior becomes significant. Any heat treatment that is required to produce the tensile properties should be fully described.

(b) If coverage is desired at temperatures at which time-dependent behavior may be expected, creep rate and creep rupture strength data of base metal and appropriate weld metals and weldments shall also be provided, at 100°F (56°C) intervals to 100°F (56°C) above the maximum intended use temperature.

(c) If adoption at temperatures below room temperature is requested, and if it is desired to take design advantage of increased strength at lower temperatures, data on the time-independent properties shall be provided at 100°F (56°C) intervals to and including the lowest intended use temperature.

(d) Notch toughness data shall be provided for materials for which Code toughness rules would be expected

[SEC IV NMA APP A] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:20 2003)

to apply. The data shall include test results for the intended lowest service metal temperature and for the range of material thicknesses desired. For welded construction, the notch toughness data shall include the results of Code toughness tests for weld metal and heat-affected zone for weldments made by the intended welding processes.

(e) If the material is to be used in components that operate under external pressure, stress-strain curves (tension or compression) shall be furnished, at 100°F (56°C) intervals over the range of design temperatures desired. External pressure charts are based on the early portion (up to 1% strain) of the stress-strain curve. The stress-strain curve (not load versus extension) shall be determined using a Class B-2 or better accuracy extensometer as defined in ASTM E 83. Numerical data, when available, should be submitted. The data should include the original cross-sectional area of the test specimen and stress-strain curves with units marked on them.

(f) If the material is to be used in cyclic service and the construction Code in which adoption is desired requires explicit consideration of cyclic behavior, fatigue data shall also be furnished over the range of design temperatures desired.

(g) In general, for all mechanical properties, data shall be provided from at least three heats of material meeting all of the requirements of a specification for at least one product form for which adoption is desired, for each test at each test temperature. When adoption for both cast and wrought product forms is desired, data from at least three heats each of a wrought and of a cast product form shall be submitted. It is desired that the data represent all product forms for which adoption is desired. For product forms for which the properties may be size dependent, data from products of different sizes, including the largest size for which adoption is desired, shall be provided.

(h) Test methods employed shall be those referenced in or by the material specifications, or shall be appropriate ASTM test methods or recommended practices for the properties tested.

(i) Information describing service experience in the temperature range contemplated will be useful to the Committee.

A-103 OTHER PROPERTIES

The inquirer shall furnish to the Committee adequate data necessary to establish values for coefficient of thermal expansion, thermal conductivity and diffusivity, Young's modulus, shear modulus, and Poisson's ratio, when the construction Code in which adoption is desired requires explicit consideration of these properties. Data shall be provided over the range of temperatures for which the material is to be used.

A-104 WELDABILITY

The inquirer shall furnish complete data on the weldability of material intended for welding, including data on procedure qualification tests made in accordance with the requirements of Section IX. Welding tests shall be made over the full range of thickness in which the material is to be used. Pertinent information, such as postweld heat treatment required, susceptibility to air hardening, effect of welding procedure and heat-affected zone and weld metal notch toughness, and the amount of experience in welding the material shall be given.

A-105 PHYSICAL CHANGES

For new materials, it is important to know the structural stability characteristics and the degree of retention of properties with exposure at temperature. The influence of fabrication practices, such as forming, welding, and thermal treatment, on the mechanical properties, ductility, and microstructure of the material are important, particularly where degradation in properties may occur. Where particular temperature ranges of exposure or heat treatment, cooling rates, combinations of mechanical working and thermal treatments, fabrication practices, exposure to particular environments, etc., cause significant changes in the mechanical properties, microstructure, resistance to brittle fracture, etc., it is of prime importance to call attention to those conditions that should be avoided in service or in manufacture of parts or vessels from the material.

A-106 REQUESTS FOR ADDITIONAL DATA

The Committee may request additional data, including data on properties or material behavior not explicitly treated in the construction Code in which adoption is desired.

A-107 CODE CASE

[SEC IV NMA APP A] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:20 2003)

permitting the use of a new material, provided that the following conditions are met:

(a) the inquirer provides evidence that a request for coverage of the material in a specification has been made to ASTM;

(b) the material is commercially available and can be purchased within the proposed specification requirements;

(c) the inquirer shows that there will be a reasonable demand for the material by industry and that there exists an urgency for approval by means of a Code Case;

(d) the requests for approval of the material shall clearly describe it in ASTM specification form, including such items as scope, process, manufacture, conditions for delivery, heat treatment, chemical and tensile requirements, forming properties, testing specifications and requirements, workmanship, finish, marking, inspection, and rejection;

(e) all other requirements identified previously under Code Policy and Application apply; and

(f) the inquirer shall furnish the Code Committee with all the data specified in this Appendix.

July 1, 1998
American Society Of Mechanical Engineers
SEC IV NMA APP B
APPENDIX B METHOD OF CHECKING SAFETY VALVE AND SAFETY RELIEF VALVE CAPACITY BY MEASURING MAXIMUM AMOUNT OF FUEL THAT CAN BE BURNED

B-100 PROCEDURE

The maximum quantity of fuel *C* that can be burned per hour at the time of maximum forcing is determined by a test. The maximum number of heat units per hour, or *CH*, is then determined, using the values of *H* given in B-102. The weight of steam generated per hour is found by the formula:

$$W = \frac{C \times H \times 0.75}{1000}$$

where

W = weight of steam generated/hr, lb

C

[SEC IV NMA APP B] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:20 2003)

C	= total weight or volume of fuel burned/hr at time of maximum forcing, lb or cu ft
H	= heat of combustion of fuel, Btu/lb or Btu/cu ft (see B-102)

The sum of the safety valve capacities marked on the valves shall be equal to or greater than W.

B-101 EXAMPLES

Example 1. A boiler at the time of maximum forcing uses 2150 lb of Illinois coal/hr of 12,100 Btu/lb.

$$C \times H = 2150 \times 12{,}100 = 26{,}015{,}000$$

$$W = (C \times H \times 0.75) \div 1000 = 19{,}511$$

Example 2. Wood shavings of heat of combustion of 6400 Btu/lb are burned under a boiler at the maximum rate of 2000 lb/hr.

$$C \times H = 2000 \times 6400 = 12{,}800{,}000$$

$$W = (C \times H \times 0.75) \div 1000 = 9600$$

Example 3. An oil-fired boiler at maximum forcing uses 1000 lb of crude oil (Texas)/hr.

$$C \times H = 1000 \times 18{,}500 = 18{,}500{,}000$$

$$W = (C \times H \times 0.75) \div 1000 = 13{,}875$$

Example 4. A boiler fired with natural gas consumes 3000 cu ft/hr.

$$C \times H = 3000 \times 960 = 2{,}880{,}000$$

$$W = (C \times H \times 0.75) \div 1000 = 2160$$

B-102 HEATS OF COMBUSTION OF FUELS

For the purpose of checking the safety valve capacity as described in B-100, the following values of heats of combustion of various fuels may be used:

	H **= Btu/lb**
Semibituminous coal.....	14,500
Anthracite.....	13,700
Screenings.....	12,500
Coke.....	13,500
Wood, hard or soft, kiln dried.....	7,700
Wood, hard or soft, air dried.....	6,200
Wood shavings.....	6,400

	H **= Btu/lb**
Peat, air dried, 25% moisture.....	7,500
Lignite.....	10,000
Kerosene.....	20,000
Petroleum, crude oil, Pennsylvania.....	20,700
Petroleum, crude oil, Texas.....	18,500

[SEC IV NMA APP B] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:20 2003)

	H **= Btu/cu ft**
Natural gas.....	960
Blast-furnace gas.....	100
Producer gas.....	150
Water gas, uncarbureted.....	290

C-100 FOR A STEAM OR HOT WATER BOILER

(a) Design Data [HG-300(a)]. 30 psi pressure (250°F); 36 in. (D_o) O.D.; 15 in. (L) center-to-center distance of reinforcing rings.

Use formulas from HG-312 where

t	= wall thickness of furnace, in.
L	= center-to-center distance between two adjacent stiffening rings, in.
D_o	= outside diameter of furnace, in.
P	= design pressure, psi (30 psi min.) (per HG-300)
T_r	= thickness of stiffening ring, in.
H_r	= height of stiffening ring, in.

(b) Selection of t and L (First Trial). Assume

$t = {}^1/_4$ in. and L = 15 in.

L/D_o = 15/36 = 0.417, D_o/t = 36/0.25 = 144

Temperature: 500°F [see HG-312.3(f)]

Factor B = 12,000 (from Fig. HG-312.2)

[SEC IV NMA APP C] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:21 2003)

$$P_a = \frac{B}{D_o / t} = \frac{12{,}000}{144} = 83 \text{ psi}$$

(c) Selection of T_r and H_r (First Trial) [HG-312.3(b)]. Assume

$$T_r = {}^5/_{16} \text{ in. and } H_r = 1.5 \text{ in.}$$

$$I = \frac{0.3125 \times 1.5^3}{12} = 0.0879 \text{ in.}^4$$

$$A_s = 0.3125 \times 1.5 = 0.469 \text{ sq in.}$$

(d) Determination of I_s (First Trial)

[SEC IV NMA APP C] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:21 2003)

$$\text{Factor } B = \frac{PD_o}{t + \frac{A_s}{L}} = \frac{30 \times 36}{0.25 + \frac{0.469}{15}} = 3840$$

From Fig. HG-312.2,

$$\text{Factor } A = 0.00028$$

$$I_s = \frac{D_o^2 L \left(t + \frac{A_s}{L}\right) A}{14}$$

$$= \frac{36^2 \times 15 \left(0.25 + \frac{0.469}{15}\right) 0.00028}{14}$$

$$= 0.109 \text{ in.}^4$$

[SEC IV NMA APP C] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:21 2003)

Since I_s is greater than I (0.0879 in.^{4}), the assumed reinforcing ring is not acceptable. (A ring with a greater I must be selected or L must be reduced.)

(e) Selection of T_r and H_r (Second Trial). Assume

$$T_r = 0.3125 \text{ in., } H_r = 2.5 \text{ in., and } L = 15 \text{ in.}$$

$$\frac{H_r}{T_r} = \frac{2.5}{0.3125} = 8.0$$

$$I = \frac{0.3125 \times 2.5^3}{12} = 0.407 \text{ in.}^4$$

$$A_s = 0.3125 \times 2.5 = 0.781 \text{ sq in.}$$

(f) Determination of I_s (Second Trial)

[SEC IV NMA APP C] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:21 2003)

$$\text{Factor } B = \frac{30 \times 36}{0.25 + \dfrac{0.781}{15}} = 3575$$

From Fig. HG-312.2,

$$\text{Factor } A = 0.00026$$

$$I_s = \frac{36^2 \times 15 \left(0.25 + \dfrac{0.781}{15}\right) 0.00026}{14}$$

$$= 0.109 \text{ in.}^4$$

Since I (0.407 in.^{4}) is greater than I_s, the assumed reinforcing ring is acceptable.

[SEC IV NMA APP C] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:21 2003)

C-101 FOR A HOT WATER BOILER

(a) Design Data. 100 psi working pressure (250°F); 30 in. (D_o) O.D.; 30 in. (L) center-to-center distance of reinforcing rings.

Use formulas from HG-312 and same notation as in C-100(a).

(b) Selection of t and L (First Trial). Assume

$t = {}^1/_2$ in. and $L = 30$ in.

$L/D_o = 30/30 = 1$ and $D_o/t = 30/0.500 = 60$

Temperature: 500°F [see HG-312.3(f)]

Factor $B = 12{,}300$ (from Fig. HG-312.2)

$$P_a = \frac{B}{D_o/t} = \frac{12{,}300}{60} = 205 \text{ psi}$$

(c) Selection of T_r and H_r (First Trial). Assume

$$T_r = \tfrac{3}{8} \text{ in. and } H_r = 2.25 \text{ in.}$$

$$I = \frac{0.375 \times 2.25^3}{12} = 0.356 \text{ in.}^4$$

$$A_s = 0.375 \times 2.25 = 0.843 \text{ sq in.}$$

(d) Determination of I_s (First Trial)

[SEC IV NMA APP C] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:22 2003)

$$\text{Factor } B = \frac{PD_o}{t + \frac{A_s}{L}}$$

$$= \frac{100 \times 30}{0.500 + \frac{0.843}{30}}$$

$$= 5681$$

From Fig. HG-312.2,

[SEC IV NMA APP C] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:22 2003)

$$\text{Factor } A = 0.00042$$

$$I_s = \frac{D_o^2 L \left(t + \frac{A_s}{L}\right) A}{14}$$

$$= \frac{30^2 \times 30 \left(0.50 + \frac{0.843}{30}\right)(0.00042)}{14}$$

$$= 0.428 \text{ in.}^4$$

Since I_s is greater than I (0.356 in.^{4}), the assumed reinforcing ring is not acceptable. (A ring with a greater I must be selected or L must be reduced.)

(e) Selection of L (Second Trial). Assume

[SEC IV NMA APP C] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:22 2003)

$$L = 22 \text{ in.}, T_r = \tfrac{3}{8} \text{ in., and } H = 2.25 \text{ in.}$$

$$\frac{H_r}{T_r} = \frac{2.25}{0.375} = 6.0$$

$$L/D_o = \frac{22}{30} = 0.734$$

$$D_o/t = \frac{30}{0.500} = 60$$

(f) Determination of I_s (Second Trial). From Fig. HG-312.2,

[SEC IV NMA APP C] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:22 2003)

$$\text{Factor } B = 13{,}250$$

$$P_a = 13{,}250/60 = 221 \text{ psi}$$

$$I = 0.356 \text{ in.}^4 \text{ (as above)}$$

$$A_s = 0.843 \text{ in.}^2 \text{ (as above)}$$

$$\text{Factor } B = \frac{100 \times 30}{0.500 + \dfrac{0.843}{22}} = 5573$$

From Fig. HG-312.2,

[SEC IV NMA APP C] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:22 2003)

$$\text{Factor } A = 0.00041$$

$$I_s = \frac{30^2 \times 22\ (0.500 + 0.843/22)\ 0.00041}{14}$$

$$= 0.312 \text{ in.}^4$$

Since I_s is less than I (0.356 in.^{4}), the assumed reinforcing ring is acceptable.

D-100 PAD REINFORCED OPENING

(a) Design Data. A boiler shell has a 6 in. connection as shown in Fig. D-100. The shell has an inside diameter of 60 in., a thickness of $^9/_{16}$ in. and a working pressure of 160 psi. The shell and pad material are in accordance with SA-285 Grade C.

(b) Wall Thickness Required (See HG-301)

[SEC IV NMA APP D] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:22 2003)

$$t_r = \frac{P \times R}{S \times E - 0.6P}$$

$$= \frac{160 \times 30}{11{,}000 \times 1.0 - 0.6 \times 160} = 0.440 \text{ in.}$$

(c) Size of Welds Required (See HW-731)

$$\text{Inner fillet weld} = 1.41 \times 0.7 \times t_r = w_1$$

$$w_1 = 1.41 \times 0.7 \times 0.440 = 0.434 \text{ in.}$$

$$\text{Outer fillet weld} = 1.41 \times 0.5 \times t_r = w_2$$

$$w_2 = 1.41 \times 0.5 \times 0.440 = 0.310 \text{ in.}$$

A $^1/_2$ in. inner fillet weld and a $^7/_{16}$ in. outer fillet weld meet these minimum requirements.

(d) Area of Reinforcement Required (See HG-321)

$$A = d \times t_r \times F$$
$$= 7.50 \times 0.440 \times 1.0 = 3.300 \text{ sq in.}$$

(e) Area of Reinforcement Provided (See HG-326)

$$A_1 = (E_1 t - F t_r) d$$
$$(1.0 \times 0.563 - 1.0 \times 0.440)\ 7.5 = 0.922 \text{ sq in.}$$

$$A_2 = t_e (d_p - d_o)$$
$$= 0.437(12.50 - 6.00) = 2.841 \text{ sq in.}$$

$$A_3 = 2 \times {}^1/_2 \times w_1^2 + 2 \times {}^1/_2 \times w_2^2$$
$$= 2 \times {}^1/_2 \times 0.500^2 + 2 \times {}^1/_2 \times 0.437^2$$

[SEC IV NMA APP D] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:23 2003)

$$\text{Total area provided} = \frac{0.441 \text{ sq in.}}{4.204 \text{ sq in.}}$$

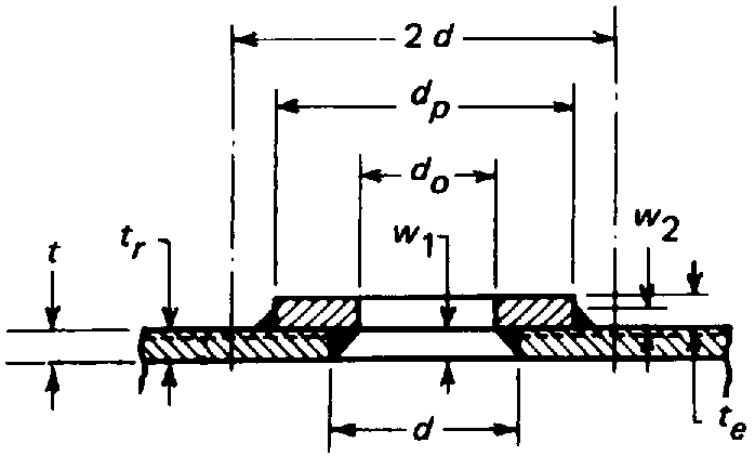


FIG. D-100 COMPUTATION OF TYPICAL PAD REINFORCEMENT

[SEC IV NMA APP D] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:23 2003)

FIG. D-100 COMPUTATION OF TYPICAL PAD REINFORCEMENT

(f) Load to Be Carried by Welds (See HG-327.2)

$$W = (d \times t_r - A_1) \times S$$
$$= (7.50 \times 0.440 - 0.922) \times 11{,}000 = 26{,}160 \text{ lb}$$

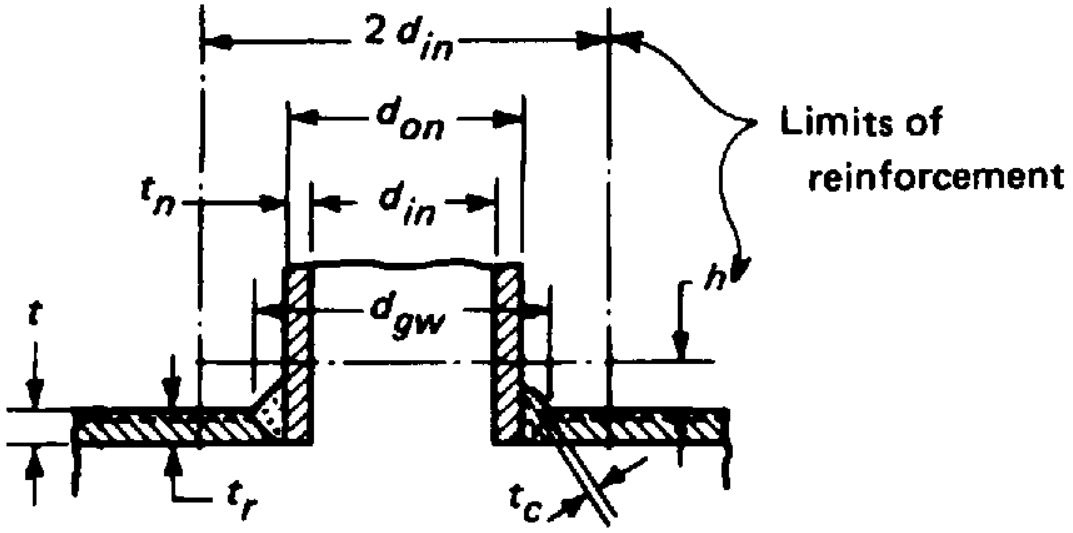


FIG. D-101 COMPUTATION OF A TYPICAL NOZZLE FITTING

FIG. D-101 COMPUTATION OF A TYPICAL NOZZLE FITTING

(g) Unit Stresses (*See HW-730.2*)

Shear in fillet weld = 0.49 × 11,000
= 5390 psi = S_s

(h) Strength of Connection Elements

(1) Inner Weld w_1 in Shear

[SEC IV NMA APP D] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:23 2003)

$$\frac{\pi}{2} d \times w_1 \times S_s = 1.57 \times 7.50 \times 0.500 \times 5390$$

$$= 31{,}750 \text{ lb}$$

(2) Outer Weld w_2 in Shear

$$\frac{\pi}{2} d_p \times w_2 \times S_s = 1.57 \times 12.50 \times 0.437 \times 5390$$

$$= 46{,}200 \text{ lb}$$

D-101 NOZZLE REINFORCED OPENING

(a) Design Data. A 4 in. SA-53 schedule 80 pipe is welded into a shell as shown in Fig. D-101. The shell has an inside diameter of 36 in., a thickness of $^{7}/_{16}$ in., and a working pressure of 160 psi. The shell material is in accordance with SA-285 Grade C.

(b) Wall Thickness Required (See HG-301)

[SEC IV NMA APP D] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:23 2003)

$$t_r = \frac{PR}{SE - 0.6P}$$

$$= \frac{160 \times 18}{11{,}000 \times 1.0 - 0.6 \times 160} = 0.264 \text{ in.}$$

(c) Nozzle Thickness Required

$$t_{r\,n} = \frac{PR}{SE - 0.6P}$$

$$= \frac{160 \times 1.913}{9600 \times 1.0 - 0.6 \times 160} = 0.032 \text{ in.}$$

(d) Size Weld Required (See HW-731)

$$t_c = t_{\min} \times 0.7$$
$$= 0.337 \times 0.7 = 0.236 \text{ in.}$$

(e) Area of Reinforcement Required (See HG-321)

[SEC IV NMA APP D] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:23 2003)

$$A = dt_r F + 2t_n t_r F \left(1 - \frac{S_n}{S_v}\right)$$

$$= 3.826 \times 0.264 \times 1.0$$

$$+ 2\ (0.337)(0.264)(1.0) \left(1 - \frac{9600}{11{,}000}\right)$$

$$= 1.033 \text{ sq in.}$$

(f) Area of Reinforcement Provided (See HG-326)

$$A_1 = (E_1 t - F t_r) d - 2t_n\ (Et - Ft_r) \left(1 - \frac{S_n}{S_v}\right)$$

$$= (1.0 \times 0.438 - 1.0 \times 0.264)\ 3.826$$

$$- 2.0 \times 0.337\ (1.0 \times 0.438 - 1.0 \times 0.264)(0.127)$$

$$= 0.651 \text{ sq in.}$$

[SEC IV NMA APP D] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:24 2003)

$$A_2 = (t_n - t_{r\,n})\,(5t_n + 2t_e)\left(\frac{S_n}{S_v}\right)$$

$$= (0.337 - 0.032)\,(5.0 \times 0.337 + 2.0 \times 0)(0.873)$$

$$= 0.449 \text{ sq in.}$$

$A_3 = \text{leg}^2$
$= 0.337 \times 0.337 = 0.114$ sq in.

A^T = total reinforcement = 1.214 sq in.

$A^T > A$ (opening is reinforced)

(g) Load to Be Carried by the Welds (See HG-327.2)

$W = [(d_{on} \times t_r) - (2d_{in} - d_{on})(t - t_r)]\,S(\text{shell})$
$= [(4.50 \times 0.264) - (2.0 \times 3.826 - 4.50)$
$\times (0.437 - 0.264)]\,11{,}000$
$= 7035$ lb

(h) Unit Stresses (See HW-730.2)

Shear in fillet weld = $0.49 \times 11{,}000$
$= 5390$ psi $= S_t$

Tension in groove weld = $0.74 \times 11{,}000$
$= 8140$ psi $= S_t$

Shear in nozzle wall = $0.70 \times 11{,}000$
$= 7700$ psi $= S_n$

(i) Strength of Connection Elements (See HW-730.1)

(1) Fillet Weld in Shear

[SEC IV NMA APP D] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:24 2003)

$$\frac{\pi}{2} \times d_{on} \times \text{weld leg} \times S_s = 1.57 \times 4.5 \times 0.337 \times 5390$$

$$= 12{,}833 \text{ lb}$$

(2) Groove Weld in Tension

$$\frac{\pi}{2} \times d_{on} \times t \times S_t = 1.57 \times 4.5 \times 0.437 \times 8140$$

$$= 25{,}100 \text{ lb}$$

(3) Nozzle Wall Shear

[SEC IV NMA APP D] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:24 2003)

$$\frac{\pi}{2} \times \text{mean nozzle diam.} \times t_n \times S_n$$

$$= 1.571 \times 4.163 \times 0.337 \times 7700$$

$$= 16{,}971 \text{ lb}$$

Possible paths of failure are:

(a) through (1) and (2) above with a strength of 37,933 lb;

(b) through (1) and (3) above with a strength of 29,804 lb.

Both paths are stronger than the required strength of 7035 lb.

[98]
E-100 TERMS RELATING TO DESIGN

Action, Popping, or Pop - The action of a safety or safety relief valve when it opens under steam pressure. The disk of the valve is designed so that the force of the steam lifting the disk is increased when the disk is lifted slightly off its seat. The increase in force accelerates the rising action of the disk to the wide open position at or near the opening pressure.

Blowdown - The difference between the opening and closing pressures of a safety or safety relief valve.

Boiler, Automatically Fired - A boiler equipped with a means of introducing heat or of causing fuel, whether solid, liquid, gaseous, or electric, to be introduced into the boiler or boiler furnace, the means being so regulated by the rate of flow, the generating pressure, or temperature of the boiler fluid or of a vessel or space being heated as to maintain a determined, desired condition within a designated tolerance.

[SEC IV NMA APP E] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:24 2003)

Boiler, Electric, Resistance Heating Element Type - Electric boilers of the resistance heating element type are either:

(a) of a design where the electric resistance element is directly attached to the external surface of the pressure vessel; or

(b) an immersed type where the electric resistance element is inserted through an opening in the pressure vessel so that the element is in direct contact with the water.

Boiler, Horizontal-Return Tubular - A firetube boiler consisting of a cylindrical shell, with tubes inside the shell attached to both end closures. The products of combustion pass under the bottom half of the shell and return through the tubes.

Boiler, Hot Water Heating - A boiler designed to heat water for circulation through an external space heating system.

Boiler, Hot Water Supply - A boiler used to heat water for purposes other than space heating.

Boiler, Modular - A steam or hot water heating assembly consisting of a grouping of individual boilers called modules, intended to be installed as a unit. Modules may be under one jacket or may be individually jacketed.

Boiler, Steam Heating - A boiler designed to convert water into steam which is supplied to an external space heating system.

Boiler, Vacuum - A factory-sealed steam boiler that is operated below atmospheric pressure.

Bottom Blowoff Valve - A valve or cock located in the bottom blowoff connection of a boiler which, when opened, permits free passage of scale and sediment during the blowoff operation.

Column, Fluid Relief - That piping, connected to the top of a hot water heating boiler, which is provided for the thermal expansion of the water. It will connect to either an open or a closed expansion tank.

Drain Valve - A valve or cock located in a boiler connection which, when opened, will drain the lowest water space practicable.

Electric Boiler, Submerged Electrode Type - A submerged electrode type electric boiler incorporates a design wherein two or more metallic electrodes are directly suspended in the boiler water. When a source of electric power is connected to the electrodes, current will flow between the electrodes and through the water, thus raising the temperature of the water to produce steam.

Feedwater - Water introduced into a boiler during operation. Includes makeup and return condensate or return water.

Flue - Passage through which gases pass from the combustion chamber or furnace to the venting system.

Furnace - That part of a boiler in which combustion of fuel takes place or in which primary furnace gases are conveyed.

Gases, Primary Furnace - Gases in a zone where the anticipated temperature of the gas exceeds 850°F (454°C).

Joints, Swing - Threaded, flanged, welded, or brazed pipe and fittings so arranged that the piping system which they comprise, when connected to a boiler, can

expand and contract without imposing excessive force on it.

Makeup Water - Water introduced into the boiler to replace that lost or removed from the system.

Pressure, Accumulation Test - That steam pressure at which the capacity of a safety, safety relief, or a relief valve is determined. It is $33^{1}/_{3}$% over the steam safety valve set pressure and 10% over the safety relief valve set pressure.

Pressure, Design - The pressure used in the design of a boiler for the purpose of calculating the minimum permissible thickness or physical characteristics of the different parts of the boiler.

Pressure, Maximum Allowable Working - The maximum gage pressure permissible in a completed boiler. The MAWP of the completed boiler shall be less than or equal to the lowest design pressure determined for any of its parts. This pressure is based upon either proof tests or calculations for every pressure part of the boiler using nominal thickness exclusive of allowances for corrosion and thickness required for loadings other than pressure.

Pressure, Operating - The pressure of a boiler at which it normally operates. It shall not exceed the maximum allowable working pressure and it is usually kept at a suitable level below the setting of the pressure relieving devices to prevent their

[SEC IV NMA APP E] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:24 2003)

frequent opening.

Rated, Officially - A safety or safety relief valve for use on a heating boiler that has been capacity rated in accordance with HG-402.

Siphon - A bent pipe or tube, between a steam pressure gage and the steam connection on a boiler, so fabricated that it contains a water seal which prevents steam entering the Bourdon tube of the gage.

Stress, Maximum Allowable - The maximum unit stress permitted in a given material used under these rules.

Surface, Heating, Square Feet of - That area of the boiler surface exposed to the products of combustion. In computing the heating surface for the purpose of determining the safety or relief valve requirements, only the tubes, fireboxes, shells, tubesheets, and the projected area of the headers need be considered, except that for vertical firetube boilers only that portion of the tube surface up to the middle point of the gage glass is to be computed.

Thickness, Required - The minimum thickness determined by the formulas in this Code.

Tube, Fire - A hollow cylinder used for the conveyance of gases, flame, or hot air.

Tube, Water - A hollow cylinder used for the conveyance of liquids.

Valve, Safety - An automatic pressure relieving device actuated by the static pressure upstream of the valve and characterized by full-opening pop action. It is used for gas or vapor service.

Valve, Safety, Lift of - The movement of the disk off the seat of a safety, safety relief, or relief valve when the valve is opened. It normally refers to the amount of movement of the disk off the seat when the valve is discharging at rated pressure.

Valve, Safety Relief - An automatic pressure relieving device actuated by the pressure upstream of the valve and characterized by opening pop action with further increase in lift with an increase in pressure over popping pressure.

Valve, Temperature and Pressure Safety Relief - A safety relief valve which also incorporates a thermal sensing element which is actuated by an upstream water temperature of 210°F (99°C) or less.

Water Heater - A vessel in which potable water is heated by the combustion of fuel, by electricity, or by any other source, and withdrawn for external use.

Water Heater, Lined - A water heater with a corrosion resistant lining designed to heat potable water.

Water Heater, Unlined - A water heater made from corrosion resistant materials designed to heat potable water.

Wet-Bottom Boiler - Any type of boiler which has a stayed or self-supporting, partially or fully water-cooled, shell or furnace bottom.
[98]

E-101 TERMS RELATING TO WELDING

Arc Stud Welding - An arc welding process wherein coalescence is produced by heating with an arc drawn between a metal stud, or similar part, until the surfaces to be joined are properly heated, when they are brought together under pressure. Partial shielding may be obtained by the use of a ceramic ferrule surrounding the stud. Shielding gas or flux may or may not be used.

Arc Welding - A group of welding processes wherein coalescence is produced by heating with an electric arc or arcs, with or without the application of pressure and with or without the use of filler metal.

Atomic Hydrogen Welding - An arc welding process wherein coalescence is produced by heating with an electric arc maintained between two metal electrodes in an atmosphere of hydrogen. Shielding is obtained from the hydrogen. Pressure may or may not be used and filler metal may or may not be used.

Automatic Welding - Welding with equipment which performs the entire welding operation without constant observation and adjustment of the controls by an operator.

The equipment may or may not perform the loading and unloading of the work.

[SEC IV NMA APP E] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:24 2003)

Backing - Material (metal, weld metal, asbestos, carbon, granular flux, etc.) backing up the joint during welding to facilitate obtaining a sound weld at the root.

Base Metal - The metal to be welded or cut.

Brazing - A group of metal-joining processes wherein coalescence is produced by heating to suitable temperatures above 800°F (427°C) and by using a nonferrous filler metal, having a melting point below that of the base metals. The filler metal is distributed between the closely fitted surfaces of the joint by capillary attraction.

Butt Joint - A joint between two members lying approximately in the same plane.

Corner Joint - A joint between two members located approximately at right angles to each other in the form of an L.

Double-Welded Butt Joint - A butt joint welded from both sides.

Double-Welded Lap Joint - A lap joint in which the overlapped edges of the members to be joined are welded along the edges of both members.

Edge Joint - A joint between the edges of two or more parallel or nearly parallel members.

Filler Metal - Metal to be added in making a weld.

Fillet Weld - A weld of approximately triangular cross section joining two surfaces approximately at right angles to each other in a lap joint, tee joint, or corner joint.

Flux Cored Arc Welding (FCAW) - A gas metal arc welding process which produces coalescence of metals by heating them with an arc between a continuous filler metal (consumable) electrode and the work. Shielding is provided by a flux contained within the tubular electrode. Additional shielding may or may not be obtained from an externally supplied gas or gas mixture.

Flux Cored Arc Welding-Electrogas (FCAW-EG) - A variation of the flux cored arc welding process in which molding shoes are used to confine the molten weld metal for vertical position welding. Additional shielding may or may not be obtained from an externally supplied gas or gas mixture.

Flux Cored Electrode - A composite filler metal electrode consisting of a metal tube or other hollow configuration containing ingredients to provide such functions as shielding atmosphere, deoxidation, arc stabilization, and slag formation. Alloying materials may be included in the core. External shielding may or may not be used.

Full Fillet Weld - A fillet weld whose size is equal to the thickness of the thinner member joined.

Gas Metal Arc Welding-Electrogas (GMAW-EG) - A variation of the gas metal arc welding process using molding shoes to confine the molten weld metal for vertical position welding.

Gas Tungsten-Arc Welding - An arc welding process wherein coalescence is produced by heating with an electric arc between a single tungsten (nonconsumable) electrode and the work. Shielding is obtained from a gas or gas mixture (which may contain an inert gas). Pressure may or may not be used. Filler metal may or may not be used. (This process has sometimes been called TIG Welding.)

Gas Welding - A group of welding processes wherein coalescence is produced by heating with a gas flame or flames with or without the application of pressure, and with or without the use of filler metal.

Joint Efficiency - The efficiency of a welded joint is expressed as a numerical (decimal) quantity and is used in the design of a joint as a multiplier of the appropriate allowable stress taken from Tables HF-300.1 and HF-300.2.

Joint Penetration - The minimum depth a groove weld extends from its face into a joint, exclusive of reinforcement.

Lap Joint - A joint between two overlapping members.

Machine Welding - Welding with equipment which performs the welding operation under the observation and control of an operator. The equipment may or may not perform the loading and unloading of the work.

Manual Welding - Welding wherein the entire welding operation is performed and controlled by hand.

Oxyacetylene Welding - A gas welding process wherein coalescence is produced by heating with a gas flame or flames

[SEC IV NMA APP E] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:25 2003)

obtained from the combustion of acetylene with oxygen, with or without the application of pressure and with or without the use of filler metal.

Oxygen Cutting - A group of cutting processes wherein the severing of metals is effected by means of the chemical reaction of oxygen with the base metal at elevated temperatures. In the case of oxidation resistant metals, the reaction is facilitated by use of a flux or metal powder.

Oxyhydrogen Welding - A gas welding process wherein coalescence is produced by heating with a gas flame or flames obtained from the combustion of hydrogen with oxygen, without the application of pressure and with or without the use of filler metal.

Plasma Arc Welding - A gas tungsten arc welding process wherein coalescence is produced by heating with a constricted arc between an electrode and workpiece (transferred arc) or the electrode and the constricting nozzle (nontransferred arc). Shielding is obtained from

hot ionized gas issuing from the orifice which may be supplemented by an auxiliary source of shielding gas. Shielding gas may be an inert gas or a mixture of gases, pressure may or may not be used, and filler metal may or may not be used.

Pressure Gas Welding - A gas welding process wherein coalescence is produced simultaneously over the entire area of abutting surfaces, by heating with a gas flame or flames obtained from combustion of hydrogen with oxygen, without the application of pressure, and with or without the use of filler metal.

Pressure Welding - Any welding process or method wherein pressure is used to complete the weld.

Projection Welding (PW) - A resistance welding process that produces coalesence by the heat obtained from the resistance of the flow of welding current. The resulting welds are localized at predetermined points by projections, embossments, or intersections. The metals to be joined lap over each other.

Reinforcement of Weld - Weld metal on the face of a groove weld in excess of the metal necessary for the specified weld size.

Resistance Seam Welding (RSEW) - A resistance welding process that produces coalesence of overlapped parts at the faying surfaces progessively along the length of a joint. The weld may be made with overlapping nuggets, a continuous weld nugget, or by forging the joint as it is heated to the welding temperature by resistance to the flow of welding current.

Resistance Spot Welding (RSW) - A resistance welding process that produces coalesence at the faying surfaces of overlapped parts by the heat obtained from resistance of the work to the flow of welding current in a circuit of which the work is a part, and by the application of pressure.

Resistance Stud Welding - A resistance welding process wherein coalescence is produced by the heat obtained from resistance to electric current at the interface between the stud and the work piece, until the surfaces to be joined are properly heated, when they are brought together under pressure.

Resistance Welding (RW) - A group of welding processes that produces coalescence of overlapping faying surfaces with the heat obtained from resistance of the work to the flow of current in a circuit of which the work is a part, and by the application of pressure.

Seal Weld - Any weld used primarily to obtain tightness.

Semiautomatic Arc Welding - Arc welding with equipment which controls only the filler metal feed. The advance of the welding is manually controlled.

Shielded Metal-Arc Welding - An arc welding process wherein coalescence is produced by heating with an electric arc between a covered metal electrode and the work. Shielding is obtained from decomposition of the electrode covering. Pressure is not used and filler metal is obtained from the electrode.

Single-Welded Butt Joints - A butt joint welded from one side only.

Single-Welded Lap Joint - A lap joint in which the overlapped edges of the members to be joined are welded along the edge of one member.

[SEC IV NMA APP E] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:25 2003)

Size of Weld

(a) Groove Weld - The joint penetration (depth of chamfering plus the root penetration when specified).

(b) Fillet Weld

(1) For Equal-Leg Fillet Welds. The leg length of the largest isosceles right triangle which can be inscribed within the fillet weld cross section.

(2) For Unequal-Leg Fillet Welds. The leg lengths of the largest right triangle which can be inscribed within the fillet weld cross section.

Submerged Arc Welding - An arc welding process wherein coalescence is produced by heating with an electric arc or arcs between a bare metal electrode or electrodes and the work. The welding is shielded by a blanket of granular, fusible material on the work. Pressure is not used and filler metal is obtained from the electrode and sometimes from a supplementary welding rod.

Tee Joint - A joint between two members located approximately at right angles to each other in the form of a T.

Thermit Welding - A group of welding processes wherein coalescence is produced by heating with superheated liquid metal and slag resulting from a chemical reaction between a metal oxide and aluminum, with or without the application of pressure. Filler metal, when used, is obtained from the liquid metal.

Throat of a Fillet Weld

(a) Theoretical. The distance from the beginning of the root of the joint perpendicular to the hypotenuse of the largest right triangle that can be inscribed within the fillet weld cross section.

(b) Actual. The shortest distance from the root of a fillet weld to its face.

Undercut - A groove melted into the base metal adjacent to the toe of a weld and left unfilled by weld metal.

Weld - A localized coalescence of metal wherein coalescence is produced by heating to suitable temperatures, with or without the application of pressure and with or without the use of filler metal. The filler metal has a melting point approximately the same as the base metals.

Weld Metal - That portion of a weld which has been melted during welding.

Welded Joint - A union of two or more members produced by the application of a welding process.

Welder - One who is capable of performing a manual or semiautomatic welding operation.

Welding Operator - One who operates machine or automatic welding equipment.

APPENDIX F QUALITY CONTROL SYSTEM

F-100 GENERAL

F-100.1 Quality Control System.

The manufacturer or assembler shall have and maintain a quality control system which will establish that all Code requirements including material, design, fabrication, examination (by the manufacturer), and inspection (by the Authorized Inspector) for boilers and water heaters constructed primarily of wrought materials will be met.

[SEC IV NMA APP F] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:25 2003)

Provided that Code requirements are suitably identified, the system may include provisions for satisfying any requirements by the manufacturer or user which exceed minimum Code requirements and may include provisions for quality control of non-Code work. In such systems, the manufacturer may make changes in parts of the system which do not affect the Code requirements without securing acceptance by the Authorized Inspector. Before implementation, revisions to quality control systems of manufacturers and assemblers of safety and safety relief valves shall have been found acceptable to the ASME Designee if such revisions affect Code requirements.

The system that the manufacturer uses to meet the requirements of this Section must be one suitable for his own circumstances. The necessary scope and detail of the system shall depend upon the complexity of the work performed and upon the size and complexity of the manufacturer's organization. A written description of the system the manufacturer will use to produce a Code item shall be available for review. Depending upon the circumstances, the description may be brief or voluminous.

The written description may contain information of a proprietary nature relating to the manufacturer's processes. Therefore, the Code does not require any distribution of this information, except for the Authorized Inspector or ASME Designee, as covered by F-202.10. It is intended that information learned about the quality control system in connection with evaluation will be treated as confidential and that all loaned descriptions will be returned to the manufacturer upon completion of the evaluation.

F-202 OUTLINE OF FEATURES TO BE INCLUDED IN THE WRITTEN DESCRIPTION OF THE QUALITY CONTROL SYSTEM

The following is a guide to some of the features which should be covered in the written description of the quality control system and which is equally applicable to both shop and field work.

F-202.1 Authority and Responsibility.

The authority and responsibility of those in charge of the quality control system shall be clearly established. Persons performing quality control functions shall have sufficient and well defined responsibility, the authority, and the organizational freedom to identify quality control problems and to initiate, recommend and provide solutions.

F-202.2 Organization.

An organization chart showing the relationship between management and engineering, purchasing, manufacturing, field assembling, inspection, and quality control, is required to reflect the actual organization. The purpose of this chart is to identify and associate the various organizational groups with the particular function for which they are responsible. The Code does not intend to encroach on the manufacturer's right to establish, and from time to time, alter whatever form of organization the manufacturer considers appropriate for its Code work.

F-202.3 Drawings, Design Calculations, and Specification Control.

The manufacturer's or assembler's quality control system shall provide procedures which will insure that the latest applicable drawings, design calculations, specifications, and instructions required by the Code, as well as authorized changes, are used for manufacture, assembly, examination, inspection, and testing.

F-202.4 Material Control.

The Manufacturer or assembler shall include a system of receiving control that requires verification that the material received conforms to order requirements and that the identification of the materials corresponds to the material certifications or material test reports. The system shall ensure that only the intended material is used in Code construction.

F-202.5 Examination and Inspection Program.

The Manufacturer's quality control system shall describe the fabrication operations, including examinations, sufficiently to permit the Authorized Inspector to determine at what stages specific inspections are to be performed.

[SEC IV NMA APP F] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:25 2003)

F-202.6 Correction of Nonconformities.

There shall be a system agreed upon with the Authorized Inspector for correction of nonconformities. A nonconformity condition which does not comply with the applicable rules of this Section. Nonconformities must be corrected or eliminated in some way before the completed component can be considered to comply with this Section.

F-202.7 Welding.

The quality control system shall include provisions for indicating that welding conforms to requirements of Section IX as supplemented by this Section.

F-202.8 Calibration of Measurement and Test Equipment.

The Manufacturer or assembler shall have a system for the calibration of examination, measuring, and test equipment used in fulfillment of requirements of this Section.

F-202.9 Sample Forms.

The forms used in the quality control system and any detailed procedures for their use shall be available for review. The written description shall make necessary references to these forms.

F-202.10 Authorized Inspector

F-202.10.1

The Authorized Inspector is the ASME Code Inspector defined in HG-515.3.

F-202.10.2

The written description of the quality control system shall include reference to the Authorized Inspector.

F-202.10.2.1

The Manufacturer shall make available to the Authorized Inspector at the Manufacturer's plant a copy of the written description of the quality control system.

F-202.10.2.2

The Manufacturer's quality control system shall provide for the Authorized Inspector at the Manufacturer's plant to have access to all drawings, calculations, specifications, procedures, process sheets, repair procedures, records, test results, and any other documents as necessary for the Authorized Inspector to perform his duties in accordance with this Section. The Manufacturer may provide such access either to his own files of such documents or by providing copies to the Authorized Inspector.

F-202.11 Inspection During Manufacture of Safety and Safety Relief Valves.

See HG-401.3.

[SEC IV NMA APP H] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:25 2003)

AGA

American Gas Association
1515 Wilson Boulevard, Arlington, VA 22209

American Gas Association Laboratories
8501 East Pleasant Valley Road, Cleveland, OH 44131

ANSI

American National Standards Institute
11 West 42nd Street, New York, NY 10036

ASHRAE

American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and
Air Conditioning Engineers
1791 Tullie Circle, NE, Atlanta, GA 30329

ASTM

American Society for Testing and Materials
100 Barr Harbor Drive, West Conshohocken, PA 19428

CGA

Canadian Gas Association
55 Scarsdale Road, Don Mills, Ontario, Canada M3B 2R3

NEC

National Electric Code NFPA 70
National Fire Protection Association International
1 Batterymarch Park, Quincy, MA 02269

NSFI

National Sanitation Foundation International
3475 Plymouth Road, Ann Arbor, MI 48105

UL

Underwriters Laboratories, Inc.
333 Pfingsten Road, Northbrook, IL 60062
[98]

[ASME logo] SD-570 [ASTM logo]

[SEC IV NMA APP I] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:25 2003)

[Identical to ASTM Specification D 570-81 (Reapproved 1988)]

1. Scope

1.1

This test method covers the determination of the relative rate of absorption of water by plastics when immersed. The test method is intended to apply to the testing of all types of plastics, including cast, hot-molded, and cold-molded resinous products, and both homogeneous and laminated plastics in rod and tube form and in sheets 0.13 mm (0.005 in.) or greater in thickness.

1.2

The values stated in SI units are to be regarded as the standard. The values stated in parentheses are for information purposes only.

1.3

This standard may involve hazardous materials, operations, and equipment. This standard does not purport to address all of the safety problems associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this standard to establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.

2. Referenced Document

2.1 ASTM Standard:

D 647 Design of Molds for Test Specimens of Plastic Molding Materials

3. Significance and Use

3.1

The test method for rate of water absorption has two chief functions: first, as a guide to the proportion of water absorbed by a material and consequently, in those cases where the relationships between moisture and electrical or mechanical properties, dimensions, or appearance have been determined, as a guide to the effects of exposure to water or humid conditions on such properties; and second, as a control test on the uniformity of a product. This second function is particularly applicable to sheet, rod, and tube arms when the test is made on the finished product.

3.2

Comparison of water absorption values of various plastics can be made on the basis of values obtained in accordance with 7.1 and 7.4.

3.3

The moisture content of a plastic is very intimately related to such properties as electrical insulation resistance, dielectric losses, mechanical strength, appearance, and dimensions. The effect upon these properties of change in moisture content due to water absorption depends largely on the type of exposure (by immersion in water or by exposure to high humidity), shape of the part, and inherent properties of the plastic. With nonhomogeneous materials, such as laminated forms, the rate of water absorption may be widely different through each edge and surface. Even for otherwise homogeneous materials, it may be slightly greater through cut edges than through molded surfaces. Consequently, attempts to correlate water absorption with the surface area must generally be limited to closely related materials and to similarly shaped specimens: For materials of widely varying density, relation between water-absorption values on a volume as well as a weight basis may need to be considered.

[SEC IV NMA APP I] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:25 2003)

4. Apparatus

4.1 Balance

- An analytical balance capable of reading 0.0001 g.

4.2

Oven, capable of maintaining uniform temperatures of 50 ± 3°C (122 ± 5.4°F) and of 105 to 110°C (221 to 230°F).

5. Test Specimen

5.1

The test specimen for molded plastics shall be in the form of a disk 50.8 mm (2 in.) in diameter and 3.2 mm ($^1/_8$ in.) in thickness (Note 1). Permissible variations in thickness are ±0.18 mm (±0.007 in.) for hot-molded and ±0.30 mm (±0.012 in.) for cold-molded or cast materials.

NOTE 1 - The disk mold prescribed in the Molds for Disk Test Specimens Section of Practice D 647 is suitable for molding disk test specimens of thermosetting materials but not thermoplastic materials.

5.2

The test specimen for sheets shall be in the form of a bar 76.2 mm (3 in.) long by 25.4 mm (1 in.) wide by the thickness of the material. When comparison of absorption values with molded plastics is desired, specimens 3.2 mm ($^1/_8$ in.) thick should be used. Permissible variations in thickness shall be 0.20 mm (±0.008 in.) except for asbestos-fabric-base phenolic laminated materials or other materials which have greater standard commercial tolerances.

5.3

The test specimen for rods shall be 25.4 mm (1 in.) long for rods 25.4 mm (1 in.) in diameter or under, and 12.7 mm ($^1/_2$ in.) long for larger-diameter rods. The diameter of the specimen shall be the diameter of the finished rod.

5.4

The test specimen for tubes less than 76 mm (3 in.) in inside diameter shall be the full section of the tube and 25.4 mm (1 in.) long. For tubes 76 mm (3 in.) or more in inside diameter, a rectangular specimen shall be cut 76 mm (3 in.) in length in the circumferential direction of the tube and 25.4 mm (1 in.) in width lengthwise of the tube.

5.5

The test specimens for sheets, rods, and tubes shall be machined, sawed, or sheared from the sample so as to have smooth edges free from cracks. The cut edges shall be made smooth by finishing with No. 0 or finer sandpaper or emery cloth. Sawing, machining, and sandpapering operations shall be slow enough so that the material is not heated appreciably.

NOTE 2 - If there is any oil on the surface of the specimen when received or as a result of machining operations, wash the specimen with a cloth wet with gasoline to remove oil, wipe with a dry cloth, and allow to stand in air for 2 h to permit evaporation of the gasoline. If gasoline attacks the plastic, use some suitable solvent or detergent that will evaporate within the 2-h period.

5.6

The dimensions listed in the following table for the various specimens shall be measured to the nearest 0.025 mm (0.001 in.). Dimensions not listed shall be measured within 0.8 mm ($\pm^1/_{32}$ in.).

Type of Specimen	**Dimension to be Measured to the Nearest 0.025 mm (0.001 in.)**
Molded disk	thickness

[SEC IV NMA APP I] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:26 2003)

	thickness
Rod	length and diameter
Tube	inside and outside diameter, and wall thickness

6. Conditioning

6.1

Three specimens shall be conditioned as follows:

6.1.1

Specimens of materials whose water-absorption value would be appreciably affected by temperatures in the neighborhood of 110°C (230°F), shall be dried in an oven for 24 h at 50 ± 3°C (122 ± 5.4°F), cooled in a desiccator, and immediately weighed to the nearest 0.001 g.

NOTE 3 - If a static charge interferes with the weighing, lightly rub the surface of the specimens with a grounded conductor.

6.1.2

Specimens of materials, such as phenolic laminated plastics and other products whose water-absorption value has been shown not to be appreciably affected by temperatures up to 110°C (230°F), shall be dried in an oven for 1 h at 105 to 110 °C (221 to 230 °F).

6.1.3

When data for comparison with absorption values for other plastics are desired, the specimens shall be dried in an oven for 24 h at 50 ± 3°C (122 ± 5.4°F), cooled in a desiccator, and immediately weighed to the nearest 0.001 g.

7. Procedure

7.1 24-h Immersion

- The conditioned specimens shall be placed in a container of distilled water maintained at a temperature of 23 ± 1°C (73.4 ± 1.8°F), and shall rest on edge and be entirely immersed. At the end of 24, $+^{1}/_{2}$, -0 h, the specimens shall be removed from the water one at a time, all surface water wiped off with a dry cloth, and weighed to the nearest 0.001 g immediately. If the specimen is $^{1}/_{16}$ in. (1.6 mm) or less in thickness, it shall be put in a weighing bottle immediately after wiping and weighed in the bottle.

7.2 2-h Immersion

- For all thicknesses of materials having a relatively high rate of absorption, and for thin specimens of other materials which may show a significant weight increase in 2 h, the specimens shall be tested as described in 7.1 except that the time of immersion shall be reduced to 120 ± 4 min.

7.3 Repeated Immersion

- A specimen may be weighed to the nearest 0.001 g after 2-h immersion, replaced in the water, and weighed again after 24 h.

NOTE 4 - In using this method the amount of water absorbed in 24 h may be less than it would have been had the immersion not been interrupted.

7.4 Long-Term Immersion

- To determine the total water absorbed when substantially saturated, the conditioned specimens shall be tested as

[SEC IV NMA APP I] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:26 2003)

described in 7.1 except that at the end of 24 h they shall be removed from the water, wiped free of surface moisture with a dry cloth, weighed to the nearest 0.001 g immediately, and then replaced in the water. The weighings shall be repeated at the end of the first week and every two weeks thereafter until the increase in weight per two-week period, as shown by three consecutive weighings, averages less than 1% of the total increase in weight, or 5 mg, whichever is greater; the specimen shall then be considered substantially saturated. The difference between the substantially saturated weight and the dry weight shall be considered as the water absorbed when substantially saturated.

7.5 2-h Boiling Water Immersion

- The conditioned specimens shall be placed in a container of boiling distilled water, and shall be supported on edge and be entirely immersed. At the end of 120 ± 4 min, the specimens shall be removed from the water and cooled in distilled water maintained at room temperature. After 15 ± 1 min, the specimens shall be removed from the water, one at a time, all surface water removed with a dry cloth, and the specimens weighed to the nearest 0.001 g immediately. If the specimen is $^{1}/_{16}$ in. (1.6 mm) or less in thickness, it shall be weighed in a weighing bottle.

7.6 $^{1}/_{2}$-h Boiling Water Immersion

- For all thicknesses of materials having a relatively high rate of absorption, and for thin specimens of other materials which may show a significant weight increase in $^{1}/_{2}$ h the specimens shall be tested as described in 7.5, except that the time of immersion shall be reduced to 30 ± 1 min.

7.7 Immersion at 50°C

- The conditioned specimens shall be tested as described in 7.5, except that the time and temperature of immersion shall be 48 ± 1 h and 50 ± 1°C (122.0 ± 1.8°F), respectively, and cooling in water before weighing shall be omitted.

7.8

When data for comparison with absorption values for other plastics are desired, the 24-h immersion procedure described in 7.1 and the equilibrium value determined in 7.4 shall be used.

8. Reconditioning

8.1

When materials are known or suspected to contain any appreciable amount of water-soluble ingredients, the specimens, after immersion, shall be weighed, and then reconditioned for the same time and temperature as used in the original drying period. They shall then be cooled in a desiccator and immediately reweighed. If the reconditioned weight is lower than the conditioned weight, the difference shall be considered as water-soluble matter lost during the immersion test. For such materials, the water-absorption value shall be taken as the sum of the increase in weight on immersion and of the weight of the water-soluble matter.

9. Calculation and Report

9.1

The report shall include the values for each specimen and the average for the three specimens as follows:

9.1.1

Dimensions of the specimens before test, measured in accordance with 5.6, and reported to the nearest 0.001 in.,

9.1.2

Conditioning time and temperature,

9.1.3

[SEC IV NMA APP I] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:26 2003)

Immersion procedure used,

9.1.4

Time of immersion (long-term immersion procedure only),

9.1.5

Percentage increase in weight during immersion, calculated to the nearest 0.01% as follows:

$$\text{Increase in weight, \%} = \frac{\text{wet wt - conditioned wt}}{\text{conditioned wt}} \times 100$$

9.1.6

Percentage of soluble matter lost during immersion, if determined, calculated to the nearest 0.01% as follows (Note 5):

$$\text{Soluble matter lost, \%} = \frac{\text{conditioned wt - reconditioned wt}}{\text{conditioned wt}} \times 100$$

NOTE 5 - When the weight on reconditioning the specimen after immersion in water exceeds the conditioned weight prior to immersion, report "none" under 9.1.6.

9.1.7

The percentage of water absorbed, which is the sum of the values in 9.1.5 and 9.1.6 and

9.1.8

Any observations as to warping, cracking, or change in appearance of the specimens.

10. Precision and Bias

10.1 Precision

- An interlaboratory test program was carried out using the procedure outlined in 7.1, involving three laboratories and three materials. Analysis of this data yields the following coefficients of variation (average of three replicates).

	Within Laboratories	Between Laboratories

[SEC IV NMA APP I] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:26 2003)

		4.89%
Average absorption below 0.2% (1 material)	9.01%	16.63%

10.2 Bias

- No justifiable statement on the bias of this test method can be made, since the true value of the property cannot be established by an accepted referee method.

APPENDIX K GUIDE TO INFORMATION APPEARING ON CERTIFICATE OF AUTHORIZATION

APPENDIX K
GUIDE TO INFORMATION APPEARING ON CERTIFICATE OF AUTHORIZATION

ITEM	DESCRIPTION
①	a. The name of the Manufacturer or Assembler; this description could include "doing business as" (DBA) or an abbreviation of the name. b. The full street address, city, state or province, country, and zip code.
②	This section describes the scope and limitations, if any, on use of the Code symbol stamps, as illustrated below. Field site Certificate of Authorization applies to items that are fabricated or assembled at a field site and is not intended to apply to items at any shop location. **H Code Symbol Stamp** 1. Heating boilers, except cast iron, at the above location only. 2. Heating boilers, except cast iron, at the above location only. (This authorization includes multiple duplicate heating boilers.) 3. Heating boilers, except cast iron, at the above location. (This authorization does not cover welding or brazing.) 4. Heating boilers, except cast iron, at the above location and field sites controlled by that location. 5. Heating boilers, cast iron only, at the above location only. **HLW Code Symbol Stamp** 1. Potable water heaters at the above location only. 2. Potable water heaters at the above location only. (This authorization includes multiple duplicate lined potable water heaters.) **HV Code Symbol Stamp** 1. Manufacturer of heating boiler safety valves and safety relief valves at the above location only. 2. Manufacturer of heating boiler safety valves and safety relief valves at the above location only. (This authorization does not cover welding or brazing.)
③	The date authorization was granted by the Society to use the appropriate Code Symbol Stamp.
④	The date authorization to use the appropriate Code Symbol Stamp will expire.
⑤	A unique Certificate number assigned by the Society.
⑥	Code Symbol granted by the Society, i.e., H Heating Boilers; HLW Water Heaters; and HV Safety Valves.
⑦, ⑧	The signature of the current Chair of the Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee and the Director of Accreditation.

[SEC IV NMA APP K] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:28 2003)

July 1, 1998
American Society Of Mechanical Engineers
SEC IV NMA APP L
APPENDIX L GUIDE TO MANUFACTURER'S DATA REPORT FORMS

INTRODUCTION

The following pages are a guide for completing the Manufacturer's Data Report Forms. Forms and guides are keyed in the following manner:

Ã Circled numbers refer to the guide for required subject material.

1. Numbers without circles appearing in the guide material identify specific lines on the Manufacturer's Data Report Forms.

Forms appearing in this section may be obtained from the ASME Order Department, 22 Law Drive, Box 2300, Fairfield, NJ 07007-2300.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE PREPARATION OF SECTION IV MANUFACTURER'S DATA REPORT FORMS

Applies to Form							Note	
H-2	H-3	H-4	H-5	HLW-6	HLW-7	HLW-8	No.	Instruction:
X	X	X	X	X	X	X	(1)	Name and address of manufacturer (i.e., maker of all components not covered by Partial Data Reports).
X	X	X	...	X	X	...	(2)	Name and address of purchaser and/or owner.
X	X	X	...	X	...	...	(3)	Name and address of location where unit is to be installed. If not known, so indicate (e.g., "not known — built for stock").
X	X	...	X	...	...	X	(4)	Show type or model of unit documented by this data report.
X	X	X	...	X	X	...	(5)	Identification of unit by applicable numbers. If intended for installation in Canada, indicate the Canadian design registration number and drawing number.
X	X	X	...	X	X	...	(6)	Year in which fabrication was completed in shop.
X	X	X	...	X	X	...	(7)	Date (year) of Section IV edition under which boiler or part was constructed.
X	X	X	...	X	X	...	(8)	Issue date of most recent addenda to Section IV under which boiler or part was constructed (e.g., "December 1997").
X	X	X	...	X	...	...	(9)	Code Case number, if applicable.
X	...	...	...	...	...	...	(10)	Show quantity and inside dimensions in inches. If more than two shells or drums are used, enter data in line 14.
X	X	X	...	X	X	X	(11)	Show the complete ASME material specification number and grade as listed in the appropriate stress allowance table in Section IV (e.g., "SA-285-B") Exception: A specification number for a material not identical to an ASME Specification may be shown only if such material has been approved for Section IV construction by an ASME interpretation case ruling and provided the applicable case number is also shown.
X	...	...	...	X	X	...	(12)	Indicate type of joint(s).
X	...	...	...	X	X	...	(13)	Show joint efficiency for welded joints.
X	...	...	...	...	...	...	(14)	Show number of furnaces in boiler.
X	...	...	...	...	...	...	(15)	For cylindrical furnaces of the Adamson, ring-reinforced, and combined types, show total length only.
X	...	...	...	...	...	...	(16)	For stayed (firebox) type furnace, complete line 12 also.
X	...	...	...	...	...	...	(17)	If threaded, show diameter at root of thread.
X	...	...	...	...	...	...	(18)	Minimum cross-sectional area after deducting for telltale hole.
X	...	...	...	...	...	...	(19)	Maximum allowable working pressure for the stayed area calculated according to the rules contained in Part HG of Section IV.
X	...	...	...	...	...	...	(20)	Type of stay or brace (e.g., diagonal, gusset, girder, through, etc.).
X	...	...	...	...	...	...	(21)	Minimum cross-sectional area of the stay or brace multiplied by the number of stays or braces supporting the area under consideration.
X	...	...	...	...	...	...	(22)	See applicable paragraphs and figures in Part HG of Section IV.
X	...	...	...	...	...	...	(23)	List parts not covered elsewhere on the data report. If insufficient space, attach a supplementary sheet.
X	...	...	...	...	...	...	(24)	Tabulate data for parts listed on line 14.
X	X	X	...	X	...	...	(25)	Show data for main and auxiliary inlets and outlets, nozzles, inspection openings, safety valve openings, drains, and blowoffs. This does not apply to small openings for water column, controls, vents, etc.
X	X	X	...	...	...	...	(26)	Maximum allowable working pressure.
X	...	...	...	...	...	...	(27)	Show Section IV paragraph that applies to the weakest part of the unit as established by calculation or deformation test.
X	...	...	...	...	...	...	(28)	Boiler heating surface calculated in accordance with HG-403 of Section IV or kW.
X	...	...	...	...	...	...	(29)	Hydrostatic pressure applied in accordance with HG-510 and witnessed by the Authorized Inspector.
X	X	...	...	X	X	...	(30)	To be completed when one or more components comprising the unit are furnished by others and certified by the applicable Partial Data Report(s).

[SEC IV NMA APP L] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:34 2003)

INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE PREPARATION OF SECTION IV MANUFACTURER'S DATA REPORT FORMS (CONT'D)

Applies to Form							Note	
H-2	H-3	H-4	H-5	HLW-6	HLW-7	HLW-8	No.	Instruction:
X	X	X	X	X	X	X	(31)	The manufacturer's ASME Certificate of Authorization number and date of expiration of said authorization.
X	X	X	...	X	X	X	(32)	This line is to be completed and signed by an authorized representative of the manufacturer.
X	X	X	...	X	X	X	(33)	This certificate is to be completed by the Authorized Inspection Agency representative who performs the in-shop inspection.
X	X	X	...	X	X	X	(34)	To determine what goes in this space, you should be guided by the following: National Board stamped boilers and pressure vessels: After "and state or province" in the certification blocks — if the Inspector has a valid Certificate of Competency for the state or province where the manufacturer's shop is located, insert the name of that state or province. If the manufacturer is located in a non-Code jurisdiction, insert the name of the state or province where the inspector took his original examination to obtain his National Board Commission, provided that Certificate of Competency is still valid. If not, show the name of the state or province where he has a valid Certificate of Competency authorizing him to make the shop inspection. Boilers and pressure vessels stamped only ASME: Follow the above procedure. However, in this case do not list any National Board Commission number after the inspector's signature at the bottom of the block.
X	X	...	...	X	...	...	(35)	Indicate the data items covered on the applicable form by line numbers.
X	X	...	...	X	...	...	(36)	Indicate by line numbers those items furnished by others and for which the applicable Partial Data Reports have been examined.
X	X	X	...	X	X	X	(37)	The inspector's National Board Commission number and the state or province Certificate of Competency number must be shown when the boiler is stamped National Board. The inspector shall use his jurisdictional Certificate of Competency and National Board Commission number on Partial Data Report Forms. If the boiler or vessel is not to be registered with the National Board, the inspector shall use only his state or province Certificate of Competency number.
X	X	...	...	...	...	...	(38)	The assembler's ASME Certificate of Authorization number and date of expiration of said authorization.
X	X	...	...	...	...	...	(39)	This line to be completed, when applicable, and signed by an authorized representative of the organization responsible for field assembly of the boiler.
X	X	...	...	...	...	...	(40)	This certificate to be completed by the Authorized Inspection Agency representative who performs the field assembly inspection.
X	X	...	...	...	...	...	(41)	Indicate by line numbers from the applicable form those items inspected in the field that were not inspected in the shop.
X	X	X	...	X	X	X	(42)	Nominal thickness of plate.
...	X	X	...	...	...	...	(43)	Minimum thickness after forming.
...	X	X	...	...	...	...	(44)	Radius on concave side of dish.
...	X	X	...	...	...	...	(45)	Shop hydrostatic test, if any, applied to individual part prior to test applied to the assembled boiler (see lines 33 and 35).
...	X	X	...	...	...	...	(46)	This line for headers not covered as items 7 through 10. It is intended primarily for sectional headers on straight tube watertube boilers.
...	X	X	...	X	X	...	(47)	Indicate shape as flat, dished, ellipsoidal, or hemispherical.
...	X	X	...	...	...	...	(48)	Use inside dimensions for size.
...	X	X	...	...	...	...	(49)	Indicate shape as square, round, etc.
...	X	X	...	...	...	...	(50)	Outside diameter.
...	X	...	...	...	...	...	(51)	Minimum thickness of tubes.

[SEC IV NMA APP L] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:37 2003)

INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE PREPARATION OF SECTION IV MANUFACTURER'S DATA REPORT FORMS (CONT'D)

Applies to Form							Note	
H-2	H-3	H-4	H-5	HLW-6	HLW-7	HLW-8	No.	Instruction:
...	X	X	...	...	...	...	(52)	Size is nominal pipe size.
...	X	X	...	...	...	...	(53)	Describe type as flanged, welding neck, etc.
...	...	X	...	...	X	...	(54)	Show name of part (e.g., steam drum, waterwall header).
...	...	X	...	...	X	...	(55)	Show data line number on applicable form for the named part.
X	X	X	...	X	X	...	(56)	Any additional information to clarify the report should be entered here.
...	...	...	X	...	...	...	(57)	List each individual section that makes up boiler assembly. Show pattern and/or part number for each section. Show drawing number for each section. Show metal thickness for each section as indicated on the drawings. List each section of the complete boiler.
...	...	...	X	...	...	...	(58)	Show bursting pressure of each section of boiler in pounds per square inch. Show thickness in inches measured at the break or fracture of each section. Indicate weight in pounds of each section.
...	...	...	X	...	...	...	(59)	Indicate minimum specified tensile strength in pounds per square inch for the class of iron as set forth in Table HC-300.
...	...	...	X	...	...	...	(60)	Indicate sections of boiler that represent specimen test bars. Show results of each specimen tested (tensile strength) in pounds per square inch.
...	...	...	X	...	...	...	(61)	Show maximum allowable working pressure in pounds per square inch as determined by Formula HC-402 and by values allowed by Formula HC-402.
...	...	...	X	...	...	X	(62)	The individual designated to conduct tests, the designated manufacturer's representative who witnesses test and date or dates on which destruction tests were conducted.
...	...	...	X	...	...	...	(63)	Designated responsible engineering head certifying the tests and date.
...	...	...	...	X	...	...	(64)	Show quantity and dimensions.
...	...	...	...	X	X	...	(65)	Type of lining, if applicable.
...	...	...	...	X	X	X	(66)	Maximum allowable working pressure established in accordance with HLW-300 or HLW-500 of Section IV.
...	...	...	...	X	X	...	(67)	Indicate maximum allowable input, _____ Btu/hr or kW. For tanks used for storage, indicate "storage only."
...	...	...	...	X	X	...	(68)	Maximum temperature in accordance with HLW-300 of Section IV.
...	...	...	...	X	X	...	(69)	Hydrostatic pressure applied in accordance with HLW-505 of Section IV and witnessed by the Authorized Inspector.
...	...	...	...	...	...	X	(70)	Part of vessel yielding first should be indicated.
...	...	...	...	...	...	X	(71)	Pressure at which yielding occurs as evidenced by flaking of the brittle coating or by appearance of strain lines.
...	...	...	...	...	...	X	(72)	Show yield strength in psi for each of the three specimens and average of the three.
...	...	X	...	...	X	...	(73)	This ID number is a unique identifying number for this form, which may be assigned by the Certificate Holder if desired.
X	X	X	...	...	...	...	(74)	Maximum water temperature.

[SEC IV NMA APP L] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:39 2003)

FORM H-2 MANUFACTURER'S DATA REPORT FOR ALL TYPES OF BOILERS EXCEPT WATERTUBE AND THOSE MADE OF CAST IRON
As Required by the Provisions of the ASME Code Rules, Section IV

1. Manufactured and certified by (1) (name and address of manufacturer)

2. Manufactured for (2) (name and address of purchaser)

3. Location of installation (3) (name and address)

4. Unit identification (4) (complete boiler, superheater, waterwall, economizer, etc.) (5) (mfr's. serial no.) (CRN) (drawing no.) (Nat'l. Bd. no.) (6) (year built)

5. The chemical and physical properties of all parts meet the requirements of material specifications of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE. The design, construction and workmanship conform to ASME Code, Section IV. (7) (year) (8) (addenda (date)) (9) (Code Case no.)

Manufacturer's Partial Data Reports properly identified and signed by Commissioned Inspectors have been furnished for the following items of this report: (30) (56)

(name of part, item number, mfr's. name and identifying stamp)

6. Shells or drums: (10) (no.) (11) (mat'l. spec., gr.) (12) (thickness (in.)) (10) (dia. (I.D.)) (length (overall)) (dia. (I.D.)) (length (overall))

7. Joints: (12) (long, (seamless, welded)) (13) (eff. (as compared to seamless)) (12) (girth (seamless, welded)) (no. of shell courses)

8. Tubesheet: (11) (mat'l. spec., grade) (thickness) Tube holes. (no. & dia.)

9. Tubes: No. (11) (mat'l. spec., grade) (straight or bent) Dia (if various, give max. & min.) Length Gauge (or thickness)

10. Heads: (11) (mat'l. specification no.) (thickness) (flat, dished, ellipsoidal) (radius of dish)

11. Furnace: (11) (mat'l. spec., gr.) (thickness) (14) (no.) (size (O.D. or W x H)) (length (each section)) (15) (total) (16) (type (plain, corrugated, etc.)) Seams: (type (seamless, welded))

12. Staybolts: (no.) (17) (size (dia.)) (11) (mat'l. spec., gr.) (size) (telltale) (18) (net area) (pitch (hor. and vert.)) (19) (MAWP (psi))

13. Stays or braces:

Location	Mat'l Spec	Type	No. & Size	Pitch	Total Net Area	Fig. HG-343.1	Dist. Tubes to Shell	Area to be Stayed	MAWP psi.
(a) F.H. above tubes	(11)	(20)			(21)	(22)			
(b) R.H. above tubes									
(c) F.H. below tubes									
(d) R.H. below tubes									
(e) Through stays									

14. Other parts 1. (23) 2. (brief description — i.e. dome, boiler piping, etc.) 3.

1. (24) (11)
2.
3.

(mat'l. spec., grade, size, material thickness, MAWP)

15. Nozzles, inspection and safety valve openings. (25)

Purpose (inlet, outlet, drain, etc.)	No.	Dia. or Size	Type	How Attached	Mat'l.	Nom. Thickness	Reinforcement Mat'l.	Location
Handhole up to 3" x 4"					NA		NA	
Manhole								
					(11)			

This form (E00101) may be obtained from the ASME Order Department, 22 Law Drive, Box 2300, Fairfield, NJ 07007-2300.

[SEC IV NMA APP L] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:39 2003)

FORM H-2 (Back)

18. Boiler supports: _____ (no.) _____ (type: saddles, lugs, lugs) _____ (attachment (bolted or welded))

17. MAWP _____ (26) (psi) Based on _____ (27) (Code par. and/or formula) Heating surface _____ (28) (sq. ft. or kW (total)) Shop hydro test _____ (29) (psi (complete boiler))

18. Maximum water temperature (73) °F.

19. Remarks: _____

CERTIFICATE OF SHOP COMPLIANCE

We certify that the statements made in this data report are correct and that all details of design, material, construction, and workmanship of this boiler conform to Section IV of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE.

"H" Certificate of Authorization no. _____ (31) expires _____, _____.

Date _____ (32) _____ Signed _____ Name _____

(by representative) (manufacturer that constructed and certified boiler)

(33) CERTIFICATE OF SHOP INSPECTION

Boiler constructed by _____ at _____.

I, the undersigned, holding a valid commission issued by the National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors and/or the state or province of _____ (34) _____ and employed by _____

_____ have inspected parts of this boiler referred to as data items _____ (35) _____ and have examined Manufacturers' Partial Data Reports for items _____ (36) _____

and state that, to the best of my knowledge and belief, the manufacturer has constructed this boiler in accordance with the applicable sections of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE.

By signing this certificate neither the inspector nor his employer makes any warranty, expressed or implied, concerning the boiler described in this Manufacturers' Data Report. Furthermore, neither the inspector nor his employer shall be liable in any manner for any personal injury or property damage or a loss of any kind arising from or connected with this inspection.

Date _____ Signed _____ Commissions _____ (37) _____

(Authorized Inspector) (Nat'l Bd (incl endorsements) state, prov. and no.)

CERTIFICATE OF FIELD ASSEMBLY COMPLIANCE

We certify that the field assembly construction of all parts of this boiler conforms with the requirements of SECTION IV of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE.

"H" Certificate of Authorization no. _____ (38) expires _____, _____.

Date _____ (39) _____ Signed _____ Name _____

(by representative) (assembler that certified and constructed field assembly)

(40) CERTIFICATE OF FIELD ASSEMBLY INSPECTION

I, the undersigned, holding a valid commission issued by the National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors and/or the state or province of _____ (34) _____ and employed by _____

_____ have compared statements in this Manufacturers' Data Report with the described boiler and state that the parts referred to as data items _____ (41) _____, not included in the certificate of shop inspection, have been inspected by me and that to the best of my knowledge and belief the manufacturer and/or the assembler has constructed and assembled this boiler in accordance with the applicable sections of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE. The described boiler was inspected and subjected to a hydrostatic test of _____ psi.

By signing this certificate neither the inspector nor his employer makes any warranty, expressed or implied, concerning the boiler described in this Manufacturers' Data Report. Furthermore, neither the inspector nor his employer shall be liable in any manner for any personal injury or property damage or a loss of any kind arising from or connected with this inspection.

Date _____ Signed _____ Commissions _____ (37) _____

(Authorized Inspector) Nat'l. Bd (incl. endorsements) state, prov. and no.)

[SEC IV NMA APP L] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:40 2003)

FORM H-3 MANUFACTURER'S DATA REPORT FOR WATERTUBE BOILERS
As Required by the Provisions of the ASME Code Rules, Section IV

1. Manufactured and certified by ① (name and address of manufacturer)

2. Manufactured for ② (name and address of purchaser)

3. Location of installation ③ (name and address)

4. Unit identification: ④ (complete boiler, superheater, waterwall, etc.) ⑤ (mfr's serial no.) (CRN) (drawing no.) (Nat'l. Bd. no.) ⑥ (year built)

5. The chemical and physical properties of all parts meet the requirements of material specifications of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE. The design, construction and workmanship conform to ASME Code, Section IV, ⑦ (year) ⑧ (addenda (date)) ⑨ (Code Case no.).

6. (a) Drums:

No.	Inside Diameter, In	Inside Length Ft In	Shell Plates			Tube Sheets		Tube Hole Ligament Efficiency, %	
			Mat'l Spec Grade	Thickness In	Inside Radius In	Thickness In	Inside Radius In	Longitudinal	Circumferential
1			⑪	⑫		⑫			
2									

No	Longitudinal Joints		Circum Joints		Heads				Hydrostatic Test, psi
	No. & Type*	Efficiency	No. & Type	Efficiency	Mat'l Spec Grade	Thickness In	Type**	Radius of Dish	
1					⑪	⑬		⑭	⑮
2									

*Indicate if (1) seamless, (2) fusion welded

**Indicate if (1) flat, (2) dished, (3) ellipsoidal, (4) hemispherical

6. (b) Boiler tubes:

Diameter	Thickness	Mat'l Spec No. Grade	No	How Attached

6 (c) Headers no ⑯ ⑪ ⑫or⑬ (box or sinuous or round, mat'l spec no., thickness)

Heads or ends ⑰ ⑪ ⑬ (shape, mat'l spec no., thickness) Hydro. test, psi ⑮

6 (d) Staybolts ⑪ (mat'l spec no., diameter, size tell-tale, net area)

Pitch ____ in Net area ____ sq in (supported by one bolt) Design pressure ____ psi

6. (e) Mud drum: ⑱ ⑲ ⑪ ⑫or⑬ (for sect. header boilers, state size, shape, mat'l spec no., thickness) Heads or ends ⑰ ⑪ ⑬ (shape, mat'l spec no., thickness) Hydro test, psi ⑮

7. Waterwall headers:

No	Size and Shape		Material Spec No. Gr	Thickness In	Shape	Thickness In	Material Spec No. Gr	Hydro Test psi	Diameter In	Thickness In	Material Spec No. Gr
1	⑱	⑲	⑪	⑫or⑬	⑰	⑬	⑪	⑮	⑳	㉑	⑪
2											
3											

8. (a) Other parts (1) ____ (2) ____ (3) ____ 8 (b) Tubes for other parts: ____

1										
2										
3										

9. Nozzles, inspection and safety valve openings ㉕

Purpose (inlet, outlet, drain, etc.)	No	Dia or Size	Type	How Attached	Mat'l	Nom Thickness	Reinforcement Mat'l	Location
Handhole up to 3" x 4"		㉒	㉓		NA		NA	
Manhole					⑪			

This form (E00102) may be obtained from the ASME Order Department, 22 Law Drive, Box 2300, Fairfield, NJ 07007-2300.

[SEC IV NMA APP L] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:42 2003)

FORM H-3 (Back)

10.

		MAWP	Maximum water temp.	Shop Hydro Test psi	Heating Surface sq ft
a	Boiler	(29)	(74)		
b	Waterwall				
c	Superheater				
d	Other parts				

Heating surface to be stamped on drum heads. This heating surface not to be used for determining minimum safety valve capacity

11. Field Hydro. Test psi

12. Manufacturer's Partial Data Reports properly identified and signed by Commissioned Inspectors have been furnished for the following items of this report: (30) (56)

(name of part, item number, mfr's. name, and identifying stamp)

13. Remarks:

CERTIFICATE OF SHOP COMPLIANCE

We certify that the statements made in this data report are correct and that all details of design, material, construction, and workmanship of this boiler conform to Section IV of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE.

"H" Certificate of Authorization no. (31) expires _____, _____.

Date (32) Signed _____ Name _____

(by representative) (manufacturer that constructed and certified boiler)

(33) CERTIFICATE OF SHOP INSPECTION

Boiler constructed by _____ at _____

I, the undersigned, holding a valid commission issued by the National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors and/or the state or province of (34) and employed by _____ have inspected parts of this boiler referred to as data items (35) and have examined Manufacturer's Partial Data Reports for items (36) and state that, to the best of my knowledge and belief, the manufacturer has constructed this boiler in accordance with Section IV of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE.

By signing this certificate neither the inspector nor his employer makes any warranty, expressed or implied, concerning the boiler described in this Manufacturers' Data Report. Furthermore, neither the inspector nor his employer shall be liable in any manner for any personal injury or property damage or a loss of any kind arising from or connected with this inspection.

Date _____ Signed _____ Commissions (37)

(Authorized Inspector) (Nat'l Bd (incl endorsements) state, prov and no.)

CERTIFICATE OF FIELD ASSEMBLY COMPLIANCE

We certify that the field assembly construction of all parts of this boiler conforms with the requirements of SECTION IV of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE.

"H" Certificate of Authorization no. (38) expires _____, _____.

Date (39) Signed _____ Name _____

(by representative) (assembler that certified and constructed field assembly)

(40) CERTIFICATE OF FIELD ASSEMBLY INSPECTION

I, the undersigned, holding a valid commission issued by the National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors and/or the state or province of (34) and employed by _____ have compared the statements in this Manufacturer's Data Report with the described boiler and state that the parts referred to as data items (41) not included in the certificate of shop inspection, have been inspected by me and that to the best of my knowledge and belief the manufacturer and/or the assembler has constructed and assembled this boiler in accordance with Section IV of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE. The described boiler was inspected and subjected to a hydrostatic test of _____ psi.

By signing this certificate neither the inspector nor his employer makes any warranty, expressed or implied, concerning the boiler described in this Manufacturers' Data Report. Furthermore, neither the inspector nor his employer shall be liable in any manner for any personal injury or property damage or a loss of any kind arising from or connected with this inspection.

Date _____ Signed _____ Commissions (37)

(Authorized Inspector) (Nat'l Bd (incl endorsements) state, prov and no.)

[SEC IV NMA APP L] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:43 2003)

FORM H-4 MANUFACTURER'S PARTIAL DATA REPORT
As Required by the Provisions of the ASME Code Rules
(Attach to the Applicable Data Report, Section IV)

1. Manufactured and certified by _____ (1) _____ H-4 ID# (73)
(name and address of manufacturer)

2. Manufactured for _____ (2) _____
(name and address of purchaser)

3. Location of installation _____ (3) _____
(name and address)

4. Identification of part(s):

Name of Part	Line No	Mfr's Serial No	Mfr's Drawing No	CRN	Nat'l Bd No	Year Built
(54)	(55)	(5)				(6)

5. The chemical and physical properties of all parts meet the requirements of material specifications of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE. The design, construction and workmanship conform to ASME Code, Section IV. (7) (year) (8) (addenda (date)) (9) (Code Case no.)

6. (a) Drums:

No	Inside Diameter, In	Inside Length Ft In	Shell Plates			Tube Sheets		Tube Hole Ligament Efficiency, %	
			Mat'l Spec No Grade	Thickness In	Inside Radius In	Thickness In	Inside Radius In	Longitudinal	Circumferential
1			(11)	(42)		(42)			
2									

No	Longitudinal Joints		Circum Joints		Heads				Hydrostatic Test psi
	No & Type*	Efficiency	No & Type	Efficiency	Mat'l Spec No Grade	Thickness In	Type**	Radius of Dish	
1					(11)	(43)		(44)	(45)
2									

*Indicate if (1) seamless (2) fusion welded

**Indicate if (1) flat (2) dished (3) ellipsoidal (4) hemispherical

6. (b) Boiler tubes:

Diameter	Thickness	Mat'l Spec No Grade	No	How Attached

6. (c) Headers no _____ (46) _____ (11) _____ (42) or (43)
(box or sinuous or round mat'l spec no thickness)

Heads or ends (47) (11) (43) Hydro. test, psi (45)
(shape mat'l spec no thickness)

6. (d) Staybolts _____ (11) _____
(mat'l spec no diameter size telltale net area)

Pitch _____ in Net area _____ sq. in (supported by one bolt) Design pressure _____ psi

6. (e) Mud drum: (48) (49) (11) (42) or (43) Heads or ends (47) (11) (43) Hydro test, psi (45)
(for sect header boilers state size shape, mat'l spec no thickness) (shape mat'l spec no thickness)

7. Waterwall headers:

No	Size and Shape	Material Spec No Gr	Thickness In	Shape	Thickness In	Material Spec No Gr	Hydro Test psi	Diameter In	Thickness In	Material Spec No Gr
1	(48)	(11)	(42) or (43)	(47)	(43)	(11)	(45)	(50)	(46)	(11)
2										
3										

8. (a) Other parts (1) _____ (2) _____ (3) _____ 8 (b) Tubes for other parts _____

1										
2										
3										

This form (E00103) may be obtained from the ASME Order Department, 22 Law Drive, Box 2300, Fairfield, NJ 07007-2300.

[SEC IV NMA APP L] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:44 2003)

FORM H-4 (Back)

9. Nozzles, inspection and safety valve openings: (25)

Purpose (inlet, outlet, drain, etc.)	No	Dia or Size	Type	How Attached	Mat'l	Nom Thickness	Reinforcement Mat'l	Location
Handhole up to 3" x 4"		(52)	(53)		NA		NA	

10.

		MAWP	Maximum water temp.	Shop Hydro. Test psi	Heating Surface Sq. Ft.	Heating surface or kW to be stamped on drum heads	11. Field Hydro. Test psi
a	Boiler	(24)	(74)				
b	Waterwall					This heating surface not to be used for determining minimum safety valve capacity	
c	Other parts						

12. Remarks: (54)

CERTIFICATE OF SHOP COMPLIANCE

We certify that the statements made in this partial data report are correct and that all details of design, material, construction, and workmanship of these parts conform to Section IV of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE.

"H" Certificate of Authorization no. (31) expires _____, _____.

Date (32) Signed _____ Name _____

(by representative) (manufacturer that constructed and certified boiler)

(33) CERTIFICATE OF SHOP INSPECTION

I, the undersigned, holding a valid commission issued by the National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors and/or the state or province of (34) and employed by _____

_____ have inspected the part of a boiler described in this Manufacturer's Partial Data Report on _____, _____, and state that to the best of my knowledge and belief, the manufacturer has constructed this part in accordance with Section IV of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE. By signing this certificate, neither the inspector nor his employer makes any warranty, expressed or implied, concerning the part described in this Manufacturer's Partial Data Report. Furthermore, neither the inspector nor his employer shall be liable in any manner for any personal injury or property damage or a loss of any kind arising from or connected with this inspection.

Date _____ Signed _____ Commissions (37)

(Authorized inspector) (Nat'l Bd (incl. endorsements) state, prov. and no.)

[SEC IV NMA APP L] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:45 2003)

FORM H-5 MANUFACTURER'S MASTER DATA REPORT FOR BOILERS CONSTRUCTED FROM CAST IRON
As Required by the Provisions of the ASME Code Rules, Section IV

1. Manufactured and certified by ___ (1) ___
(name and address of manufacturer) (foundry identification)

2. Boiler type or model no. ___ (4) ___

3. Boiler section data: (57)

Section Designation (list each individual section in boiler assembly)	Pattern and/or Part No	Metal Thickness According to Drawing
(a)		
(b)		
(c)		
(d)		
(e)		

4. Boiler section bursting data: (58)

Section Designation	Bursting Pressure, Metal Thickness Measured at *Break or Fracture, and Weight of Section*		
	Test No. 1	Test No. 2	Test No. 3
(a)	___ psi	___ psi	___ psi
	___ in.	___ in.	___ in.
	___ lb.	___ lb.	___ lb.
(b)	___ psi	___ psi	___ psi
	___ in	___ in.	___ in.
	___ lb.	___ lb.	___ lb.
(c)	___ psi	___ psi	___ psi
	___ in	___ in.	___ in.
	___ lb	___ lb.	___ lb.
(d)	___ psi	___ psi	___ psi
	___ in.	___ in	___ in.
	___ lb	___ lb.	___ lb.
(e)	___ psi	___ psi	___ psi
	___ in	___ in.	___ in.
	___ lb.	___ lb.	___ lb.

5. Minimum specified tensile strength ___ (59) ___ psi.

6. Tensile strength of associated test bars (60)

Section Designation	Bar for Test No. 1	Bar for Test No. 2	Bar for Test No. 3
(a)	___ psi	___ psi	___ psi
(b)	___ psi	___ psi	___ psi
(c)	___ psi	___ psi	___ psi
(d)	___ psi	___ psi	___ psi
(e)	___ psi	___ psi	___ psi

7. Specification no. and class of gray iron ___

8. Maximum Allowable working pressure of boiler* ___ (61) ___ psi

*Determined by using formula in HC-402 and by selection of lowest values of bursting pressure from tests recorded in item 4 of this report.

This form (E00041) may be obtained from the ASME Order Department, 22 Law Drive, Box 2300, Fairfield, NJ 07007-2300.

[SEC IV NMA APP L] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:46 2003)

FORM H-5 (Back)

9. Sketch of section with lowest bursting pressure

Show location of
failure and indicate whether
principally in bending or tension.

10. Examination data: (62)

(a) Test engineer _____
(name)

(b) Witness of test(s) _____
(name)

(c) Date(s) of destruction tests _____

_____

_____

11. Manufacturer's certification: (63)

Date _____, _____

Certified to be true record

_____
(name and title)

Note: Signature of designated responsible engineering head of the manufacturer must be notarized.

12. ASME Certificate of Authorization no. _____ (31) _____ to use the "H" symbol (cast iron).

Certificate expires _____, _____

FORM H-5 (Back)

[SEC IV NMA APP L] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:47 2003)

FORM HLW-6 MANUFACTURER'S DATA REPORT FOR WATER HEATERS OR STORAGE TANKS
As Required by the Provisions of the ASME Code Rules

1. Manufactured and certified by: (1) (name and address of manufacturer)

2. Manufactured for: (2) (name and address of purchaser)

3. Location of installation: (3) (name and address)

4. Identification: (5) (mfr.'s serial no.) _____ (CRN) _____ (drawing no.) _____ (National Board no.) (6) (year built)

5. The chemical and physical properties of all parts meet the requirements of material specifications of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE. The design, construction, and workmanship conform to Part HLW, Section IV (7) (year) (8) [addenda (date)] (9) (Code Case no.)

6. Shell: (64) (no.) (11) (mat'l spec., gr.) (42) [thickness (in.)] (65) (lining) (64) [diameter (in.)] _____ [length (ft. & in., overall)]

7. Joints: (12) [long. (seamless, welded)] (13) [eff. (compared to seamless)] (12) [girth (seamless, welded)] _____ (no. of shell courses)

8. Heads: (47)

Location	Material Spec., Gr., Thickness	Crown Radius	Knuckle Radius	Elliptical Ratio	Hemispherical Radius	Flat Diameter	Side Pressure (concave, convex)
	(11)						

9. Tubesheet: (11) (mat'l spec., gr.) Tubes: _____ (no.) _____ [size (in.)] _____ [length (ft & in., overall)] (11) (mat'l spec., gr.) _____ [thickness (in.)] _____ (rolled or welded)

10. Nozzles, inspection and safety valve openings: (25)

Purpose (inlet, outlet, drain, etc.)	No.	Diameter or Size	Type	How Attached	Material	Nominal Thickness	Reinforcement Material	Location
Handhole up to 3" x 4"			NA		NA		NA	
					(11)			

11. MAWP: (66) (psi) Max. input: (67) (Btu/hr or kW) Max. temp.: (68) (°F) Hydrostatic test: (69) (psi)

12. Manufacturer's Partial Data Reports properly identified and signed by Commissioned Inspectors have been furnished for the following items of this report: (30) (56)
(name of part, item no., manufacturer's name, identification stamps)

13. Remarks:

This form (E00105) may be obtained from the ASME Order Department, 22 Law Drive, Box 2300, Fairfield, NJ 07007-2300.

[SEC IV NMA APP L] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:48 2003)

FORM HLW-6 (Back)

CERTIFICATE OF SHOP COMPLIANCE

We certify that the statements made in this data report are correct and that all details of design, material, construction, and workmanship of this water heater or storage tank conform to Section IV of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE.
"HLW" Certificate of Authorization no. _____ expiration date _____.

Date _____ Name _____ (manufacturer that constructed and certified water heater or storage tank) Signed _____ (by representative)

CERTIFICATE OF SHOP INSPECTION

Constructed by _____ at _____
I, the undersigned, holding a valid commission issued by the National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors and/or the state or province of _____ and employed by _____
have inspected parts referred to as data items _____
and have examined Manufacturer's Partial Data Reports for items _____
and state that, to the best of my knowledge and belief, the manufacturer has constructed this water heater or storage tank in accordance with Section IV of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE.
By signing this certificate, neither the Inspector nor his employer makes any warranty, expressed or implied, concerning the water heater or storage tank described in this Manufacturer's Data Report. Furthermore, neither the Inspector nor his employer shall be liable in any manner for any personal injury or property damage or a loss of any kind arising from or connected with this inspection.

Date _____ Signed _____ (Authorized Inspector) Commissions _____ [Nat'l Bd. (incl. endorsements) state, province, and no.]

FORM HLW-6 (Back)

[SEC IV NMA APP L] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:49 2003)

FORM HLW-7 MANUFACTURER'S PARTIAL DATA REPORT FOR WATER HEATERS AND STORAGE TANKS
As Required by the Provisions of the ASME Code Rules (Attach to the Applicable Form HLW-6 Data Report)

1. Manufactured and certified by: ___(1)___ (name and address of manufacturer) HLW-7 ID #: ___(73)___

2. Manufactured for: ___(2)___ (name and address of purchaser)

3. Identification of part(s):

Name of Part	Line No.	Identifying No.	Manufacturer's Drawing No.	Year Built
(54)	(55)	(5)		(6)

4. The chemical and physical properties of all parts meet the requirements of material specifications of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE. The design, construction, and workmanship conform to Part HLW, Section IV ___(7)___ (year) and Addenda to ___(8)___ (date)

5. Shell: ___(34)___ (no.) ___(11)___ (mat'l spec., gr.) ___(42)___ [thickness (in.)] ___(65)___ (lining) ___(84)___ [diameter (in.)] _____ [length (ft & in., overall)]

6. Joints: ___(12)___ [long. (seamless, welded)] ___(13)___ [eff. (compared to seamless)] ___(12)___ [girth (seamless, welded)] _____ (no. of shell courses)

7. Heads: (47)

Location	Material Spec., Gr., Thickness	Crown Radius	Knuckle Radius	Elliptical Ratio	Hemispherical Radius	Flat Diameter	Side Pressure (concave, convex)
	(11)						

8. Tubesheet: ___(11)___ (mat'l spec., gr.) Tube holes: _____ (no. and diameter)

9. Tubes: _____ (no.) Size: _____ in. Length: _____ ft _____ in. Material spec., gr.: ___(11)___ Thickness: _____ in.

10. Connections:

Purpose	No.	Size or Diameter	Material Spec., Gr.	Thickness	Reinforcement Material

11. MAWP: ___(66)___ (psi) Max. input: ___(67)___ (Btu/hr or kW) Max. temp.: ___(68)___ (°F) Hydrostatic test: ___(69)___ (psi)

12. Remarks: ___(56)___

This form (E00106) may be obtained from the ASME Order Department, 22 Law Drive, Box 2300, Fairfield, NJ 07007-2300.

[SEC IV NMA APP L] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:49 2003)

FORM HLW-7 (Back)

CERTIFICATE OF SHOP COMPLIANCE

We certify the statements in this Manufacturer's Partial Data Report to be correct and that all details of material, construction, and workmanship of this water heater or storage tank conform to Section IV of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE.
Certificate of Authorization no. _____(31)_____ to use the "HLW" symbol expires _____.

Date _____(32)_____ Signed _____ by _____
(manufacturer that constructed and certified parts) (authorized representative)

(33) CERTIFICATE OF SHOP INSPECTION

I, the undersigned, holding a valid commission issued by the National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors and/or the state or province of _____ and employed by _____ have inspected the part described in this Manufacturer's Partial Data Report on _____, and state that, to the best of my knowledge and belief, the manufacturer has constructed this part in accordance with Section IV of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE.

By signing this certificate, neither the inspector nor his employer makes any warranty, expressed or implied, concerning the part described in this Manufacturer's Partial Data Report. Furthermore, neither the inspector nor his employer shall be liable in any manner for personal injury or property damage or a loss of any kind arising from or connected with this inspection.

Date _____ Signed _____ Commissions _____(37)_____
(Authorized Inspector) [Nat'l Bd. (incl. endorsements) state, province, and no.]

FORM HLW-7 (Back)

[SEC IV NMA APP L] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:51 2003)

FORM HLW-8 MANUFACTURER'S MASTER DATA PROOF TEST REPORT FOR WATER HEATERS OR STORAGE TANKS As Required by the Provisions of the ASME Code Rules, Section IV

1. Manufactured and certified by: ____ (1) (name and address)

2. Vessel type or model no. (HLW-500): ____ (4)

3. Vessel proof test data:

Vessel Parts	Description or Part No.	Material Spec., Gr., Thickness According to Drawing	Specified Yield Strength, psi	Minimum Tensile, psi
(a)		(11) (42)		
(b)				
(c)				
(d)				
(e)				

4. Type of coating: ____ (lime wash or other brittle coating)

5. Test data to determine yielding:

Part Designation Yielding	Yielding Pressure by Flaking of Coating or by Strain Lines	Location of Yielding Whether Bending or Tension (indicate on sketch)
(70)	(71)	(72)

6. Yield strength of test specimens [HLW-502.1(c)]: (a) ____ (72) psi (b) ____ psi (c) ____ psi Average: ____ psi

7. Maximum allowable working pressure of vessel: ____ (66) psi [determined by formulas in HLW-502.1(d)]

8. Examination data: (82)
   (a) Test engineer: ____
   (b) Witness of test: ____
   (c) Date(s) of proof test: ____

MANUFACTURER'S CERTIFICATION

We certify that the above data is correct and that the proof test procedure conforms with HLW-500 of Section IV of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE.

ASME Certificate of Authorization no. ____ (31) to use the "HLW" symbol expiration date ____

Date ____ (32) Certified to be true record ____ (authorized representative)* ____ (manufacturer)

*Note: Signature of manufacturer's designated responsible engineering representative is required.

(33) PROOF TEST CERTIFICATE

I, the undersigned, holding a valid commission issued by the National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors and/or the state or province of ____ (34) and employed by ____ have witnessed the proof test and the procedures conforming to HLW-500 of Section IV of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE.

By signing this certificate, neither the Inspector nor his employer makes any warranty, expressed or implied, concerning the water heater or storage tank described in this Manufacturer's Proof Test Report. Furthermore, neither the Inspector nor his employer shall be liable in any manner for any personal injury or property damage or a loss of any kind arising from or connected with the witnessing of this proof test.

Date ____ Signed ____ (Authorized Inspector) Commissions ____ (37) (state, province, and no.)

This form (E00107) may be obtained from the ASME Order Department, 22 Law Drive, Box 2300, Fairfield, NJ 07007-2300.

[SEC IV NMA APP L] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:51 2003)

July 1, 1998
American Society Of Mechanical Engineers
SEC IV SI UNITS
SI UNITS

The 1998 Edition of the Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code is based on U.S. Customary (ft-lb) units of measurement which are to be regarded as the standard. This supplement is provided as a convenience to the Code user and contains SI conversion factors for units contained in the Code.

LIST OF SI UNITS FOR USE WITH ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE[1]

Quantity	Unit	Symbol	Other Units or Limitations
Space and Time			
plane angle	radian	rad	degree (decimalized)
length	meter	m	
area	square meter	m^2	
volume	cubic meter	m^3	liter (L) for liquid only (use without prefix other than in milliliter, mL)
time	second	s	minute (min), hour (h), day (d), week, and year
Periodic and Related Phenomena			
frequency	hertz	Hz	revolutions per second (r/s)
rotational frequency	revolutions per second	s^{-1}	revolutions per minute (r/m)
Mechanics			
mass	kilogram	kg	
density	kilogram per cubic meter	kg/m^3	
moment of inertia	kilogram · $meter^2$	$kg \cdot m^2$	
force	newton	N	
moment of force (torque)	newton-meter	N · m	
pressure and stress	pascal	Pa	(pascal = newton per square meter)
energy, work	joule	J	kilowatt-hour (kW · h)
power	watt	W	
impact strength	joule	J	
section modulus	$meter^3$	m^3	
moment of section (second moment of area)	$meter^4$	m^4	
fracture toughness	$Pa \cdot \sqrt{m}$		
Heat			
temperature — thermodynamic [Note (2)]	kelvin	K	degree Celsius (°C)
temperature — other than thermodynamic	degree Celsius	°C	kelvin (K)
linear expansion coefficient	meter per meter-kelvin	K^{-1}	$°C^{-1}$
quantity of heat	joule	J	
heat flow rate	watt	W	
thermal conductivity	watt per meter-kelvin	W/(m · K)	W/(m · °C)
thermal diffusivity	square meter per second	m^2/s	
specific heat capacity	joule per kilogram-kelvin	J/(kg · K)	J/(kg · °C)
Electricity and Magnetism			
electric current	ampere	A	
electric potential	volt	V	
current density	ampere per $meter^2$	A/m^2	
magnetic field strength	ampere per meter	A/m	

NOTES:
(1) Conversion factors between SI units and U.S. customary are given in SI-1, "ASME Orientation and Guide for Use of SI (Metric) Units," and ASTM E 380.
(2) Preferred use for temperature and temperature interval is degrees Celsius (°C), except for thermodynamic and cryogenic work where kelvins may be more suitable. For temperature interval, 1 K = 1°C exactly.

[SEC IV SI UNITS] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:52 2003)

COMMONLY USED CONVERSION FACTORS
(For Others See ASTM E 380) [See Note (1)]

Quantity	To Convert From	To	Multiply by [Note (2)]	
plane angle	degree	rad	1.745 329	E−02
length	in	m	2.54*	E−02
	ft	m	3.048*	E−01
	yd	m	9.144*	E−01
area	in^2	m^2	6.451 6*	E−04
	ft^2	m^2	9.290 304*	E−02
	yd^2	m^2	8.361 274	E−01
volume	in^3	m^3	1.638 706	E−05
	ft^3	m^3	2.831 685	E−02
	US gallon	m^3	3.785 412	E−03
	Imperial gallon	m^3	4.546 09	E−03
	liter	m^3	1.0*	E−03
mass	lbm	kg	4.535 924	E−01
	ton (metric) (mass)	kg	1.000 00*	E+03
	ton (short 2000 lbm)	kg	9.071 847	E+02
force	kgf	N	9.806 65*	E+00
	lbf	N	4.448 222	E+00
bending, torque	kgf · m	N · m	9.806 65*	E+00
	lbf · in	N · m	1.129 848	E−01
	lbf · ft	N · m	1.355 818	E+00
pressure, stress	kgf/m^2	Pa	9.806 65*	E+00
	lbf/ft^2	Pa	4.788 026	E+01
	lbf/in^2 (psi)	Pa	6.894 757	E+03
	$kips/in^2$	Pa	6.894 757	E+06
	bar	Pa	1.0*	E+05
energy, work	Btu (IT) [Note (3)]	J	1.055 056	E+03
	ft · lbf	J	1.355 818	E+00
power	hp (550 ft · lbf/s)	W	7.456 999	E+02
fracture toughness	ksi $\sqrt{in}$	Pa · $\sqrt{m}$	1.098 843	E+06
temperature	°C	K	$t_K = t_C + 273.15$	
	°F	K	$t_K = (t_F + 459.67)/1.8$	
	°F	°C	$t_C = (t_F - 32)/1.8$	
temperature interval	°C	K	1.0*	E+00
	°F	K or °C	5.555 555	E−01

NOTES:

(1) Care should be taken when converting formulas or equations that contain constant terms or factors. The value of these terms must be understood and may also require conversion.

(2)(a) Relationships that are exact in terms of the base units are followed by a single asterisk.

(b) The factors are written as a number greater than 1 and less than 10 with 6 or less decimal places. The number is followed by the letter E (for exponent), a plus or minus symbol, and two digits which indicate the power of 10 by which the number must be multiplied to obtain the correct value. For example: 3.523 907 E−02 is $3.523\ 907 \times 10^{-2}$ or 0.035 239 07.

(3) International Table

[SEC IV SI UNITS] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:53 2003)

COMMONLY USED CONVERSION FACTORS

[SEC IV SI UNITS] Copyright by American Society Of Mechanical Engineers (Thu Jan 30 09:58:53 2003)